ATLAS SKILLTECH UNIVERSITY

Accredited with

NAAC A GRADE

COURSE NAME

THE 21ST CENTURY MARKETING

COURSE CODE

OLMBA MKT119

CREDITS: 3

ATLAS SKILLTECH UNIVERSITY | Centre for Distance & Online Education

www.atlasonline.edu.in

ATLAS SKILLTECH UNIVERSITY

Accredited with

NAAC A GRADE

Recognized by the
University Grants Commission (UGC)
under Section 2(f) of the UGC Act, 1956

COURSE NAME:

THE 21ST CENTURY MARKETING

COURSE CODE:

OLMBA MKT119

Credits: 3

ATLAS SKILLTECH UNIVERSITY | Centre for Distance & Online Education

🌐 **www.atlasonline.edu.in** 🔍

Content Review Committee

Members	Members
Dr. Deepak Gupta Director ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Dr. Naresh Kaushik** Assistant Professor ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)
Dr. Poonam Singh Professor Member Secretary (Content Review Committee) ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Dr. Pooja Grover** Associate Professor ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)
Dr. Anand Kopare Director: Centre for Internal Quality (CIQA) ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Prof. Bineet Desai** Prof. of Practice ATLAS SkillTech University
Dr. Shashikant Patil Deputy Director (e-Learning and Technical) ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Dr. Mandar Bhanushe** External Expert (University of Mumbai, ODL)
Dr. Jyoti Mehndiratta Kappal Program Coordinator: MBA ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Dr. Kaial Chheda** Associate Professor ATLAS SkillTech University
Dr. Vinod Nair Program Coordinator: BBA ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)	**Dr. Simarieet Makkar** Associate Professor ATLAS SkillTech University

Program Coordinator MBA:

Dr. Jyoti Mehndiratta Kappal
Associate Professor
ATLAS Centre for Distance & Online Education (CDOE)

Unit Preparation:

Unit 1 – 9
Dr. Deepak R. Gupta
Associate Professor
ATLAS SkillTech University

Secretarial Assistance and Composed By:

Mr. Sarur Gaikwad / Mr. Prashant Nair / Mr. Dipesh More

www.atlasonline.edu.in

Detailed Syllabus

Block No.	Block Name	Unit No.	Unit Name
1	Introduction to Marketing	1	Marketing in the 21st Century
		2	Marketing Environment
2	Consumer Behaviour & STP	3	Marketing, Consumer & Competitor Research
		4	Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning
3	Marketing Mix: Product & Pricing	5	Marketing Mix: Product & New Product Development
		6	Pricing Strategie
4	Marketing Mix: Place & Promotion	7	Marketing Channels: Place
		8	Promotion Mix
		9	Marketing Mix Strategies

Course Name: The 21st Century Marketing

Course Code: OL MBA MKT 119

Credits: 3

Teaching Scheme			Evaluation Scheme (100 Marks)	
Classroom Session (Online)	**Practical / Group Work**	**Tutorials**	**Internal Assessment (IA)**	**Term End Examination**
9+1 = 10 Sessions	-	-	30% (30 Marks)	70% (70 Marks)
Assessment Pattern:	**Internal**		**Term End Examination**	
	Assessment I	**Assessment II**		
Marks	15	15	70	
Type	MCQ	MCQ	MCQ – 49 Marks, Descriptive questions – 21 Marks (7 Marks * 3 Questions)	

Course Description:

This course provides a comprehensive understanding of marketing concepts and practices in the contemporary 21st-century landscape. Students will be introduced to core marketing concepts such as needs, wants, and demand, value definition, and the marketing planning process. The curriculum delves into the marketing environment, covering both micro- and macro-environmental factors and strategies for responding to them. A significant focus is placed on consumer and competitor research, including consumer behavior models, the market research process, and the consumer decision journey. Key strategic elements like Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning (STP) are covered. Furthermore, the course extensively explores the marketing mix: Product and New Product Development, Pricing Strategies, Marketing Channels (Place), and the Promotion Mix, including advertising, public relations, personal selling, sales promotion, and direct/digital marketing. Finally, the course examines marketing mix strategies, the marketing process, emerging trends, and the role of Artificial Intelligence (AI) in the future of marketing.

Course Objectives:

1. To introduce the fundamental concepts of marketing management, including needs, wants, demand, value, exchanges, and relationships in the context of the 21st century.

2. To analyze the forces and actors within the marketing environment, including the microenvironment and macroenvironment, and evaluate appropriate organizational responses.
3. To develop an understanding of consumer and competitor behavior, covering consumer research, consumer decision journeys, consumer persona development, and market research processes.
4. To teach the strategic process of Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning (STP) for creating and delivering superior customer value.
5. To explain the four elements of the marketing mix—Product, Price, Place, and Promotion—in depth, including new product development, pricing strategies, marketing channels, logistics, and the full promotion mix.
6. To explore the integration of marketing mix strategies, the overall marketing process, emerging trends in marketing, and the disruptive role of AI in shaping the future of the discipline.

Course Outcomes:

- CO1 (Remember): Define core marketing concepts such as wants, needs, demand, and value, and recall the components of the marketing mix (4Ps).
- CO2 (Understand): Explain the structure of the marketing environment, distinguishing between the microenvironment and macroenvironment and summarizing the various pricing strategies available to a firm.
- CO3 (Apply): Apply the Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning (STP) framework to develop a basic market strategy for a given product or service, utilizing the concept of a Consumer Persona.
- CO4 (Analyze): Break down the stages of the Marketing Research Process and the Consumer Decision Journey to analyze consumer behavior and market opportunities.
- CO5 (Evaluate): Justify the selection of appropriate Marketing Channels (Place) and Promotion Mix elements (Advertising, Digital Marketing) for a new product, assessing their impact on the marketing logistics and supply chain.
- CO6 (Create): Formulate a comprehensive marketing plan and marketing mix strategies for a business, incorporating emerging trends and discussing the potential role of AI in its implementation.

Pedagogy: Online Class, Discussion Forum, Case Studies, Quiz etc

Textbook: Self Learning Material (SLM) From Atlas SkillTech University

Reference Book:

1. Kotler, P., & Keller, K. L. (2022). *Marketing Management* (16th ed.). Pearson Education.
2. Kerin, R. A., Hartley, S. W., & Rudelius, W. (2020). *Marketing* (15th ed.). McGraw-Hill Education.
3. Solomons, D., Kliphuis, T., & Wadley, M. (2022). *eMarketing: The Essential Guide to Marketing in a Digital World* (7th ed.). Red & Yellow.

Course Details:

Unit No.	Unit Description
1	Marketing in the 21st Century (Introductory Caselet, Introduction to Marketing Management, What is in the 21st Century?, Core of Marketing ans Wants, Needs and Demand, Exchanges and Relationships, Defining Value, Marketing Planning Process.)
2	Marketing Environment (Introductory Caselet, Introduction to Marketing Environment, The Microenvironment and Macroenvironment, Responding to the Marketing Environment.)
3	Marketing, Consumer & Competitor Research (Introductory Caselet, Consumer Behaviour, Models of Consumer Behaviour, Market Research, Marketing Research Process, Consumer Research and Consumer Decision Journey, Consumer Persona, Competitor Research.)
4	Segmentation, Targeting, and Positioning (Introductory Caselet, Segmenting, Targeting, Positioning.)
5	Marketing Mix: Product & New Product Development (Introductory Caselet, Introduction to Marketing Mix, Understanding Products and Their Classifications, Product Strategy and Development.)
6	Pricing Strategies (Introductory Caselet, Understanding Price and Factors Influencing Pricing Decisions, Major Pricing Strategies, Additional Pricing Strategies.)
7	Marketing Channels: Place (Introductory Caselet, The Nature and Importance of Marketing Channels, Types of Marketing Channels, Marketing Logistics and Supply Chain Management.)

8	Promotion Mix (Introductory Caselet, The Promotion Mix, Advertising and Public Relations, Personal Selling and Sales Promotion, Direct and Digital Marketing.)
9	Marketing Mix Strategies (Introductory Caselet, Marketing Mix Strategies, The Marketing Process, Emerging Trends in Marketing, AI in Marketing and the Future of Marketing.)

PO-CO Mapping

Course Outcome	PO1	PO2	PO3	PO4
CO1	1	-	-	-
CO2	2	1	-	1
CO3	3	2	-	-
CO4	2	3	-	-
CO5	2	3	-	1
CO6	3	3	1	1

Unit 1: Marketing in the 21st Century

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will be able to define and explain the main concepts of marketing management and their importance and scope in business contexts.
2. Learners will analyse the evolution of changes in marketing practices, trends, and the impact on modern business strategy in the 21st century.
3. Learners will identify and differentiate the key marketing concepts of wants, needs, and demand and describe their function in consumer behaviour.
4. Learners will understand the concept of value creation and how it influences customer satisfaction and competitive advantage in marketing strategies.
5. Learners will be able to apply base marketing principles to everyday scenarios in businesses for better strategic decision-making and problem-solving.

Structure

1.0 Introductory Caselet

"The Evolution of Marketing in the 21st Century: A New Approach"

Neha is newly recruited at one of the top marketing companies in Mumbai. Her experience with conventional marketing practices had stood her in good stead till now, but as she begins the new job, she finds herself realizing that times have changed immensely. Those were the days of marketing as product promotion and reaching out to customers. Nowadays, marketing is a much more nuanced business where data-led analysis combines with customized interaction and sustainability issues.

During her first team meeting, Neha is challenged to make a contribution to a campaign for a new green brand aimed at millennials and Gen Z. As she begins the project, she quickly realizes that the old-school marketing techniques she's used to are no longer enough. The brand needs to speak to the values and habits of an extremely well-informed, socially aware demographic. In addition, digital marketing platforms' integration and big data usage to gain insights into consumers' behaviour are key to success.

Neha is confronted with a dilemma: how does she transition her skills to these changing needs? She ponders the fundamental marketing principles she's learned—knowing the needs of the consumer, building value, and the value of getting the right message across at the right moment. This experience compels her to question how she conceptualizes and defines marketing in the modern era, integrating old-school knowledge with new-age techniques.

As Neha navigates the intricacies of contemporary marketing, she understands that it's not merely about selling a product—it's about building connections with consumers, knowing their needs and desires, and delivering value in a fast-paced world. This case study delves into Neha's experience in the 21st-century marketing world, where innovation and adaptation are the keys to success.

Critical Thinking Question

How can Neha merge the fundamental marketing concepts with contemporary trends like sustainability and data-driven marketing to develop an effective campaign that speaks to the values of consumers today?

1.1 Introduction to Marketing Management

"Marketing management is a fundamental element of today's business strategies and strongly influences an organization's performance. The discipline of marketing management involves studying, designing, executing, and evaluating strategies to meet customer needs and achieve company objectives. Marketing management goes beyond selling and advertising by using creative thinking plus analysis to make smart choices that create benefits for businesses and their customers.

Today, worldwide markets are changing rapidly so companies need to understand marketing management better than ever to stay focused and relevant. By using marketing management companies can predict how customers will change what they want while adapting to current market movements and technological progress to remain competitive. Through marketing management managers connect their marketing plans to business goals and ensure customers get value while benefiting society.

1.1.1 Definition and Concept of Marketing Management

A. Meaning of Marketing

Marketing encompasses all activities and systems that create, deliver, and communicate valuable solutions to consumers and society. Marketing uses a comprehensive strategy to analyze and meet what people want from our target audience.

B. Key Elements of Marketing

Marketing relies on fundamental elements that guide how businesses meet customer needs to achieve success. The main parts of marketing strategy work together through value creation plus communication actions and product exchange that lead to customer satisfaction. When companies know and use these key parts they can connect better with customers and reach sustainable development.

- **Value Creation:** Value creation is simply identifying the pain points of your customers and formulating products and services that satisfy their needs completely. It is making sure that products or services offer meaningful value to customers while solving pain points; this is central to building real, long-term customer relationships.
- **Communication:** Effective communication is therefore important in ensuring that potential customers are informed of new offerings. It involves employing various marketing tools such as advertisement,

promotions, and brand building to reach out to the audience. The aim is to be able to inform and interest customers in the product or service.
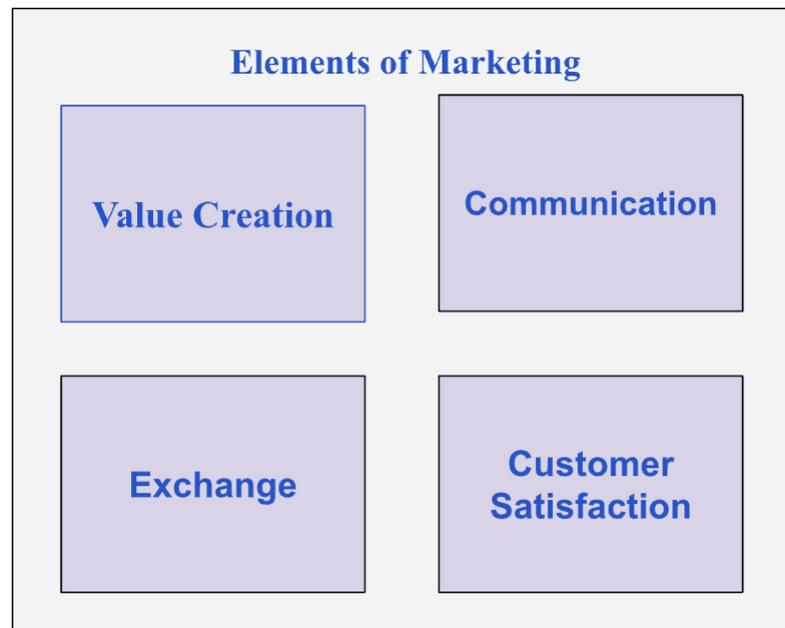
Elements of Marketing

- Value Creation
- Communication
- Exchange
- Customer Satisfaction

Fig 1.1 Key Elements of Marketing

- **Exchange:** Exchange refers to the process in which value is transferred between businesses and customers, including transactions involving products, services, or other benefits. It refers to anything related to purchase, such as pricing, payment methods, and delivery options. An easy exchange process ensures customers have a hassle-free transaction experience.
- **Customer Satisfaction:** A key goal of marketing management is to ensure customer satisfaction. It includes meeting or surpassing customers' expectations to build loyalty and trust. Therefore, satisfied customers are likely to return and promote the company toward long-term success.
- *Example*: *Apple promotes* the advanced technology, style, and simplicity of the iPhone, through marketing, which develops an emotional bond between customers and products.

1.1.2 Meaning of Marketing Management

Marketing management encompasses the planning, execution, and analysis of strategies that help a business achieve its objectives by effectively meeting customer needs. Through marketing management, a business creates and carries out a marketing approach to satisfy customers while pursuing its organizational aims. It

involves analysing market opportunities, selecting target markets, designing marketing strategies, and implementing and monitoring the marketing mix (4Ps: Marketing management uses four key parts in its processes (Product, Price, Place, and Promotion).

Market Analysis	Target Group
Marketing Strategies	Marketing Mix

Fig 1.2 Marketing Management

1.1.3 Marketing Management Orientation

Marketing management has transformed because of new business methods combined with technological progress and changing customer preferences. This shows how businesses moved from just making products to putting value on how customers are served while benefiting society over extended periods. Organizations changed their business strategies during distinct market phases which introduced specific management philosophies into practice. Let's look at the evolution in detail.

1. Production Orientation: The earliest stage, dominant in the late 19th and early 20th centuries, emphasized mass production and operational efficiency. Companies pushed production at maximum capacity to supply the exploding customer needs of the industrial era. Businesses operated with the idea customers would buy items simply because the products were cheap and easy to reach. Companies did not focus on learning what customers wanted as the market was more supply-driven than demand-driven.

Philosophy: "If we make it, they will buy it."

Example: The launch of the Model T in 1908, by ***Henry Ford***, the founder of the ***Ford Motor Company*** and a pioneer of mass production in the automobile industry, represents a production-oriented business mindset

perfectly. Through his assembly line technique, Ford enabled average consumers to own cars but did not consider tailoring products to meet individual customer requirements.

2. Product Orientation: During the 1920s and 1930s companies concentrated on bettering their product specifications and overall quality standards. Companies believed customers would choose products based on their better performance and lasting features. The strategy was often ignored if enhanced product features matched what buyers wanted. Businesses concentrated their attention on using their internal technical abilities rather than looking at what customers needed in the market.

Philosophy: "A good product will sell itself." When your product is high-quality it will naturally attract buyers.

Example: Rolex, a luxury watch brand, represented the essence of product focus during its promotional era. They earned a reputation for excellence because they made premium products with precision and quality workmanship.

3. Sales Orientation: From the 1930s to the 1950s, companies shifted to a sales orientation in response to overproduction and market saturation following the Great Depression. Businesses focused on aggressive sales techniques rather than customer needs. The company aimed to achieve quick sales results instead of building long-term customer bonds. During this period companies put making money above customer loyalty and quality in their business strategy.

Philosophy: "Sell what we make, regardless of customer needs."The goal is to sell all our manufactured products without considering what customers need.

Example: Eureka Forbes, the company that manufactured home appliances, also became very famous in India in the sales-oriented era. This company's selling agents used to go door to door and display vacuum cleaners. Later, these agents started marketing water purifiers as well and would convince their customers to purchase the products through aggressive sales techniques and persuasive pitches. This practice reflected the philosophy of "sell what we make."

4. Marketing Orientation: During the 1950s through 1980s businesses switched their focus from selling products to finding out and fulfilling what customers wanted. Companies use market research to study how customers act and what they want. Companies adopted the marketing mix framework, which includes the 4Ps

(Product, Price, Place, Promotion), to develop customer-oriented strategies and better serve their target market. During this period businesses started putting their customers first by working to build valuable experiences for them.

Philosophy: "The customer is king."

Example: Through wide-ranging consumer studies **Procter &Gamble,** a global consumer goods company, created Tide detergent because customers wanted a laundry solution that worked well and was economical.

5. Societal Marketing Orientation: During the 1980s companies started the societal marketing trend which required them to serve their customers while ensuring company profit and social responsibility. Companies made environmental responsibility, ethical behaviour and a societal good part of their marketing plans. Companies realized their operations affected both society and nature during this time

Philosophy: "Do well by doing good."

Example: Patagonia, a designer of an outdoor clothing brand, serves as a leading representative of the societal marketing approach. Through its business model, Patagonia protects the environment by turning materials into new apparel and teaches customers how to fix their purchases instead of buying new ones.

6. Digital and Relationship Marketing Era: In the Digital and Relationship Marketing Era, digital technology has transformed how businesses interact with customers. Companies leverage data analytics, AI, and omnichannel strategies to personalize marketing efforts and build long-term customer relationships. Today businesses build loyalty by giving customers customized experiences and rewards through direct communication.

Philosophy: "Engage, personalize, and retain."Our business goal should be to create lasting customer bonds.

Example: Today's customer philosophy shows through *Amazon's* recommendation system and insight tools plus *Amazon Prime* membership rewards which make customers happier and increase their shopping frequency.

1.1.4 Importance of Marketing Management

Marketing management serves as the key operating system that enables businesses to succeed in their modern market environment. Marketing management is essential for success in today's fast-moving business. Through strategic planning, marketing managers can design, lead, and evaluate projects to achieve company goals. Through effective marketing management, companies identify customer needs and develop solutions that help their business grow. Marketing management helps companies succeed by analyzing market trends, competitor strategies, and consumer behaviour, allowing them to make informed decisions and adapt to changes.

Marketing management is the integration of marketing efforts by all business areas that support the company's overall strategy and encompasses more than sales and promotions. Effective marketing management helps companies build strong brand identities and foster closer customer relationships. When organizations focus their business on value creation and also effective communication along with customer satisfaction, they create long-term customer relationships. Marketing management assists companies in creating success in the long term while enhancing their earnings and being ahead of other companies in the same industry. Let's examine the importance of marketing management.

1. Understanding Customer Needs and Wants: Efficient marketing management requires first knowing what customers need and desire. Researching the market helps businesses understand how customers make buying choices. Organizations must know customer expectations to develop suitable products that serve those desires.

Example: A manufacturing company for smartphones conducts market research and finds out that a high proportion of its targeted market wants a phone that has an extended life to remain on battery power. The company decided to design a new phone model with a longer battery life

2. Building Brand Awareness and Equity: Marketing management leads the effort to increase brand visibility and value in people's minds. Businesses build powerful brand identities and gain customer trust through advertising, public relations and social media marketing activities. When customers see a strong brand they know it sets the business apart from others and help them remain loyal.

Example: A clothing brand can use social media marketing to engage its target audience by showcasing new designs and interacting with customers. Such continuous presence in the online space allows a brand to have a loyal following and gives a different identity to a fashion brand.

3. Creating and Capturing Value: "Marketing management creates value by aligning business offerings with customer needs, ensuring profitability and customer satisfaction. Companies generate profits and provide value by offering well-priced products. Effective marketing methods help buyers accept a price when they see equal value in the product or service.

Example: A software company, developing a novel project management tool that is highly advanced compared with the rest for its features and functionalities. Due to its innovative features, functionality, and usability, the value proposition for a premium price may be accepted since the benefits coming from it seem unique to such customers.

4. Driving Sales and Revenue Growth: A business's top marketing target is increasing sales to boost total revenue. When companies promote their products to target customers they create lasting bonds that drive more sales and raise profits. Marketing teams help turn product viewers into actual buyers.

Example: An online store promotes its merchandise through social media ads aimed at people who like related products. The marketing drive sends more visitors to the website which boosts sales.

5. Adapting to Market Changes: Businesses must react quickly to market transformations and updated preferences of their customers. Organizations stay competitive by using marketing management to watch market changes, discover fresh opportunities, and update their marketing plans. A business must stay flexible to succeed in the future.

Example: A local bookstore notices a decrease in physical book sales as more customers prefer digital e-books. To adapt to market trends, it launches an online e-book store and expands its digital product selection.

Companies that direct their marketing management toward these main goals can drive their organization forward and build lasting customer bonds to win in the business world.

1.1.5 Functions of Marketing Management

Marketing management uses many strategies to help companies reach and sell to their target customers. It needs teams to study customer habits and market trends and then create plans that help the business reach its goals. Different marketing activities come together to form a common business approach. Marketing management assists organizations in developing brand awareness and enhancing their sales and relationships

with customers in the highly dynamic business environment. The management of marketing requires a person who can analyze data to come up with different ideas and change their approach when the consumers and markets change. Now let's look at the basic functions of marketing management.

1. Market Research and Analysis: This involves gathering and analysing data about the target market, competition, and trends in the industry. It helps companies understand consumer needs, preferences, and buying behaviour. Information from market research guides effective marketing strategies and proper decision-making.

Example: A company uses surveys and focus groups to study what their customers want from the new product. Research indicates that consumers prefer and like companies that support environmental protection. After discovering what customers want in products, the company begins using materials that are good for the environment, along with green production methods.

2. Product Development and Management: This function is responsible for developing and managing products or services that answer the needs of the target market. It entails the development of new products, enhancement of existing ones, and product lifecycle management. Product management ensures that the products developed align with market demand and, consequently, contribute to business objectives.

Example: A software company launches a new mobile application based on the feedback and market study. The mobile application provides facilities and functionalities related to the specific needs and preferences of the customers. The company makes regular updates for the application through reviews from its users and according to market trends.

3. Pricing Strategies: This refers to the function of determining competitive, profitable, and customer-perceived value prices for products or services. Pricing strategies consider the costs of production, competitor pricing, and market demand. The effectiveness of pricing strategies depends on how well they can maximize revenue without losing customer satisfaction.

Example: A retailer observes the prices that competitors charge for a certain product and demand in the market. They decide to offer a competitive price, just a little below their closest competitors, thereby attracting price-sensitive customers while making sure they get a reasonable profit margin.
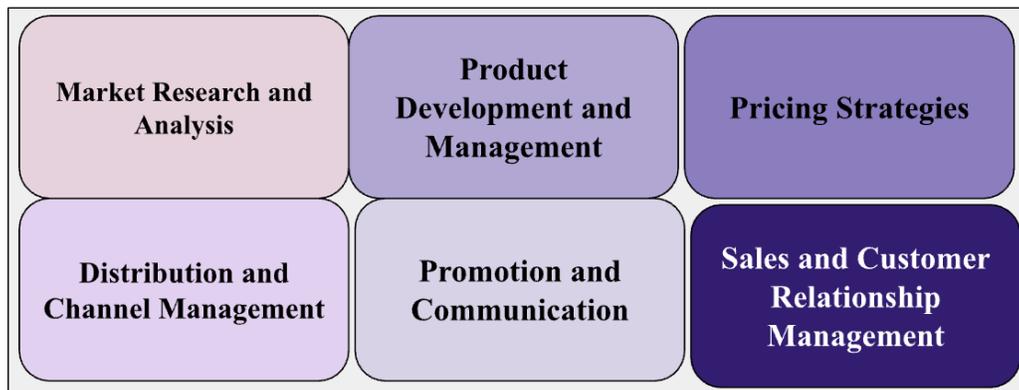
Fig 1.3 Core Functions of Marketing Management

4. Distribution and Channel Management: It refers to managing the various channels through which goods or services reach consumers. This encompasses a choice of a suitable distribution channel, management of inventory, as well as proper quality distribution. Efficient channels help ensure that customers can access products when and where they want to.

Example: Reliance Retail integrates both online and offline channels through its JioMart platform, allowing customers to order groceries online while sourcing them from local Kirana (mom-and-pop) stores, ensuring faster deliveries and supporting small businesses.

5. Promotion and Communication: This function communicates the value of products or services to the target audience through various marketing strategies such as advertising, public relations, social media marketing, product marketing, and sales promotions. The key role of effective promotions is that they will build brand awareness, generate leads, and drive sales.

Example: Restaurants can use social media platforms to share menu items, promotions, and events while engaging with customers through post replies and direct messages. This helps build a loyal following for their brand and effectively promotes their offerings to potential customers in their local area.

6. Sales and Customer Relationship Management: This function involves managing the sales process and establishing good customer relationships. This encompasses lead identification and qualification, conversion of leads to customers, and providing better customer service. Sales and Customer relationship management strategies enhance customer satisfaction and loyalty.

Example: A car dealership may use a customer relationship management system to track how a customer has interacted, their preferences, and purchase history. From this information, they can personalise their communications with the customers, provide customized content, and also offer proactive customer service. When businesses control all marketing basics, they create strong strategies that help the company expand and strengthen its brand while achieving company goals.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
"TATA Group's Marketing Strategy and Analysis"
IAS. (n.d.). IIDE. (2023, February 18). TATA Group's Marketing Strategy and Analysis. IIDE.

1.1.6 Scope of Marketing Management

Marketing management encompasses all activities that aim at creating customer value while meeting the business goals. This ranges from market research, product planning, pricing, promotion, distribution, customer relationship management, and business analysis. It is the understanding of the scope that enables businesses to strategize all aspects to compete and succeed in their ventures. Now, let's look at the scope in detail.

1. Market Research and Analysis: Organizations conduct studies on consumer behaviour and research the market for their competitors, with the knowledge used to better their marketing strategies according to researched information. This process allows organizations to identify profitable areas, avoid risk and develop business methods according to the marketplace.

Example: Coca-Cola uses market research to enhance consumer preference for healthy drinks, hence diversifying its options. Through trend analysis and customer feedback, the company has developed products such as Diet Coke, Coca-Cola Zero Sugar, and Vitamin-infused beverages to keep up with the changing needs of consumers.

2. Product Planning and Development: The process of creating and improving products to meet customer needs and market demands has been the focus of product design and development. It entails idea generation, ideas testing and bringing of products to market.

Example: The new iPhone by *Apple,* designed with new features and frequent updates, meets the evolving preferences of consumers. It is extensively researched and tested for user feedback to enhance design, improve performance, and bring in innovation, such as improved cameras, AI capabilities, and sustainability-focused materials.

3. Pricing Strategy: A pricing strategy helps firms determine product prices that generate profit margins and remain competitive in the market. Firms must consider their costs plus the trend in the market and what customers think when determining product prices.

Example: Amazon follows an automatic dynamic pricing strategy by adjusting the cost of the products in line with customer demand, competitors' prices, and prevailing market conditions. Amazon uses machine learning algorithms to adjust prices dynamically based on demand, competitor pricing, and market conditions, ensuring competitive pricing while maximizing sales

4. Promotion and Advertising: Businesses express value to the buyers of the product by using different means of communication. Good methods of promotion help people remember brands and attract buyers who raise revenue.

Example: Under the *"Just Do It"* campaign *Nike* forms emotional relationships with the customers that ultimately keep them loyal and enhance the market position of the company. The emphasis on inspiring individual achievements has resulted in a strong, personal bond between Nike and its customers, thus reinforcing brand loyalty.

5. Sales and Distribution Management: Sales and distribution management ensures products reach customers with efficiency. These include developing the distribution channels, logistics management, and quality marketing channels.

Example: Flipkart's extensive logistics network provides timely delivery to various destinations in India. Flipkart manages to make prompt and assured deliveries throughout the country with the help of local delivery services and supply chain management at its best.

6. Customer Relationship Management (CRM): CRM works to create lasting relations with customers which leads to more business loyalty. Businesses need to tailor experiences, offer great customer support and run rewards programs.

Example: Starbucks rewards program offers custom benefits to members which strengthens how they interact with the brand. It builds up a sense of community by understanding customer preferences and offering personalized promotions that encourage repeat visits and fosters loyalty.

7. Brand Management: The brand management team builds a positive view of the brand that makes customers interested. The way a brand stands out from its competition shapes how customers see them.

Example: BMW markets itself as a high-end performance car maker by sticking to its luxury messages and producing superior vehicles. BMW has been able to build a prestige image that speaks to high-income buyers by consistently emphasizing its heritage of craftsmanship and performance.

8. Marketing Control and Performance Measurement: Marketing control is an analysis of the marketing strategy and campaign to find where improvements are needed. Performance metrics help in the optimization of future marketing efforts.

Example: PepsiCo uses performance analytics to measure how effective its advertisement campaigns are so that it can improve its performance. Using consumer engagement data, sales growth, and brand sentiment, PepsiCo adjusts its marketing strategies for optimal impact.

Marketing management combines all parts to build a complete path that leads to better market standing, goal achievement and outstanding service to customers.

1.1.7 Core Elements of Marketing Management

Marketing management creates, delivers, and communicates value to customers to achieve organizational goals. It's a dynamic process that combines strategic thinking with customer-centric actions for the success of any business. Its core elements, therefore, make up the framework through which businesses can understand what their customers want, craft relevant offerings, and ultimately build strong relationships with their target audience. These become the core in developing comprehensive marketing strategies, market responsive and requiring, and also competitive environments. With these key areas of marketing, companies realise sustainable growth in brand loyalty as well as market and consumer advantages over competitive environments.

The core elements of marketing management are given below, discussed in detail along with real-world examples:

1. Value Creation: A company discovers what customers want and then makes a product or service to meet those requirements. The business studies customer wants and then supplies rewarding solutions. When businesses create value they develop happy customers who return and help them stand apart from competitors.

Example: Zomato observed that India required quick and easy food delivery services and restaurant discovery. Combining a user-friendly app with restaurant reviews, online ordering, and delivery options transformed the experience of dining and provided the edge for setting apart Zomato from other players in the market.

2. Market Research and Customer Insights: The success of marketing activities depends on having clear knowledge about current market developments and customer actions. Market research enables companies to make informed decisions based on data about customer preferences, competitor strategies, and market conditions.

Example: By studying viewer actions *Netflix* creates custom content suggestions to improve how customers find and enjoy streaming material.

3. Communication: Communication means letting potential customers know about a firm's products and convincing them to buy. The main communication methods include promotional activities plus advertising, brand development, and public relations. Direct communication makes customers understand our brand better and drives their buying actions.

Example: Memorable *Coca-Cola* advertising campaigns, such as the "Share a Coke" initiative, created personalized bottles with consumer names to create emotional connections and drive sales.

4. Exchange and Transactions: Barter refers to the process by which consumers obtain a product or service in exchange for something of value, usually money. Facilitating seamless transactions is essential for a successful marketing strategy.

Example: Amazon's one-click buying system streamlines the buying process, making it more convenient and driving sales.

5. Customer Satisfaction: Meeting or exceeding customer expectations is critical to customer satisfaction. Happy customers tend to be loyal, repeat customers and brand advocates.

Example: Zappos, an online shoe retailer, is known for its exceptional customer service, which includes free shipping and easy returns, resulting in high customer satisfaction and loyalty.

6. Business Mix (4Ps): There are four main elements of the marketing mix: product, price, place, and promotion. Each element of the marketing mix needs to be carefully managed to achieve an effective marketing strategy.

*Example: McDonald'*s customizes its menu (like the McAloo Tikki burger in India) which is low-priced and located in locations with high volumes of traffic; it also sponsors locally relevant advertisements to appeal to regional tastes.

7. Brand Building and Positioning: Branding establishes a unique identity and emotional connection with consumers while positioning differentiates the product from competitors in the market.

Example: Tesla has established itself as a leader in sustainable innovation and luxury electric vehicles, and is building a strong brand associated with technical and environmental responsibility.

8. Marketing Performance and Control: Measuring and reviewing marketing activities guarantee that strategies are effective. Organizations rely on key performance indicators such as the rate of sales growth, customer acquisition costs, and ROI to monitor their success.

Example: Google measures the success of its online advertisements by metrics like click-through rates and conversion rates to maximize campaigns. The integration of these basic elements transforms marketing management into a powerful tool for understanding market dynamics, enhancing customer value, and achieving long-term business success.

Did You Know?

"The 2024 Global Marketing Trends from Deloitte shows that 61% of marketing leaders think customer expectation knowledge drives successful marketing strategy. Companies that focus on customer insights achieve three times higher revenue growth than others"

1.2 What is in the 21st Century?

Marketing in the 21st Century: An Overview

Marketing in the 21st century is a fast-moving and continuously changing business function, reflecting rapid technological change, globalization, and shifting consumer expectations. The new marketing is not like the old; it requires speed, innovation, and comprehension of consumer behaviour. Businesses face a hyper connected world today with trends changing quickly and customer preferences changing overnight. In addition to the acceptance of new changes, even marketing managers must adapt and predict these changes for success in a competitive environment.

At the core of 21st-century marketing is connecting customers meaningfully using not only technologies and tools but also ethics and responsibility. Below are some central elements that define marketing within this century, followed by some examples of companies leading the way.

1. Technology-Driven Marketing

Technology has redefined how organizations interact with consumers, and with the current era focusing on data analysis, marketing techniques have never been more effective or efficient. There are key aspects to this:

a. Digital Marketing: The World Wide Web has become an extremely important means of spreading messages across countries. Digital channels thus allow global outreach with specifically tailored interactive content as increased adoption of mobiles and increasing Internet penetration rates do.

Example: *Nike* successfully employed Instagram and YouTube platforms to execute highly visual, with a touch of storytelling-based campaigns. Content, as developed at Nike, has brought home global customers' emotions toward both the brand as well as building customer loyalty.

b. Artificial Intelligence (AI): AI-based tools allow marketers to predict customer behaviour patterns, make recommendations, and improve customer service. AI enables brands to analyse vast amounts of consumer data, understand individual preferences, and predict future behaviours to create personalized experiences.

Example: Amazon uses AI for product recommendations based on past purchases and browsing history. This personalizes the shopping experience and increases sales by suggesting relevant items.

c. Big Data Analytics: The visualization of large datasets explains the preferences and requirements that customers have, further helping in running a business. With large volumes of data processed and analysed, businesses discover hidden patterns that can predict their customers' behaviours and improve decisions.

Example: Flipkart uses big data analytics to look into the kinds of browsing or purchasing patterns on the website; this helps develop personalized recommendations based on the most appropriate price of the product while ensuring that sufficient stock is readily available for use, thereby ultimately improving the customer shopping experience as well as its sales.

d. Automation: Automation tools automate recurring functions such as email marketing. Automation improves efficiency by streamlining repetitive tasks and freeing up resources for doing more creative or strategic activities.

Example: Companies like *HubSpot* use software solutions to manage campaigns, CRM, and analytics in one go. Automating routine tasks frees up time for more strategic initiatives in a business while also ensuring that the customer receives timely, personalized communication.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
"Digital Transformation in the 21st Century"
We Are Social, & Meltwater. (2023, March).

2. Consumer-Centric Approach

The modern consumer wants tailored experiences and more meaningful engagement with brands. Businesses that understand and take care of consumers' needs stand out in the competition. The key aspects are:

a. Personalization: Products and services should be tailored to suit individual preferences. It aims to meet specific customer needs with personalized offerings and thus creates a more relevant and engaging experience.

Example: *Spotify* uses playlists like "Discover Weekly" to keep users engaged and build loyalty. Through analysis of listening habits, Spotify offers personalized playlists that feel unique and enhance the user experience and the likelihood of continued usage.

b. Engagement: Interactive campaigns create deeper connections with customers. Engagement-driven strategies help customers feel a part of something, and more involved and valued.

Example: The topical ads of *Amul* engage the customers by commenting creatively on current events in an insightful and relatable manner. These ads spark conversations, encourage sharing on social media, and strengthen Amul's connection with its audience.

c. Experience Marketing: Creating memorable experiences fosters customer loyalty. It creates an immersive and enjoyable experience, which further enables businesses to develop deeper emotional relationships with the consumer.

Example: IKEA, a multinational conglomerate founded in Sweden, enhances its customers' experience by using augmented reality apps where users can envision furniture in their homes before they buy. Customers can interact with the product in a new and more meaningful way, creating confidence and satisfaction with the purchases.

3. Globalization and Diversity

Globalization has helped companies reach the maximum number of potential customers around the globe. However successful operations in many markets call for the acceptance of cultural variations, local preferences, and consumer behaviours. This includes:

a. Accepting Cultural Variability: To successfully venture into a global business, businesses need to understand the local flavour and cultural requirements of their chosen market. It will require product line modifications to make the features and flavours or designs amenable to regional tastes.

Example: Dominos India designed its menu to include vegetarian pizzas, spicy toppings, and paneer-based options as well so that it meets Indian dietary preferences. This cultural adaptation helped Domino's strengthen its presence in the Indian market.

b. Localized Content: Brands must ensure the marketing messages align with the values, language, and traditions where they operate in different regions. Localized content helps brands speak better to the audience and strengthens emotional connections better.

Example: The *Airbnb* website varies with the user's location. In the case of visiting the website from India, the content displayed includes local stays, payment in Indian currency, and culturally appropriate images. All this makes the brand familiar and trustworthy to users within the same location.

Fig 1.4 Globalization and Diversity

c. International Sites for Sales: Global e-commerce platforms can easily expand the business reach of small, medium, and large enterprises. These portals make international sales easy and accessible to businesses with minimal investment in heavy infrastructure.

Example: Amazon and Alibaba, both are leading platforms in the world of selling internationally, allowing businesses to reach millions of customers worldwide by using tools of language translation, currency conversion, and cross-border logistics. Alibaba also provides an opportunity for small businesses to make wholesale orders to buyers that effectively enables international trade.

4. Sustainability and Ethical Marketing

In the 21st century, more people are paying attention to how their money is being spent. Consumers are becoming conscious of the social and environmental impacts brought about by the brands they use. Consequently, companies demonstrating responsibility for sustainability and ethical practices gain customer loyalty and enhance their reputation. Aligning brand values with those of their consumers has become the key to building trust and long-term success. The main aspects are:

a. Eco-Friendly Practices: Sustainable business today depends heavily on using practices that protect the environment in all production activities. Businesses take sustainable steps by using power from renewable sources, eliminating excess materials, and decreasing carbon output while promoting recycling operations. Companies that invest in environmental protection methods serve nature and gain customers who want to live sustainably.

Example: ITC Limited has adopted an all-inclusive sustainability strategy since it emerged as a carbon-positive, water-positive, and solid waste recycling-positive company. ITC also integrates eco-friendly practices into its

operations through initiatives such as responsible packaging, afforestation, and renewable energy usage while promoting environmental conservation.

b. Ethical Messaging: Every marketing message needs to be honest and genuine to be considered ethical. When companies use ethical messaging, they reveal all details about their operations and demonstrate their positive social impact. When brands practice openness about their business they create trust and deepen emotional connections with customers. Ethical messaging shows what a brand does as a responsible member of society while offering more than product descriptions.

Example: The "Jaago Re" campaign by *Tata Tea* promotes social awareness by stressing issues like corruption, voting rights, and safety for women. Rather than promoting the product alone, Tata Tea leveraged the platform to encourage civic engagement and further cement its brand image as being socially responsible.

c. Cause-Driven Campaigns: Companies use cause-driven campaigns to publicly support social causes while showing their efforts to make the world better. When companies support social causes they help build good public opinion while earning repeat customers who support the same issues. Companies that add purpose to their business strategy stand out more easily from market competitors.

Example: One of the initiatives undertaken by *Hindustan Unilever* is called "Project Shakti." It is a program that trains rural women in India to become micro-entrepreneurs who sell Unilever products in their locality. This not only gives them economic independence but also expands the reach of the company in the country's rural markets.

5. The Rise of the Omni-Channel Approach

a. Integration of Online and Offline Channels: An omnichannel strategy connects all brand platforms to provide customers with a seamless and consistent shopping experience across different channels. This seamless integration helps ensure consistent brand messaging and customer satisfaction.

Example: Walmart enables customers to buy products online followed by choosing between in-store pickup or home delivery options. By letting customers choose between shopping channels our service improves convenience and keeps customers interested throughout.

b. Customer Journey Mapping: Companies watch and study how customers engage with them at every point to create an easy and connected brand experience over all platforms. His allows brands to personalize the experience based on individual customer behaviours.

Example: Starbucks achieves success by connecting its reward program to all its physical and digital store locations. Customers can set up advance payments on their cards and collect rewards when they use the same benefits across all our buying locations.

c. Unified Communication: When brands keep their communication style and visuals uniform throughout all platforms, they build customer confidence. Consistency in the message, design, and tone of the brand across all the platforms leads to customer trust and recognition. From advertisements, social media, and websites, to actual stores, the same tone in communication leads to a unified brand experience.

Example: From vending machines to social media, *Coca-Cola's* visual identity remains consistent to ensure that a constant brand image is communicated everywhere. Whether ads, packaging, or online sites, the ubiquitous red colour of Coca-Cola along with its iconic logo makes familiarization and trust easier for everyone.

6. Content as a Key Driver

a. Storytelling: When brands tell strong stories people feel more connected to them emotionally. Such storytelling makes the experience memorable, meaning the brand becomes more human and relatable. This emotional connection leads to stronger brand loyalty and repeat engagement.

Example: Through its "You Can't Stop Us" campaign *Nike* shares powerful tales of athletes succeeding despite challenges across a split-screen display of sportspersons from many backgrounds. These personal accounts help customers relate better to Nike because they demonstrate the brand's commitment to building inner strength.

b. Video Content: Digital media audiences respond best to video content. Videos are the format most engaging, grabbing the viewer's attention and sharing to generate further reach for brands. Video content also helps in building a more comprehensive understanding of the brand message.

Example: Through premium video content featuring extreme actions, *Red Bull,* a brand of energy drinks connects its brand with dynamic energy. Users can post and find content faster on YouTube alongside TikTok and Instagram which extends content reach and engages more customers.

c. User-Generated Content (UGC): When brands let customers talk about their positive experiences, they build true connections with their audience. UGC builds authenticity and drives recommendations from peers while increasing credibility as well as the trust factor. UGC also fosters a sense of community among the brand's audience.

Example: GoPro, an American technology company, displays user-shot footage from their cameras to illustrate how customers create unique content during adventures. When users generate content, it strengthens brand interactions while keeping marketing costs low.

d. Educational Content: When brands provide valuable information, they become recognized experts in their industry. As a leader, *HubSpot* gives users free educational materials through its blog posts, webinars and certification courses about marketing sales and customer relationship management. Through this method, companies develop reliable bonds with their patrons who return for repeat business.

Example: LinkedIn offers users various educational materials through its platform called LinkedIn Learning. The website offers courses in a wide array of topics ranging from marketing to data science; LinkedIn positions itself as a key player in professional development. With this, it enables the users not only to grow in their careers but also allows the users to have a long-term relationship with the site, hence causing users to visit and engage regularly.

7. Data Privacy and Security

a. Compliance with Regulations: Companies need to follow GDPR and CCPA to keep their customers trusting them. Following these rules will ensure legal compliance and uphold the rights and protection of customers about privacy. Compliance also prevents legal penalties and reinforces the company's commitment to ethical data handling.

Example: Google offers its users comprehensive data control tools that match worldwide privacy regulation standards. Through such tools, one can get his or her preference regarding personal data management as regards sharing, storage, or processing of this data.

b. Transparent Policies: Companies that show clearly how they handle customer data gain greater trust from their users. Such practice in dealing with data collected shall enhance customer confidence, whereby he or she would feel a connection with that particular brand during a transaction.

Example: Apple promotes privacy protection both in its ads and product designs. Its "Privacy - Our That's iPhone" promotional program makes customers feel safe about their personal information. These reassuring messages highlight Apple's commitment to privacy, keeping customers assured that all their data is safe and private.

c. Building Trust Through Security: Companies gain market advantages when they safeguard customer data. Adding advanced security measures, safeguard users' information and protect their online activities. Secure data protection methods help customers trust businesses and brands better.

Example: Razor Pay has a strong Indian payment gateway with features like advanced encryption and fraud detection, ensuring safe transactions and, therefore, gaining the trust of its customers.

8. Trends in Marketing Management

a. Influencer Marketing: Working with influencers helps brands reach their targeted customers. It helps brands target niche audiences to reach potential customers in a much more authentic and impactful way. By collaborating with influencers, a brand can get visibility and credibility among targeted consumer groups, hence making the brand message more relatable and trustworthy.

Example: Bajaj Allianz Life Insurance collaborates with influencers in the finance category to explain life insurance to their customers. The brand reaches niche pockets while making complex financial products relatable and trustworthy to potential buyers through such associations.

b. Voice Search Optimization: Brands now hold the responsibility to optimize web content for voice-activated devices like Amazon Alexa and Google Assistant. With more voice searches going on, it's time that businesses adapt content strategies to become more conversational and mobile-friendly to enhance customer experience.

Example: Domino's Pizza enables customers to order food using voice technology for a hands-free, convenient experience

c. Augmented Reality (AR) and Virtual Reality (VR): Using AR and VR customers now view products in innovative interactive ways. These technologies create immersive experiences, allowing customers to engage with products virtually, so they feel more confident in their purchasing decisions.

Example: Indian eyewear brand *Lens kart* has utilized augmented reality in its app, so that customers can try on glasses virtually. The AR feature in the app improves the online shopping experience, thus reducing uncertainty and increasing customer confidence in their purchase decisions.

d. Subscription Models: More people choose subscription services today because they deliver constant income and keep customers loyal. The subscription-based models offer predictable revenue streams for businesses and create an ongoing relationship with customers.

Example: Netflix and Spotify stand out for delivering personalized content which matches what their customers want to see and hear.

Marketing management in the 21st century requires agility, innovation, and a customer-centric focus. Hence, for Apple, Nike, or Sephora, success comes from high technology, meaningful content, and policies that synchronize with changing consumer preferences. To win, however, businesses need to be flexible, follow new trends, and continually build long-term relationships with customers.

Did You Know?

"Marketing management in the 21st century increasingly relies on data-driven strategies, with 64% of marketing executives strongly agreeing that data-driven marketing is crucial in today's economy, and companies adopting it being six times more likely to achieve year-over-year profitability."

1.3 Core of Marketing

The "Core of Marketing" is the underlying process of generating customer value by strategic exchanges satisfying customer needs and business goals as opposed to the strategies, principles, and components firms use in order to effectively serve target customers.. It transcends merely offering a product or service; it involves understanding the customer's needs and creating value that fulfils every point of the marketing strategy to serve the customer. The core of marketing forms a foundation for marketing and business success for the long haul.

The core of marketing is to offer value to the customer in such a way as to drive satisfaction and build loyalty. Businesses are better positioned to create long-lasting relationships with their customers, differentiate themselves from their competitors, and grow when they can master these key components of the core of marketing.

Core Marketing Components

1. Core Product: The core product means the basic solution that customers want from the product they buy. The core product goes beyond physical traits to deliver basic benefits that address customer requirements. A customer purchases a product mainly because of this basic value.

Example:

- The core product of a smartphone is its functional benefits, such as communication, connectivity, and access to information, rather than the physical device itself.
- For a vacuum cleaner, the core product is the cleaning and dirt-removal function it offers to keep homes or offices clean.

Understanding the central product helps in focusing on those things that essentially matter to business customers, creating offerings that talk to their targets.

2. Core Marketing Plan: A company uses a core marketing plan to detail its main business actions, assets and ways to connect with its chosen customer base. This component shows the step-by-step approach for delivering company offerings while adding customer value. The company's marketing activities need to follow its overall objectives so that everyone can track and measure results. Key components of a core marketing plan typically include:

- **Market Research:** This includes collecting and analysing data regarding customer behaviours, preferences, and all other market trends for more accurate decisions in marketing. It identifies the needs of customers and predicts changes in the market for better targeting.
- **Target Market Definition:** This describes the process for identifying and further segmenting your market to market to the groups that are expected to be profitable. Knowing these demographics, psychographics, and buying behaviours are what helps businesses appropriately tailor their approach.
- **Positioning:** Positioning is what will make a product or service stand out in the minds of the consumers. It is the unique identity that will make it stand out in a competitive market. Positioning helps the company differentiate its offerings from competitors and build a strong brand perception.

Fig 1.5 Core Marketing Components

- **Budgeting:** This includes the allocation of financial resources to the most effective marketing channels and activities that will result in the desired outcomes. Budgeting ensures that the marketing plan is financially

sustainable while optimizing spending efficiency across all activities. It allows for tracking ROI and adjusting strategies as needed.

Example: A new restaurant builds a marketing strategy that covers social media promotion, nearby advertisements, influencer deals and customer rewards systems to bring in and keep its audience. A basic marketing plan explains which advertising platforms will concentrate on plus our success measurement methods.

3. Marketing Concept: The marketing concept requires companies to build offerings that satisfy customers instead of simply trying to sell their stock. The approach requires companies to study and handle customer preferences and make sure all marketing moves support customer happiness. The marketing concept consists of three key ideas:

- **Customer Orientation:** A focus on satisfying customer needs is understood and turned into solutions and answers to requirements. This results in businesses serving the needs through products or service delivery, while providing real added value. Consequently, by sensing what customers wish to receive, more loyalty and enhanced relationships can occur.

- **Integrated Marketing Effort:** All departments are aligned from sales to product development, customer service, and more. The result is a unified approach toward marketing, where consistency in messaging and customer experience is maintained at all touchpoints. A well-coordinated effort strengthens the brand and amplifies its value proposition.

- **Profitability:** The marketing concept highlights long-term customer satisfaction as a primary means of ensuring repeat business. Therefore, by always meeting and exceeding the needs and expectations of the customers, businesses can establish customer loyalty, which leads to sustained profitability. This approach focuses on value creation rather than just short-term sales.

Example: Apple uses its marketing strategy to create new products that provide customers with better ways to use technology. Customers who buy Apple products become brand supporters because they trust the brand.

4. Marketing Planning Process: An organization develops its total marketing strategy by following a sequential planning approach. Marketing planning brings together all business efforts into trackable actions that work towards defined organizational targets. The process includes several key stages:

a. **Market Condition Analysis:** Knowing the external environment, including the needs of the customer, the market trend, and the competitive forces. A company needs to know what is going on in the market so it can react before anything goes wrong.

Example: A company launching a new eco-friendly product may analyse consumer trends toward sustainability and eco-conscious choices to tailor their marketing messages effectively.

b. **Identifying Target Audiences:** The segmentation of the market into a group that would share a specific characteristic or behaviour, enabling the business to target only the most likely people who will benefit from its offerings.

Example: Luxury car brands can target rich customers, whereas budget car brands may target first-time buyers or young professionals.

c. **Setting Marketing Objectives:** The marketing team establishes achievable and trackable benchmarks for marketing projects to pursue. Clear marketing objectives should represent both company-wide success targets and offer specific plans for marketing teams to follow.

Example: A company might have a goal to boost brand awareness by twenty per cent during the next six months through social media marketing.

d. **Development of Marketing Strategies:** Deliberation of tactics and strategies of how the marketing objectives can be achieved. This involves the selection of the marketing mix (product, price, place, promotion), choice of communication strategy, and the medium of distribution.

Example: A company might decide to use digital advertising, public relations, and events to promote a product launch.
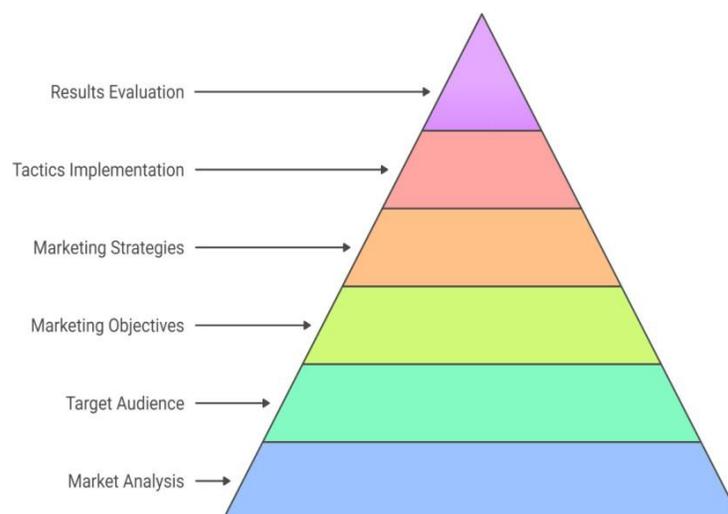

Fig 1.6 Marketing Planning Process

e. **Tactics Implementation:** In this step, the strategies and tactics set in the plan will be carried out. Tactics may include running advertising campaigns, launching promotions, or events.

Example: A company may initiate a seasonal discount campaign as part of its marketing strategy to boost sales within a given time frame.

f. **Results Evaluation:** Monitoring and measuring the effectiveness of the marketing efforts. In this stage, data is analysed to see whether the objectives have been met and adjustments are made to enhance future marketing activities.

Example: The company evaluates key performance indicators such as sales growth, customer engagement, and ROI after a campaign.

The Core of Marketing is a basic element for companies who want to understand customer connections and value delivery. When companies build their main offerings into strong marketing strategies and customer-focused plans they create market separation from rivals. The marketing planning process orders and quantifies all business actions toward achieving lasting success. Every part of the basic marketing system works to help businesses retain customers while expanding successfully over time.

Knowledge Check 1

Fill in the blanks:

1. The essence of marketing is directed solely at _____ products and services to customers. (selling / creating value)

2. A central marketing plan involves _____, definition of target market, positioning, and budgeting. (market research / production planning)

3. The marketing idea focuses on _____ -term sales rather than long-term customer satisfaction. (short / long)

4. _____ analysis in marketing planning enables organizations to gauge efficiency and enhance upcoming strategies. (Results / Cost)

1.4 Wants, Needs and Demand

In marketing, the distinctions between needs, wants, and demand are a good starting point to develop any successful strategy. The concepts become a basis for establishing products and marketing communications that

appeal to the customers' interests. Based on these definitions, marketers establish which motivations prompt the customers to buy certain goods or services.

1.4.1 Definition of Needs, Wants, and Demand

Needs: Needs are fundamental human needs to live or feel good. They are essential and natural, including food, shelter, and safety. They are not created by marketers but are a part of human life.

Example: A human being needs food to survive. This is a fundamental need, which is not affected by culture or personal wants.

Wants: Wants are defined by the culture, personal tastes, and environment of a person. Needs are universal but want differs from one individual to another. Wants to refer to specific means through which individuals attempt to fulfil their needs.

Example: Someone may need food, but what he or she wants is a particular meal, which can be pizza or sushi. The kind of food desired depends on individual preferences, which in turn are culturally and environmentally induced.

Demand: Demand is the willingness of a good or service supported by purchasing power, quantified both at the individual and market levels. It is the sum market demand for a product at a specified price level, making a want a demand when buyers are able and willing to purchase.

Example: Want is where a person may want a high-end smartphone and if he can afford to buy it in the marketplace, then demand is created. Demand defines the person's willingness to purchase in the marketplace.

1.4.2 Needs, Wants, and Demand Relationship

Need, want, and demand concepts are interrelated but different concepts. It becomes important for marketers to formulate strategies that have a direct interaction with the needs of the customer. The need-want-demand relationship is essentially a natural course: needs because wants, while wants become demands when supported by purchasing power.

How Needs to Create Wants?

Wants are based on needs. When individuals realize their needs, they will look for certain products or services to fulfil their needs. Wants are based on the desire to fulfil a need in a specific way, as influenced by culture and society.

Example: A person needs transportation (need), and according to their preferences or lifestyle, they might want a car (want) that suits their taste, such as a luxury sports car or a family sedan.

How Wants to Translate into Demand?

When the want of an individual coincides with his or her ability to pay for the product or service, it turns into demand. This is the point at which a customer does not only want a product but is also able and willing to buy it. A marketer tries to create demand for his or her offerings by identifying customer wants and providing solutions he or she can afford.

Example: A customer might desire an expensive laptop. A want, as a concept, would become a demand if there was sufficient money to support such an intention in the marketplace.

1.4.3 Kotler's Needs, Wants, and Demand Theory

Philip Kotler, a world-renowned marketing scholar, defines the relationship between needs, wants, and demand in an organized manner. His theory elucidates how marketers can apply these concepts to serve the expectations of customers. *Kotler* argues that even though needs are universal, wants and demand are created by marketing and purchasing power.

a. **Kotler's Perspective on Needs:** According to *Kotler*, needs are a basic necessity of human survival. Even though the needs do not change, the way humans satisfy these needs does. The marketer must determine the needs and then place his product or service as a solution.

   Example: A company selling bottled water identifies the need for hydration. The product, water, satisfies this basic need, and the marketing message emphasizes its essential nature.

b. **Kotler's Perception of Wants:** Wants, as *Kotler* points out, are influenced by culture, experience, and advertising exposure. A marketer cannot make demand but can build wants through the association of a desirable outcome or lifestyle to the product marketed.

   Example: Nike is creating a want for athletic shoes when their products are associated with an active, healthy lifestyle and elite athletes that shape the customer's desire for the specific product.

c. **Kotler's Perspective on Demand:** According to *Kotler,* demand is an outcome of wants supported by buying power. It means that generating demand for the business involves customer wants while, at the same time, providing enough in terms of the price and its availability. For marketers, making wants turn into demand is facilitated by emphasizing what it offers and provides to the client.

Example: A high-performance laptop at a price, marketed by a tech company may transform the want for technology to demand it to the students or young professionals with the financial capability to buy it.
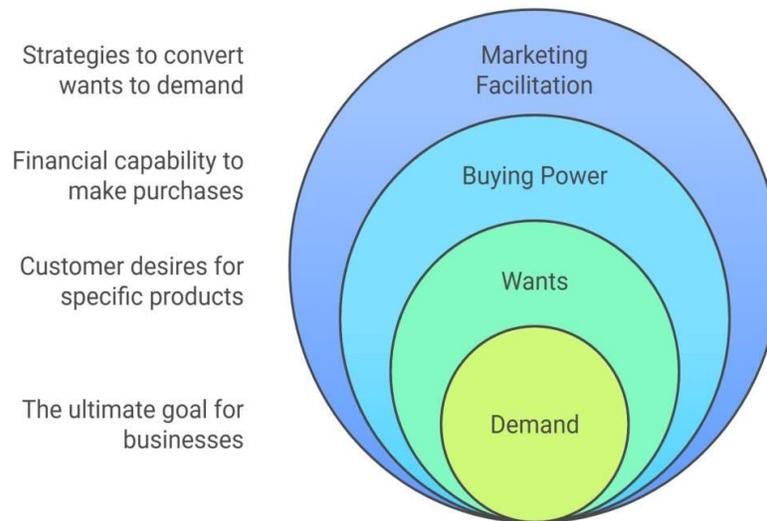
Fig 1.7 Kotler's Needs, Wants, Demand Theory

Needs, wants, and demand are three basic concepts of marketing. Needs are basic and universal; wants are culturally influenced desires; and demand occurs when wants are supported by purchasing power. According to *Kotler,* a marketer's function is to satisfy these concepts to formulate targeted and effective marketing strategies. This will allow the companies to be in better contact with their customers and fulfil the market expectations.

1.4.4 Role of Marketing Management in influencing Wants and Demands

Marketing management plays a very crucial role in determining the wants of customers and transforming them into demand. Through knowledge of consumer behaviour and preferences, marketing management creates strategies to determine what customers want and to make them act on it. Marketing management not only satisfies the needs of customers but also generates a demand for particular products and services through planned actions and strategies.

1. The Concept of Marketing Management

    a. **Customer-Centric Approach:** Marketing management focuses on the needs and wants of the customer so that the company ensures the successful delivery of products and services that appeal to its target market. Research and insights reveal what causes one's preferences and actions.

Example: Brands like ***Apple*** know that their customers want cutting-edge, technological products. With this knowledge, the marketing management team of Apple innovates every day, helping to shape customer expectations and create demand for new products.

b. **Creating Value:** The essence of marketing management is adding value to the customer. Offering products that respond to a given need or want, marketers translate those wants into demand. It involves positioning the product or service as the solution to the customer's problem, creating purchase intent.

*Example: **Tesla's*** marketing management has created a desire for electric vehicles by showing their environmental friendliness, technology, and luxury design. Not only do they serve the need to transport people, but they also cater to the increasing demand for green solutions.

2. Shaping Wants through Marketing Strategies

a. **Shaping Consumer Choice:** Marketing management can shape customer desires through some tactics, including advertising, brand positioning, and product differentiation. Brands influence what customers want by promoting specific characteristics, rendering them more desirable than others.

*Example: **GoPro*** is an American technology company founded in 2002 by Nick Woodman, shaping consumer needs by associating their cameras with adventure, travelling, and adventure sports. Advertising real-life, extreme sports-related footage makes those products the primary choice for consumers seeking to thrill their adrenaline flow.

b. **Personalization and Customization:** Contemporary marketing management tends to utilize personalization to render products more appealing. By providing products or promotional messages that are customized, firms address unique tastes and preferences, increasing the desire for a particular product.

*Example: **Vistaprint,*** a global e-commerce company, facilitates the designing process of business cards, marketing items, and also promotional products as desired by every customer. Creating endless options towards personalization or making the approach unique makes that process personalized so that the products created will be well-tailored to the businessman's identity.

3. Converting Wants into Demand

a. **Building Demand through Affordability and Accessibility:** Not only does marketing management build interest, but it also ensures that the customer can afford the product. A customer's want is turned into demand when the ability to pay has been met, usually through price or financing options.

Example: Netflix shaped the demand for its streaming service by offering cheap subscription plans that allow easy access to content. Their pricing strategy, coupled with the high availability of entertainment, converts the want for on-demand content into wide-ranging demand.

b. **Application of Promotion and Distribution Channels:** It helps increase demand with promotional strategies like sales, limited offers, and loyalty programs that trigger customers to respond to their wants. Optimizing the distribution channel also ensures products are available at the right time when the customer is ready to buy.

Example: With a complete plan of targeted advertisements, promotional discounts, and the promise of rapid delivery, *Amazon* shapes demand for its immense number of products. Its distribution system is so effective that once a consumer wants it, it appears instantly, changing that want into actual demand.

4. **The Role of Digital Marketing in Shaping Wants and Demand**

   a. **Targeted Advertising and Social Media:** The emergence of online marketing enables marketing management to influence customer desires more strongly through targeted advertising, social media, and influencer marketing. By directly targeting consumers with customized messages, brands can shape desires and generate demand for products.

   Example: Instagram advertising is an influential force in driving fashion and beauty product demand. Brands and influencers leverage beautiful content to motivate users, converting passive interest into engaged purchasing intent.

   b. **Data Analysis and Consumer Insights:** Digital marketing tools provide vast amounts of data about customer preferences, behaviours, and purchase history. By analysing this data, marketing management can predict and influence future wants, designing campaigns that directly target emerging trends and demands.

   Example: Spotify leverages data analysis to influence demand for music streaming through recommendations of playlists and songs according to user choices, increasing user engagement and subscription.

   c. **Ethical Issues and Consumer Trust:** As digital marketing influences wants and demand, it also poses ethical issues around data privacy, user tracking, and transparency. Consumers are becoming wary of highly personalized advertising, worried about data abuse or manipulation, which can influence brand trust and engagement.

Example: Apple's App Tracking Transparency feature is indicative of increasing demand from consumers for privacy, curbing advertisers from monitoring user actions without permission, thus impacting online marketing strategies.

5. Marketing Management's Impact on Long-Term Demand Creation

a. **Building Brand Loyalty:** Marketing management ensures long-term control over customer demands through building a loyal brand portfolio. Delivering systematic value and customer relationship management inspires customers to repeat purchases, often transforming infrequent wants into the continuous demand creation.

Example: Starbucks enhances its brand loyalty by offering regular loyalty programs combined with personalized awards and high service quality to shift the occasional coffee shop visit into regular visitation for beverage consumption.

b. **Continuous Innovation and Adaptation:** Marketing management must evolve continuously to keep pace with the changing consumer preferences and external market factors. By being ahead of the curve and innovating, marketers ensure that they continue to shape wants and maintain demand over time.

Example: Samsung continuously innovates its smartphones, introducing new features and improvements to meet consumer desires for better technology, thereby ensuring that customers' wants evolve into long-term demand for their products.

Marketing management is essential in moulding customer desires and translating them into demand. Through knowledge of customer behaviour, application of successful tactics such as individualization and segmentation, and making products and services accessible, marketers can create long-term demand for goods and services. Marketing management further shapes and maintains demand in the competitive market through innovation, persistent value creation, and customer loyalty.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. Which of the following describes fundamental and universal human needs, such as food, shelter, and security, which are not shaped by culture or individual taste?

    a) Honesty

    b) Needs

    c) Preferences

2. When does a desire for a product become demand?

    a) When the capability of an individual matches purchasing power

    b) When an individual keeps his buying decision confidential

    c) When a good is highly promoted

3. Based on Kotler, what determines the want for certain products by being affected by culture, experience, and advertising?

    a) Wants

    b) Words

    c) Actions

1.5 Exchanges and Relationships

Marketing is not just about selling products or services; it is about creating value through exchanges. An exchange occurs when two people exchange something valuable, such as goods, services, money, or even time. In contemporary marketing, however, businesses are no longer concentrating on transactions as one-time occurrences; they focus on developing relationships with customers for the long haul.

Relationships are important because customer loyalty results in repeat buying, word-of-mouth advocacy, and business growth. Businesses that know their customers' needs and have good relationships tend to outperform their competitors. Through establishing meaningful interactions and building trust, brands can secure long-term success in the current competitive marketplace.

1.5.1 Understanding Exchanges in Marketing

Exchange is the key marketing concept under which a seller and a buyer engage to meet each other's needs.A Successful exchange is not just about completing a transaction but ensuring that both parties derive benefits . Exchanges can take various forms, such as monetary transactions, bartering, and digital interactions.

1. Two or More Parties Involved: There needs to be a minimum of two parties who are willing to enter into the transaction. Both should have something of value to exchange, whether it is a product, service, or an idea. Companies need to make sure they bring in the right consumers to establish a successful exchange.

Example: A customer buys an EV scooter from *Ather Energy* (Indian electric vehicle company), participating in a transaction where the firm offers a product in exchange for money.

2. Something of Value to Give: Both parties need to give something that the other deems valuable. This value may be tangible (money, commodities) or intangible (trust, goodwill, quality of service). Without perceived value, there will be no exchange.

Example: A farmer sells organic wheat to *iD Fresh Food* (an Indian ready-to-cook brand) in return for bulk buy deals and improved prices.

3. Good Communication and Delivery: A successful exchange demands good communication and the capacity to deliver the exchanged product or service. Buyers need openness regarding product advantage, price, and availability before finalizing an exchange.

Example: Noise (an Indian smartwatch brand) explicitly states features and prices on its website so that customers make an informed choice before purchasing.

4. Freedom to Accept or Reject: Both parties need to willingly participate in the exchange and should have the freedom to accept or reject the offer. This guarantees fair competition and customer satisfaction.

Example: A consumer in the *D-Mart* (Indian retail outlet) chain can opt for comparison and check prices to judge the value to spend and thus the purchase option.

5. Mutual Benefit and Satisfaction: Successful exchange relies on mutual satisfaction among the involved parties. If the other side does not remain content after trading, there would be future resentment and hamper future deals.

Example: Lenskart (Indian eyewear company) provides a 14-day return guarantee, making the customer feel safe in their purchase and contributing to positive brand perception.

1.5.2 The Function of Relationships in Marketing

Beyond the one-time transaction, companies need to concentrate on building significant and long-term relationships with consumers. Relationship-building assists companies in building brand loyalty, repeat business, and word-of-mouth advertising.

1. Transactional Relationships: A transactional relationship is strictly a one-time exchange where the emphasis is on making a sale and not on keeping the customer. Companies that work on this model do not emphasize post-purchase interaction.

Example: An individual purchases a mobile phone recharge pack from *Jio* (Indian telecom brand) with no additional contact with the company, so it is a one-time transaction.

2. Long-Term Customer Relationships: Long-term customer relationship companies consistently provide value, customized services, and effective after-sales service. These firms foster in-depth connections with customers which result in future purchases and referrals.

Example: Nykaa (an Indian beauty and cosmetics platform) keeps customers engaged through loyalty rewards, customized beauty advice, and special discounts.

3. Business-to-Business (B2B) Relationships: B2B relationships are strategic partnerships where businesses collaborate for mutual advantage through bulk supply deals, co-branding initiatives, or technology partnerships. These relationships are built on trust, long-term contracts, and strategic alignment to ensure stability and shared growth.

Example: Maruti Suzuki (an Indian car brand) has long-term contracts with *Bharat Forge* (an Indian auto parts manufacturer) to source key engine parts.

4. Emotional and Brand Relationships: Some brands create strong emotional bonds with customers by aligning their marketing efforts with customers' values, hopes, cultural tastes and personal experiences. Emotional branding, take advantage of storytelling, advertising and customer interactions to create permanent psychological connections, promotes the loyalty of the deep brand.

Example: Amul (Indian dairy behemoth) builds an emotional connection with consumers by highlighting "The Taste of India", appealing to nostalgia and humor in its classic ads.

1.5.3 Fostering Strong Marketing Relationships

Effective companies spend on initiatives to create and sustain customer relationships. These initiatives build customer trust, interaction, and brand loyalty, guaranteeing sustainable business development.

1. Customer Interaction and Customization: Brands that engage actively with customers and offer customized experiences build stronger relationships. Businesses utilize AI, social media, and analytics to customize experiences based on personal preferences.

Example: PharmEasy (an Indian health tech startup) reminds customers about medicine and provides personalized health tips depending on a customer's medical background.

2. After-Sales Service and Support: Having consistent after-sales support instils trust in customers and makes them brand loyal. Customer support excellence from companies can drive higher retention levels and better word-of-mouth advertising.

Example: Tata Motors (Indian automotive behemoth) extends warranties and gives free car services, ensuring the satisfaction of the customer after purchasing.

3. Loyalty Programs and Rewards: Most companies launch customer loyalty programs to induce repeat buying by providing rewards, cashback, or special benefits. These programs retain customers by providing additional value.

Example: CRED (Indian fintech platform) provides special discounts and rewards to users for timely payment of their credit card bills.

4. Emotional Branding and Storytelling: Through storytelling about real brand experiences, firms engage their target audience on an emotional level. Emotional branding helps businesses shape people's perceptions and build brand loyalty.

Example: Tanishq (an Indian jewellery brand) weaves together ads that showcase Indian customs, sentiments, and values of family, making customers feel a sense of belonging.

Marketing today is not merely transactions but building good relationships that give rise to brand trust and lasting loyalty. Exchanges are the basis of marketing, but firms that invest in customer relationships acquire a

competitive advantage. Firms that interact with customers through personalization, post-purchase support, and emotional branding establish stronger brand reputations and achieve sustainable success in the long term.

Activity: The Evolution of Marketing in the 21st Century

Select a contemporary brand that makes efforts to engage with customers across digital channels, loyalty schemes, or targeted advertising. Examine how the brand enables exchange by providing products, services, or experiences in exchange for money, information, or attention. Describe how it fosters long-term relationships through social media engagement, customer service, or community activities. Assess how these efforts shape customer trust, loyalty, and brand advocacy in the digital age.

1.6 Defining Value

1.6.1 Introduction to Value in Marketing

In marketing, value is one of the most important concepts that capture the perceived worth of customers in a product or service versus what they sacrifice to get it. The value they perceive determines their purchasing behaviour and satisfaction in general. Value is important for companies, as it is the source of customer loyalty and competitive edge.

Definition: Value in marketing is the perceived benefits a customer gains from a product or service relative to the costs incurred to acquire it. The advantages encompass functional, emotional, and economic benefits, while the expenses encompass money, time, and effort.

Example: Tesla has been able to position its electric cars as being of high value by integrating cutting-edge technology, greenness, and luxury, which explains the premium price over conventional cars. Customers perceive the value to be high since the car is perceived as a symbol of status and as a green car.

Formula: Value = Perceived Benefits - Perceived Costs

Effect on Marketing: Marketers concentrate on value creation by product differentiation, customer experience, and positioning of the brand. When customers perceive value positively, they are more inclined to buy, select a brand repeatedly, and even pay a premium for the brand.

1.6.2 Types of Value

Value comes in several different types, all of which aim at satisfying a part of what customers want. These forms assist marketers in modifying their products or services to achieve greater effectiveness for their customers' needs. Let's understand the different types of values below.
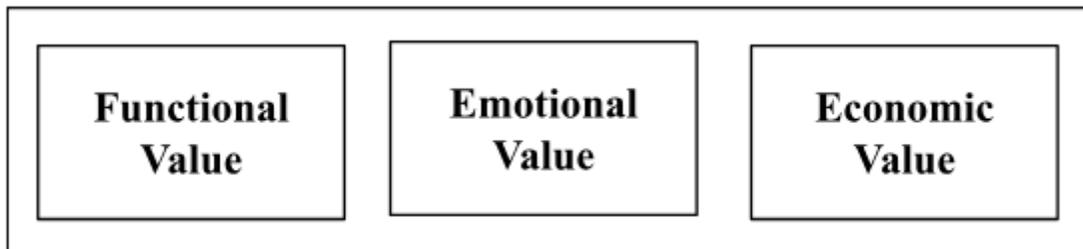

Fig 1.8 Types of Value

a. **Functional Value:** Functional value is based on the practical benefits and utility a consumer derives from using a product or service. Features, Performance, and Quality work together to assist a customer in solving a problem or meeting a need.

Example: Dyson vacuum cleaners offer high functional value through superior suction power, advanced filtration systems, and innovative design, which makes cleaning more efficient and effective. Consumers are willing to pay a premium for the superior performance Dyson offers over competitors.

b. **Emotional Value:** Emotional value is the psychological and emotive benefit that a customer derives from a good or service. It could be pride, happiness, or comfort obtained from the brand or a product experience.

Example: Apple uses its easy, user-friendly devices and established brand image to give emotional value to its customers. Owning an Apple product, iPhone or MacBook, makes the customers feel like they are connected with innovation and creativity, reinforcing brand loyalty.

c. **Economic Value:** Economic value is the perceived financial benefit that a customer gets in terms of cost-effectiveness or the long-term savings a product or service offers. Customers seek products that offer the best balance between price and quality.

Example: Walmart delivers economic value by providing low prices on a wide range of everyday goods, making it a go-to option for cost-conscious shoppers. The perceived savings are a significant driver of customer loyalty.

1.6.3 Customer Perception of Value

Value is subjective and different for every customer, based on their needs, likes, experiences, and expectations. Marketers must comprehend how customers perceive value so that they can craft strategies appealing to their target audience.

a. **Perception is Key:** Customers do not necessarily decide based on objective factors; rather, they are driven by their perceptions. These perceptions may be influenced by past experiences, word of mouth, social circles, and advertising.

   Example: BMW positions itself as a luxury vehicle brand, and people value its worth in terms of quality, performance, and prestige. Although other vehicles can provide identical performance at a lower cost, the value perceived in owning a BMW compels buyers to go for it.

b. **Factors Affecting Perception:** Components such as quality, brand name, customer service, and emotional bonding all play roles in how customers view value. A good customer experience strengthens the perceived value, while a bad customer experience will lower it, even with a high-quality product.

   Example: The value that *Tata Motors* establishes with its customers is centred on its promise of reliability and durability of products. Tata Motors promises customers the best engineering and after-sales service, thereby making customers willing to pay a premium even if the equivalent value from the competition could be had at a lower price.

c. **Value and Expectations:** Expectations of value on the part of customers are normally shaped by the experience with complementary goods or services. Expectations need to be handled with care by marketers since not meeting them can cause dissatisfaction.

   Example: Fashion store *Zara* has been able to fulfil customer expectations by offering stylish, high-quality clothes for reasonably low prices. Customers value the brand by equating fashion-driven designs with affordability.

1.6.4 Role of Pricing in Defining Value

Pricing plays a crucial role in defining the value of a product or service from the customer's perspective. The appropriate price signals the benefits and quality of the offer while aligning with customers' perceptions of value. Pricing strategies must take into account both the company's cost structure and the customer's willingness to pay. Let's understand the role of pricing in defining value.

a. **Price as a Signal of Quality:** Prices act as quality signals. Quality, innovation, or prestige may make high-priced products seem superior in quality. Conversely, low-priced products are likely to be perceived as having lower value unless other factors balance out the price difference.

Example: Rolex watches are sold at a premium price, and their value is not only in timekeeping but also in the status of wealth. High price reinforces luxury positioning and attracts customers who seek exclusivity.

b. **Value-Based Pricing:** In value-based pricing, the price is based not on the cost of production but on how much value is perceived by the customer. What the customer is willing to pay for the benefits and value also forms what drives the pricing model in these models.

Example: Tata Sky applies value-based pricing by offering a variety of subscription plans according to the preferences of customers for channels and features. Customers who prefer premium content and extra services, such as HD channels or multiple connections, are willing to pay a higher subscription fee.

c. **Discounting and Promotional Pricing:** Promotional pricing can be in the form of discounts or limited-time offers, which temporarily increase the perceived value of a product. Customers will perceive a product as more valuable when they get more for the same or lower price, especially if it provides time-sensitive savings.

Example: Big Bazaar frequently has seasonal sales where they offer a huge discount on products, especially during festivals like Diwali. These offers create a sense of perceived value for the product, making customers feel they are getting more for less.

d. **Pricing for Customer Segments:** Businesses may use differentiated pricing strategies to cater to various customer segments based on their perceived value. Different prices are set for different markets or customer types, ensuring that the offering is attractive to each group.

Example: Ola practices dynamic pricing that alters their fares at time and distance through the analysis of demand. Prices are different, for instance at peak time because of increased values on convenient or quicker services from the driver compared to budgetary-conscious at times when not that busy.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
"Harvard Business Review - Marketing Is Everything"
The Boat Story. McKenna, R. (1991).

1.6.5 How Marketers Can Create Value

Value creation is the foundation of every effective marketing strategy. Marketers need to know what customers desire and require, and then provide solutions that surpass expectations. Creating value entails knowing customer desires, differentiating the product or service, and continuously improving offerings so that customers gain maximum advantage.

a. Understanding Customer Needs and Wants: To build value, marketers need to begin by thoroughly comprehending customer needs, desires, and expectations. Through market research and the study of customer behaviour, companies can customize their products and services according to the unique needs of their target market.

Example: Bajaj Auto creates value by designing its motorcycles and scooters according to the needs of Indian consumers, keeping in mind the factors of fuel efficiency, affordability, and durability. Bajaj continues to refine its product offerings through constant market research and customer feedback to stay relevant to local customers.

b. Product Differentiation: Value can be created by marketers through product differentiation. This means making the product unique, better quality, or an experience that stands out in the crowded marketplace from that of the competitors.

Example: Maruti Suzuki offers various car models with different features to cater to customer preferences, ensuring that each model meets specific tastes."

c. Personalization and Customization: Personalizing products to meet a customer's preferences is one effective way of value creation. Through personalized messaging, customized products, or tailored services, customers are likely to perceive value when their specific needs are met.

Example: Spotify offers a personal music experience based on individual listening habits by providing recommendations for playlists. This level of customization increases the satisfaction of the customer and thus leads to more usage.

d. Adding Value to Customer Experience: Value creation goes beyond the product. It encompasses making the customer experience exceptional. A marketer can create value through ease of use, convenience, good customer service, and ensuring a hassle-free experience at every touchpoint.

Example: Reliance Jio brings value to the company through low-cost internet data plans, quality connectivity, and good customer support. Reliability and availability in accessibility improve the overall user experience when opting for this service for millions of users.

e. Communication of Value Proposition Effectively: Not only must the value be created, but the value should also be communicated well to customers. A strong value proposition must clarify the benefits to be delivered and why a customer should buy one product instead of another alternative.

Example: Tesla's value proposition is sustainability, innovation, and cutting-edge technology. All these values can be effectively communicated through the vehicle to attract environmentally conscious consumers who would pay more for electric vehicles.

f. Continuous Improvement and Innovation: To ensure value creation, marketers need to constantly innovate and develop their products and services. Keeping abreast of market trends and updating emerging customers' needs will make businesses stay competitive and relevant.

Example: Samsung keeps on investing in research and development, and as a result, new models of smartphones are released every time with advanced features like enhanced cameras, increased battery life, and faster processors.

g. Fostering Strong Relationships and Brand Commitment: Marketers can generate long-term value through the building of strong relationships with customers and brand loyalty. By interacting with customers and providing loyalty programs, companies can enhance the perceived value in the long term, leading to repeat business and word-of-mouth.

Example: HDFC Bank maintains long-term relationships and brand commitment by providing customized financial services, reward programs, and customer engagement programs. Its loyalty programs, for example, are in the form of HDFC Bank Regalia Credit Card, which rewards its customers with rewards that help create long-term brand loyalty and repeat business.

Marketers create value through customer needs, product differentiation, experience personalization, and continuous innovation. The unique benefits of the product, as well as the seamless customer experience, can make the business strong, increase brand loyalty, and lead to a competitive advantage in the market. Value

proposition and continuous improvement are thus the ways by which companies become relevant and successful over time.

> **Did You Know?**
>
> "Value-based pricing is a pricing strategy that can lead to higher profit margins. 60% of companies that use value-based pricing report higher profitability compared to those that rely on cost-plus pricing models."

1.6.6 Value and Satisfaction

In marketing, satisfaction and value go hand-in-hand. Value is the benefit perceived by a customer for what they sacrifice, i.e., money, time, or effort. Satisfaction is the customer's feelings against their expectation. If the product or service satisfies or exceeds expectations, the customer becomes satisfied, resulting in brand loyalty, word-of-mouth communications, and repeat business.

Businesses are not merely focused on selling but on delivering genuine value to customers, which in return reinforces long-term relationships. Awareness of how value affects satisfaction can assist companies in formulating effective pricing, product, and service strategies.

(A) Understanding Customer Value

Customer value refers to the amount by which a consumer can benefit from a product exceeds the price they have to pay in order to have it. Where benefits are higher than costs, the perceived value is high.

1. Perceived Benefits vs. Cost: Consumers assess value based on comparisons between what they get (quality, convenience, brand prestige) and what they sacrifice (money, time, effort). High-value results when customers feel they receive more than they have expended.

Example: boAt (Indian audio brand) delivers quality sound at low prices, thus a high-value option for young Indians.

2. Types of Value (Functional, Emotional, Social): Value is not all about price—there are functional (performance), emotional (brand relationship), and social (prestige) values. Firms need to strike a balance among these in order to make their offerings appealing to customers.

Example: Royal Enfield (an Indian bike company) delivers functional value (longevity), emotional value (riding experience), and social value (status among biking groups).

3. Total Customer Value vs. Total Customer Cost: Customers weigh total value (product benefits, brand reputation, post-purchase support) against total costs (effort, time consumed, cost). A strong value proposition makes customers feel it is worth their money.

Example: Mamaearth (an Indian skincare brand) offers natural, toxin-free products with green packaging, warranting a premium price for health-focused consumers.

(B) Customer Satisfaction and Marketing

Satisfaction is an outcome of how a product or service performs compared to customer expectations. It impacts customer loyalty, customer retention, and company reputation.

1. Expectations and Performance: Satisfaction depends on whether a product delivers as promised. If it performs as promised, customers are neutral; if it performs better, they are delighted; if it performs poorly, they are dissatisfied.

Example: Tata Nexon EV (Indian electric vehicle) surpassed expectations by providing long battery life and price competitiveness, which resulted in excellent customer satisfaction.

2. Value of Consistency in Satisfaction: Customer satisfaction through consistency is the key to building brand loyalty. When a company can maintain high service and product standards consistently over a while, it develops trust and a positive brand image.

Example: Paper Boat (an Indian beverage company) maintains consistency in offering nostalgic-tasting, natural beverages, establishing a loyal customer base.

3. After-Sales Service Role: Apart from product quality, satisfactory after-sales service increases satisfaction. On-time support, hassle-free returns, and guarantees reassure customers, making them feel important.

Example: Samsung India (consumer electronics company) picks up mobiles for repair from the customer's home, providing a trouble-free customer experience.

4. Measuring Customer Satisfaction: Companies measure satisfaction using customer feedback, questionnaires, and Net Promoter Scores (NPS). Customer sentiment gives companies an insight into how they can enhance their products and services.

Example: Swiggy (an Indian food delivery brand) monitors live customer ratings of food and delivery services to improve user experience.

(C) The Relationship Between Value and Satisfaction

Value and satisfaction go hand in hand—a product providing high value has a greater likelihood of satisfying consumers. Consumers realize value when a product's advantages outweigh its price, and satisfaction is based on the extent to which the product meets or exceeds expectations. Companies that consistently provide high value establish positive experiences, building brand loyalty and advocacy.

1. High Value Leads to High Satisfaction: When consumers perceive that they are getting great quality for what they pay, they realize high value, which increases satisfaction. An optimally priced product with sound features not only fulfils but over-delivers customer expectations, leading to trust and repurchase. Brands capable of sustaining this balance effectively retain customers and enhance brand equity.

Example: Tata Tea (an Indian FMCG company) provides low-priced premium tea blends with multiple flavors and health benefits, making customers believe they are getting higher quality at a reasonable price, and providing higher long-term loyalty.

2. Dissatisfaction Due to Perceived Low Value: When a product is not worth its price or is not up to expectations, customers feel dissatisfied and look for alternatives. Dissatisfied customers tend to provide negative word-of-mouth, which hurts the reputation of the brand. Companies need to make sure that they provide value in terms of quality, service, and price to avoid losing customers.

Example: Air India (an Indian carrier brand) saw discontentment caused by excessive fares but inconsistent level of service, delayed departures, and miserable customer experiences that led customers to shift to substitute airlines such as IndiGo and Vistara.

3. Emotional Value Develops Customer Affinity: Aside from functional value, emotional value is also important in customer loyalty. When a brand resonates with a customer's values, beliefs, or lifestyle, it forms a stronger emotional bond. Customers who identify with a brand's purpose and identity become more loyal and are likely to promote it.

Example: Fabindia (ethnic wear brand) creates strong emotional bonds by selling traditional, handmade clothing created by local artisans, upholding sustainability and Indian heritage, and making customers feel good about their purchase beyond the product itself.

4. Satisfaction and Trust Guarantee Repeat Sales: Happy customers trust a brand and will come back for repeat business. Quality consistency, price consistency, and consistency in customer experience build trust that

compounds over the long term. Companies focusing on customer satisfaction with custom services and excellent after-sales support develop enduring relationships that lead to revenue growth.

Example: HDFC Bank (an Indian banking brand) keeps customers by providing effortless digital banking, 24x7 customer support, and tailored financial solutions such as pre-approved loans, delivering convenience and dependability, generating repeat business and word-of-mouth.

Value and satisfaction are the centre of customer experience. Firms need to provide high perceived value in the form of quality products, equitable prices, robust service, and emotional connection. The customer is happy and loyal, and they recommend the brand, when they perceive that they are getting more than they are giving. Companies that focus on value creation and sustained satisfaction achieve a competitive advantage in the market.

1.7 Summary

❖ Marketing management is a core business activity that entails examining, planning, carrying out, and regulating approaches to satisfy the needs of customers and fulfil organizational objectives.

❖ Marketing's development has moved from production orientation to societal marketing and relationship marketing in the digital age as consumer tastes have shifted and technology has evolved.

❖ The core of marketing is understanding customer needs, creating value, and fostering long-term relationships through effective exchange and communication processes.

❖ Kotler's theory focuses on the connectivity of needs, wants, and demands and explains how marketing constructs consumer demand and purchase behaviour.

❖ Value creation is at the heart of successful marketing, encompassing functional, emotional, and economic value perceived by consumers against costs.

❖ Pricing strategies are essential to determine value, with methods such as value-based pricing and dynamic pricing designed for various customer segments.

❖ Marketers build value through product differentiation, personalization, innovation, and customer experience improvement across all touchpoints.

❖ The marketing environment of the 21st century is dominated by technology-based tactics, globalization, sustainability issues, and omnichannel strategies.

- Data privacy, influencer marketing, and augmented reality are some of the trends defining contemporary marketing practices.

- Successful marketing management demands a customer-focused policy, relentless adjustment to market trends, and coordinated harmonization of marketing components.

1.8 Key Terms

1 **Value Proposition:** Value proposition describes the benefits and value of a company's products or services to its customers. It gives the brand an edge over the competition and explains why customers should select it.

2 **Market Segmentation:** The process of dividing a large target market into smaller groups of consumers who have similar needs, characteristics, or behaviours. This allows for better targeting and positioning of products or services.

3 **Omnichannel Marketing:** This is an integrated marketing approach, offering customers seamless experiences across all channels and touchpoints. This way, there is consistency in messaging and brand experience between online and offline platforms.

4 **Marketing Mix (4Ps):** It is a framework used to define a company's marketing options in terms of Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. This helps to create a marketing strategy that matches the needs of customers and the goals of an organization.

5 **Customer Relationship Management (CRM):** The technology-based approach that manages a company's interaction with its customers and potential customers. It includes analyzing data to help business relationships, customer retention, and subsequent sales growth.

6 **Digital Transformation:** Digital transformation is an integration of digital technology in all aspects of an organization, fundamentally changing how it operates and delivers value to the customer. It often leads to organizational and cultural change and challenges the status quo.

7 **Market Differentiation:** This process is defined as the differentiation of a company's products or services from competitors with a unique value proposition. That is, differentiating it for specific customer groups by focusing on distinctive features or benefits.

8 **Globalization:** It is a process of increasing interconnectedness of economies, cultures, and populations worldwide through trade, technology, and communication. It results in the growth of businesses across national boundaries and the integration of global markets.

9. **Product differentiation:** This refers to a marketing approach that makes an offering unique among competitors by emphasizing outstanding or unique attributes, features, and benefits that would create a form of advantage and appeal to the target customer.

10. **Promotional Pricing:** It is a short-term pricing strategy where products or services are offered for sale at a temporarily reduced price to stimulate sales. It helps attract new customers, increase market share, and clear inventory using time-limited discounts or special offers.

1.9 Descriptive Questions

1. Assess the development of marketing orientations ranging from production to societal marketing. Analyse how these developments impact business strategies and what factors contribute to these changes.

2. Examine how big data and analytics shape today's marketing approaches. How can an organization use those tools to improve competitive advantage and what are ethical considerations when gathering and using information from customers?

3. Discuss critically the influence of sustainability and ethics on marketing practices. How can profitability be balanced with social responsibility? What strategies might create real value for customers and society?

4. Analyze the concept and importance of customer lifetime value and how businesses may effectively calculate and use it in customer acquisition and retention strategies.

5. Assess the effectiveness of influencer marketing in the digital age. What are the factors that companies should consider when choosing influencers, and how can they measure the ROI of influencer campaigns?

6. Discuss the challenges and opportunities that globalization poses to marketers. How should a company make adjustments to its marketing mix to survive in an array of international markets yet still brand consistent?

7. Investigate the impact of artificial intelligence and machine learning on the evolution of marketing practice. In what ways are these technologies applied to enhance customer experiences and optimize marketing efficiency, and what potential limitations should marketers consider?

8. Analyze the value of having a strong value proposition in the contemporary competitive business environment. How do organizations communicate the value proposition effectively across different marketing channels?

9. Discuss the concept of omnichannel marketing and its importance in the 21st-century retail landscape. How is it different from multichannel marketing, and what are some of the challenges businesses face when trying to execute an effective omnichannel strategy?

1.10 References

1. "Marketing Management" by *Philip Kotler* and *Kevin Lane Keller*

2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by *Philip Kotler, Hermawan Kartajaya*, and *Iwan Setiawan*

3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by *Michael Porter*

4. Consumer Behaviour by *Schiffman* 12th Edition

5. Marketing Warfare by *Jack Trout* and *Al Ries*

6. "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by *Michael R. Solomon*

7. https://www.deloitte.com/global/en/our-thinking/insights/topics/marketing-sales/content/global-marketing-trends.html

8. https://porchgroupmedia.com/blog/25-data-driven-stats-2018/

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1. creating value
2. market research
3. long
4. Results

Knowledge Check 2

1. b) Needs
2. a) When a person's ability aligns with their purchasing power
3. a) Wants

1.11 Case Study

The Boat Story: How Marketing Can Drive Success

Marketing is a driving force behind any business's success, shaping everything from product creation to customer happiness. This case study discusses how a firm, by utilizing effective marketing, overcame its challenges and effectively differentiated itself in the market. The most important lesson that can be learned from this case is that marketing is not merely about selling a product—it's about knowing the customer, building value, and forming strong relationships.

Background

Boats Unlimited is a mid-sized boat manufacturer with more than 20 years of experience. It initially produced various standard boats and sold them to recreational users. However, with increasing competition in the boating industry, Boats Unlimited experienced a stagnation in sales. The management realized that it had to reassess its marketing strategy and develop a brand different from others in the industry.

In the process of handling this, they agreed to come up with a new marketing campaign that was value-oriented towards the boats to the customers. The campaign entailed identifying a specific value proposition, transforming the customer's needs and wants, and then communicating how their boats could add life to their customers' days. This, through strategic marketing efforts, meant not only sales increases but the establishment of a presence in the market as a customer-centric company.

Problem 1: Lack of Clear Value Proposition

The organization had difficulty developing a clear and compelling value proposition to customers. Marketing messages were inconsistent, and the potential value of their products was not well communicated. Without a strong value proposition, potential customers did not know why they should choose Boats Unlimited over its competitors.

Solution:

- Establish a Strong Value Proposition: The firm had to develop an advertising message that conveyed the important values of its products, including quality craftsmanship, sophisticated features, and an unbeatable customer experience.

- Customer-Focused Messaging: Prioritize customer requirements by positioning their boats as a vehicle to improve the lifestyle of the customer, highlighting features like adventure, relaxation, and relation with nature.

Conclusion:

The case of Boats Unlimited demonstrates the transformative power of strategic marketing. By identifying a clear value proposition, aligning marketing messages with customer needs, and ensuring consistent communication, the company was able to overcome stagnation and re-establish its market presence. This case highlights that marketing is not just about selling but about creating meaningful connections with customers, emphasizing value, and fostering long-term relationships. Businesses that prioritize customer-centric strategies can successfully differentiate themselves and achieve sustainable growth.

Reflective Questions:

1. How can businesses ensure that their value proposition remains relevant in an evolving market?
2. What role does consistent brand messaging play in building customer trust and loyalty?

Unit 2: Marketing Environment

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will be able to comprehend the meaning and importance of the marketing environment in determining business strategy.
2. Learners will examine the influence of microenvironment and macroenvironment elements on marketing choices.
3. Learners will discuss ways of responding to marketing environmental changes effectively.
4. Learners will analyze how companies respond to external and internal environmental changes to ensure market competitiveness.

Content

2.0 Introductory Caselet

Embracing Technology for Business Growth at VisionTech

Samantha is a technology enthusiast at VisionTech, a startup that develops interactive digital experiences. The organization is growing its business by using Artificial Intelligence (AI), Augmented Reality (AR), and Virtual Reality (VR) to increase user interaction across industries.

Vision Tech machine learning solutions, for example, chatbots and machine learning algorithms, allow customized user experiences and streamlined digital operations. Their data analytics contributes to the prediction of user behavior, making service delivery better.

The company also makes use of AR technology to narrow the gap between the real and virtual world. VisionTech AR shopping guide enables customers to see furniture in their homes before making a buy. Medical students also gain from AR-guided surgical simulations to enhance their learning process.

With VR, VisionTech develops immersive virtual spaces to facilitate remote teamwork, allowing global teams to collaborate as if they were in the same place. They also test a VR therapy program to treat anxiety disorders by exposing patients to controlled virtual stimuli.

But as VisionTech progresses, ethical issues emerge. Problems such as data privacy, addiction of users, misinformation, and bias in AI algorithms must be resolved. Samantha and her team realize that innovation must be balanced with ethics for sustainable business development.

Critical Thinking Question:

How can businesses ensure that AI, AR, and VR are developed and utilized ethically while driving business growth and technological advancements?

2.1 Introduction to Marketing Environment

2.1.1 Meaning and Definition of Marketing Environment

The marketing environment is the collection of internal and external factors that determine a firm's capacity to develop, market, and deliver products or services that satisfy customer requirements. The factors as a whole determine the manner in which a business operates, how it communicates with its customers, and how it competes. The marketing environment provides the basis on which businesses identify opportunities in the market, forecast problems, and come up with efficient marketing strategies.

All businesses work within an ever-changing environment in which different forces continuously influence its marketing choices. Some of the forces are within its control, for example, product quality, pricing, or promotions, whereas others are not, for instance, shifting customer needs, economic circumstances, or technology. As a result, businesses need to be extremely responsive to the marketing environment to stay competitive, profitable, and customer-driven.

The marketing environment is a widely recognized concept in marketing. It can be described as the total combined forces and factors, both internal and external, that influence an organization to establish and sustain effective relationships with its target markets. These factors can either directly or indirectly affect business operations, product lines, promotional activities, and overall market positioning. Knowing the marketing environment allows businesses to find trends, anticipate changes in the marketplace, and react favourably to maintain growth.

One of the most significant features of the marketing environment is that it is constantly evolving. The environment keeps evolving in response to changes in the economy, government regulations, advances in technology, and consumer tastes. Firms that monitor and respond based on change are most likely to thrive in the long term."Without considering the marketing environment, businesses risk losing competitiveness, lowering levels of customer satisfaction, and in turn, failing business.

"In the real world, the marketing environment is an essential framework through which organizations can study three primary areas: market trends, consumer behavior, and competitors. Learning these areas allows companies to launch suitable products, create efficient promotional programs, and place their brands in the

optimal position in the market. In addition, it also enables companies to forecast likely challenges and opportunities, thereby allowing good strategic decision-making.

Lastly, the marketing environment is critical in the formulation of a company's general marketing strategy. Through it, companies can grasp the evolving demands of customers, the market forces, and the competitive forces to which they are exposed. Hence, organizations that are knowledgeable regarding their marketing environment are well-placed to experience long-term growth, establish customer loyalty, and attain long-term success.

For example, an organization such as *Apple* keeps changing to fit emerging technology and shifting customer trends by introducing new products and apps. Likewise, an organization such as *McDonald's* alters its menu across various nations to local tastes, regional requirements, and customer behaviour. These are illustrations of how the market environment directly influences business decision-making and customer satisfaction.

2.1.2 Significance of Studying Marketing Environment

Analysis of the marketing environment is essential for firms to know what affects their operations, marketing approaches, and customers. The marketing environment is continually evolving as a result of economic, social, technological, and competitive changes, necessitating that firms remain updated and responsive. Knowledge of the marketing environment enables firms to be aware of opportunities, reduce threats, and position themselves well in the market. It also maintains firms as customer-centric, competitive, and market-oriented. By doing so, it enables companies to fuel growth, innovation, and customer satisfaction.

1. Adaptation to Changes: The business environment is constantly changing, so companies need to adapt their marketing strategies to remain competitive over time."Economic conditions, government regulations, pricing, and customer behaviour force companies to adjust their product lines, promotions, and operational strategies. Companies that adapt in terms of changing their practice will run to maintain their market share and economic welfare.

Example: India's leading FMCG brand, *Patanjali*, adapted to the new demand for natural and Ayurvedic products by starting a line of herbal food and personal care products. With adaptation, Patanjali won a major market share and was able to compete with international brands in India.

2. Anticipating Market Forces: One of the most important reasons to study the marketing environment is to expect and forecast future trends in the market. Organizations are well-deployed to develop visionary products or services that meet future customers' needs in customer preferences, technological progress, or industry progress. Such a forward-thinking strategy enables firms to establish first-mover advantages and seize emerging market opportunities.

Example: Reliance Jio estimated the increasing demand for affordable internet services in India. With the introduction of affordable data packs and 4G coverage rollouts in rural and urban areas, Jio gained considerable market share and revolutionized the Indian telecommunications industry.

3. Threat Identification: A thorough examination of the marketing environment enables organizations to understand the potential threats that may adversely affect their operations, sales, or image. The threats may arise from changes in customer tastes, new entrants into the market, economic downturns, or changes in regulatory policies. Threat identification in the initial stages enables organizations to institute countermeasures to cushion their effects and maintain their market share.

Example: When *Amazon* entered the Indian e-commerce segment, Flipkart rapidly perceived the threat of global competition. In order to preserve its market share, Flipkart launched exclusive online offers, tie-ups with large brands, and improved delivery services, thereby establishing itself as one of the largest players in the Indian e-commerce sector.

4. Get Competitive Benefits: Understanding the marketing environment helps companies achieve competitive benefits by analyzing competitive strategies, market trends and consumer behavior. Companies can identify market opportunities, improve their products, and differentiate themselves through new marketing strategies. Understanding contestants helps companies make strategic tricks that increase their brand positioning and market share.

Example: Zomato became competitive in the food ordering industry through live order tracking, simple app interface and attractive discount offers. By monitoring regular trends and consumer demands, Zomato was ahead of the competition from platforms such as Swiggy and Uber Eats in most parts of India.

5. Increase Customer Satisfaction: A deep understanding of the marketing environment enables companies to strategically position their products, services, and promotional efforts to suit the needs and preferences of customers. Companies with an awareness of changing customer trends can offer customized services, develop

high-quality products, and develop strong relationships with target markets. It further maximizes customer satisfaction and brand loyalty.

Examples: Big Bazaar continuously observed the changing consumer trends in India, such as organized retail and hypermarket retailing trends. By offering low-cost goods, weekly discounts and festival discounts, the Big Bazaar managed to set up a loyal customer base and run footfalls in all its stores.

Comprehending the marketing environment is not merely watching trends in the market but also formulating strategic and informed business choices. By predicting trends, conforming to change, identifying threats, acquiring a competitive edge, and improving customer satisfaction, businesses can maintain long-term growth and stay relevant in a competitive market.

2.1.3 Classification of Marketing Environment

The marketing atmosphere can be divided into two broad categories: internal environment and external environment. Both environments together determine how businesses set up their marketing strategy, engage with customers, and accomplish their organizational goals. While the internal environment consists of controllable factors within the company, the external environment comprises uncontrollable factors beyond the company that impact its operations significantly.

Firms have to know these two categories so that they may develop effective advertising campaigns, foresee issues, and respond positively to changing market patterns. By scrutinizing the external and internal environment, firms can direct their operations as per market demand and become prosperous in the long run. The most important elements of the **Internal environment** are:

1. Company's Mission and Vision: The Mission and vision of a company determine its long-term objectives, purpose, and orientation by which the business aims to grow. They significantly influence marketing policies, product positioning, and organizational culture overall.

Example: HDFC Bank has a vision to become the world's most customer-centric financial services organization. This motivates their customer-centric marketing approach, resulting in pioneering banking products such as personal loans, credit cards, and internet banking services, thereby ensuring high customer retention.

2. Organizational Structure: The internal organization of a firm, such as leadership, departmental coordination, and hierarchy, influences decision-making and the execution of marketing strategies. An effective organization enables quicker and better marketing decisions.

Example: Dabur India operates with a properly structured organization that has teams for marketing, R&D, and product development working together in coordination. Through this structure, decision-making processes are quicker and Dabur can launch ayurvedic and herbal products such as Dabur Honey and Dabur Chyawanprash, bettering market dominance.

3. Company Culture: The organizational culture that encompasses common values, norms, and work practices has a large influence on employees' productivity, customer service, and general business performance. Good and customer-centric culture assists businesses in building brand loyalty.

Example: Swiggy has a high-performance work culture where innovation, rapid delivery service, and intense customer interaction are promoted. This culture has helped Swiggy dominate the online food delivery space and create strong brand loyalty.

4. Financial Resources: The extent of financial resources determines the ability of a company to invest in advertisement campaigns, product innovation, distribution channels, and market research. Companies with adequate financial backing are able to make bold marketing decisions and expand their market coverage.

Example: Adani Group has great financial strength with which it invests heavily in infrastructure, energy, and transport. This allows Adani to undertake successful marketing campaigns and cultivate its business ventures in various sectors.

5. Human Resources: Employees play a crucial role in delivering smooth operations, quality customer service, and effective implementation of marketing strategies. Well-trained and motivated workers contribute to business growth and enhance customer satisfaction.

Example: Lenskart has established a robust team of optometrists, technologists, and sales professionals that collaborate to provide customized eye care solutions. This approach has made Lenskart the market leader of the Indian eyewear business.

Fig 2.1 Classification of Marketing Environment

External Environment

External environment refers to elements that an organization is unable to control but that have an impact on business functions and marketing activities. Such factors have the potential to offer opportunities or pose threats and therefore need companies to be constantly proactive and reactive to market forces. Key components of the external environment are:

1. Economic Factors: Economic factors such as inflation, exchange rates, interest rates, and purchasing power directly affect consumer purchasing behaviour and business success. Favorable economic conditions promote business growth, while unfavourable economic conditions can restrict sales and profitability.

Example: During the pandemic, the sale of luxury watches went down for firms like *Titan*, as consumers were buying necessary products rather than discretionary goods like such watches, impacting their revenues.

2. Technological Factors: Technological advancements drive innovation, transforming business processes, product development, and customer interactions. Companies adopting new technologies gain competitive advantages, while laggards stand to lose market share.

Example: Paytm revolutionized digital payments in India by leveraging QR code technology, UPI integration, and government policies like demonetization, enabling faster and more accessible cashless transactions.

3. Social and Cultural Factors: Demographics, way of life, social values, and evolving consumer preferences are social and cultural factors impacting product demand. Organizations need to align their products with these emerging trends to be market-sustaining and customer-supportive.

Example: Mamaearth successfully used the increasing awareness of natural and chemical-free skin care in India by emphasizing its toxin-free and green product offerings, which played well with health-conscious consumers.

4. Political and Legal Factors: Government policies, political stability, and legal regulations have a direct impact on market entry, business operations, and overall growth. Companies are required to comply with regulatory systems to avoid legal problems and remain in the market.

Example: When the Indian government banned Chinese apps like *TikTok* in 2020, the move created opportunities for domestic players like *Josh and Chingari*, which redefined India's social media.

5. Environmental Factors: Ecological parameters like climate change, natural resource abundance, and sustainability concerns affect business processes. Firms focus more on sustainable options due to environmental concerns and the need to build a strong brand reputation.

Example: Tata Motors launched electric cars like the Tata Nexon EV to minimize carbon emissions and as per India's growing need for green mobility.

2.1.4 Dynamic Nature of Marketing Environment

The marketing environment is never constant; it continues to change as a result of different internal and external forces. Companies are required to be flexible and adaptable to changes to maintain their market presence and competitive advantage. Being responsive to a dynamic marketing environment enables companies to respond to changing customer needs, adopt new technologies, and respond to market shocks. Some of the forces that make up a dynamic marketing environment include:

1. Changing Customer Preferences: Consumer preferences continuously change with evolving lifestyles, fashion, and societal trends. Companies should keep a watch on such changing tastes and alter their product or service as per the wishes of the customers.

Example: Zara constantly updates its product designs and releases new collections to keep up with fast-evolving fashion trends, keeping the company up-to-date in the market.

2. Technological Innovation: Rapid technological change influences how firms produce, market, and distributes their products or services. Firms have to incorporate new technologies so that they can be competitive and deliver innovative solutions to customers.

Example: Apple Inc. is constantly adapting to the evolution in technology through the introduction of new products like the iPhone, Apple Watch, and AirPods that suit the growing demand for sophisticated technology.

3. Economic Cycles: Variations in the economy, such as inflation, recession, and alterations in consumer buying power, instantly influence market demand. Companies should make marketing adaptations based on prevailing economic situations to stay profitable.

Example: In periods of economic recession, car companies like *Hyundai* introduce low-car models to attract buyers who have less money to spend.

4. Competitive Dynamics: Competition in the market continues to change with new entrants entering and existing competitors innovating. To maintain the top spot, companies have to constantly upgrade their customer services, marketing, and products.

Example: Jio's entry into the telecommunication sector in the guise of affordable data plans compelled their competitors like Airtel and Vi to redesign their pricing structures and improve their service provision to maintain their clientele.

2.1.5 Influence of Marketing Environment on Marketing Strategy

The business environment heavily affects how firms formulate and execute their marketing plans. Shifts in customer demand, technology, competition, business environments, and regulation force companies to change their marketing mix, which traditionally has been the 4 Ps — Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. Such flexibility helps ensure that firms stay current, competitive, and in a position to satisfy changing market demands. The impact of the marketing environment on every element of the marketing mix is discussed as follows:

1. Product: Companies must change the product lines as per changing market demand, tastes of the buyers, and improvements in technology. Product design, functionality, package, and usability are often redesigned to be in line with current competition and tastes of the market.

Example: Maruti Suzuki launched CNG versions of its best-selling car models such as WagonR and Swift in the wake of rising fuel prices and heightened consumer demand for cheap fuel-saving vehicles.

2. Price: Pricing strategies are greatly controlled by economic conditions, competitive forces, and consumer buying power. Companies tend to reduce prices during economic downturns in order to keep demand intact or provide festival discounts in order to improve sales.

Example: Domino's Pizza periodically introduces 'Buy 1 Get 1 Free' deals in the festive season of Diwali or New Year to gain more customers and increase sales.

3. Place (Distribution): Market coverage, customer accessibility, and logistics issues affect the distribution strategy of companies. Based on market demand and geographical extent, companies can expand or restrict their distribution channels.

Example: BigBasket, an e-grocery delivery company, increased its business in Tier-2 and Tier-3 cities in India during the pandemic to cater to a surge in home delivery demand.

4. Promotion: Promotion strategies are always updated as a response to technology, customer needs, and market changes. Companies use social media, influencer marketing, and data-driven advertising to grow awareness and reach out to customers.

Example: Lenskart changed its advertising strategy to big social media promotions, employing Instagram influencers and YouTube commercials to tap into young shoppers, increasing web sales by quite a bit.

The marketing environment greatly influences business strategies, and how the companies operate and interact with customers. Recognizing its dynamic character enables businesses to shift according to changing market situations to sustain their businesses over the long term and evolve. Through proper reaction to external and internal environmental forces, organizations can become competitive and satisfy changing customers' needs.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
The Australian. (n.d.). Nescafé creativity brews up coffee market growth. The Australian. Retrieved March 11, 2025,.

Knowledge Check 1

Choose the correct option:

1. What is an example of a company's internal factor affecting marketing strategy?

    a) Government regulations

    b) Company culture

    c) Consumer buying behavior

2. How do external technological factors affect businesses?

    a) By investing more financial resources in employee compensation

    b) By encouraging innovation and changing business processes

    c) By making regulatory requirements irrelevant

3. 3. Why are the external environment factors important for businesses?

    a) It enables firms to foretell market trends and frame their strategies in response

    b) It enables businesses to completely dominate market forces

    c) It renders competitor analysis unnecessary

2.2 The Microenvironment and Macroenvironment

2.2.1 Introduction to Microenvironment and Macroenvironment

Marketing environment consists of various internal and external aspects influencing a company's marketing strategy and entire operations. These aspects are categorized into two large classes — Microenvironment and Macroenvironment. Companies need to understand both environments to match their strategy to reality and achieve sustainable growth.

The microenvironment consists of close and immediate internal and external influences that directly impact a company's daily business and marketing activities. They are typically under the company's influence or control, such as suppliers, customers, intermediaries, rivals, and the different departments of a company. Companies can service their customers efficiently and remain competitive by handling the microenvironment well.

Contrarily, the Macroenvironment is made up of broader external elements that indirectly affect the marketing activities of a firm but are not within its reach. They are technological advances, economic conditions, rules of politics, social patterns, and natural environments. Businesses must remain aware of these external factors at all times so that they may make their business and marketing processes adjust to be competitive in the market.

Together, both environments define a company's ability to develop and implement successful marketing strategies. Whereas the microenvironment dictates the firm's internal routines and domestic market range, the macroenvironment prescribes long-term opportunities and dangers. Through understanding and responding to both, firms can respond to market uncertainties and make long-run success.

2.2.2 Microenvironment

Microenvironment includes factors that are immediately connected to an enterprise and have a bearing on how well or poorly it can cater to customers. These factors function within the company's proximate vicinity and can at times be controlled or manipulated to some degree. How well a company performs relies on its response to and interaction with these factors.
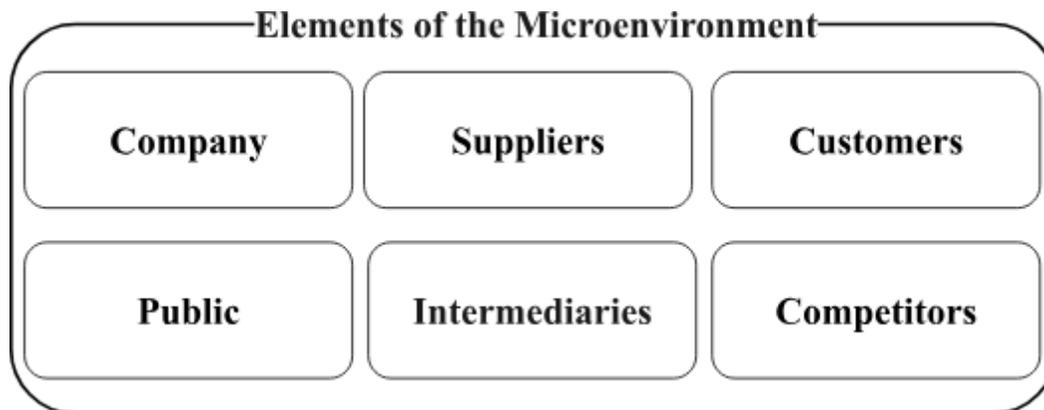
Elements of the Microenvironment

Elements of the Microenvironment

Company	Suppliers	Customers
Public	Intermediaries	Competitors

Fig 2.2 Elements of Environment

1. Company (Internal Environment): The in-house departments of a business—marketing, finance, research and development (R&D), production, and human resources (HR)—contribute significantly towards making business and marketing decisions. Interdepartmental coordination ensures ease of operations and strategic integration.

Example: The R&D division of *Tata Motors* created the Tata Nexon EV, responding to market need for green mobility, while the marketing division positioned it as a value-for-money electric vehicle alternative in India.

2. Suppliers: Suppliers supply raw materials, parts, and other inputs required for manufacturing. Any disruption in supply chains, price fluctuations, or quality can have a direct impact on a business's operations and profitability.

Example: Amul has thousands of dairy farmers all over India as suppliers of milk. During transportation disruption, the company proactively aids its suppliers to ensure continuous production.

3. Intermediaries: Marketing intermediaries like wholesalers, retailers, and distributors facilitate the connection between the firm and its consumers by providing efficient availability and delivery of products. Effective relationships with intermediaries enhance market coverage and sales performance.

Example: Flipkart collaborates with local courier companies and third-party logistics providers to provide speedy delivery in urban and rural regions, improving customer satisfaction.

4. Customers: Customers form the nucleus of every business. Organizations have to serve various segments of customers such as individual consumers, industrial buyers, government departments, and foreign markets, each having specific requirements and tastes.

Example: Dabur India has a broad portfolio of Ayurvedic products for individual consumers as well as supplying herbal extracts to pharma companies for industrial applications.

5. Competitors: The competitive landscape dictates how a company prices, and innovates products, and markets. Firms must analyze the competitors' strengths and weaknesses in order to differentiate and maintain a competitive advantage.

Example: Jio's entry into the telephony industry rocked competition from operators like *Airtel and Vodafone-Idea*, forcing them to cut rates and improve data offerings to retain users.

6. Public: Various public stakeholders such as media, governments, banks, and ordinary citizens may influence a firm's performance and reputation either negatively or positively. Good interaction with them fosters confidence and enables businesses to realize sustainable success.

Example: Infosys makes a serious attempt at corporate social responsibility (CSR) initiatives such as electronic education plans for rural India to maintain a good public image and social goodwill.

The microenvironment plays a significant role in determining the marketing strategy of a company. Those companies which are effective in handling their internal functions, suppliers, middlemen, customers, competitors, and public perception can create a robust market base and achieve long-run progress.

2.2.3 Macroenvironment

The macroenvironment consists of broad external forces that indirectly affect a company's business operations and marketing strategies. Contrary to the microenvironment, these forces are mostly outside the control of a company but affect long-term decision-making. Companies need to constantly keep track of and respond to them in order to stay competitive and sustainable.

Elements of the Macroenvironment

1. Economic Environment: Economic factors like inflation, interest rates, exchange rates, and consumer buying power determine market demand, pricing models, and business growth. Strong economies spur investments and consumer purchases, whereas downturns compel enterprises to reduce expenditures.

Example: Example: In the times of hyperinflation, FMCG corporations such as Hindustan Unilever also modify product packages and launch more economical, lower-size packaging arrangements (e.g., sachet packaging for detergents and shampoos) to support price-conscious buyers in India.

2. Technological Environment: The pursuit of faster technology fuels product innovation, production processes, and marketing techniques. Organizations need to keep themselves aware of new technology to improve effectiveness and stay ahead in the game.

Example: Paytm disrupted digital payments in India by exploiting fintech breakthroughs, with mobile wallets and UPI payments, which caught on after demonetization.

3. Social and Cultural Environment: Social attitudes, cultural norms, demographics, and lifestyle trends influence consumer behavior and market strategies. Companies need to match their products to changing societal demands to stay competitive.

Example: During economic downturns, *D-Mart* concentrates on providing bulk purchase offers and competitive pricing to bring in price-sensitive consumers, with an ongoing sales run even in periods of low expenditure.

4. Political and Legal Environment: Policies of the government, trade policies, taxation laws, and political stability influence business operations and market entry plans. Adherence to legal guidelines is necessary for evading fines and maintaining long-term operations.

Example: The introduction of the Goods and Services Tax (GST) in India streamlined the taxation process, favoring companies such as *Reliance Retail* by minimizing logistics expenses and rationalizing supply chains.

5. Natural Environment: Climate, natural resources availability, and environmental sustainability measures drive production operations and corporate social responsibility activities. Companies have to become environment-friendly to comply with regulatory mandates and customer demands.

Example: ITC Limited induces sustainability by investing in afforestation schemes and water management programs, making its paper and packaging segment adopt environmentally friendly methods.

The macroenvironment presents both challenges and opportunities for businesses. By remaining aware and attuned to economic, technological, social, political, and environmental changes, businesses can overcome uncertainties and be successful in the long run.

2.2.4 Comparison between Microenvironment and Macroenvironment

The microenvironment and macroenvironment both have significant effects on a company's business activities and marketing approaches, but they vary in terms of scope, control, impact, and the kind of influence they exert. It is with these differences that businesses are better positioned to plan successful marketing approaches to achieve sustainability and competitiveness. The following table provides the comprehensive differences between the microenvironment and macroenvironment with real Indian examples:

Aspect	Microenvironment	Macro Environment
Definition	The microenvironment refers to the immediate and close factors that directly influence the company's operations and ability to serve its customers. This includes suppliers, customers, competitors, intermediaries, and internal factors.	The macroenvironment refers to wider external forces that indirectly influence a business and are beyond the company's control, such as economic, technological, political, and social forces.
Scope	It has a narrow scope and affects the company specifically. The focus remains on managing relationships with suppliers, customers, and competitors.	It has a broad scope and impacts the entire industry or economy, influencing long-term business strategies.
Control	Businesses have partial control over microenvironmental factors. For example, they can negotiate with suppliers or manage customer relationships.	Businesses have no control over macroenvironmental factors and can only adapt their strategies accordingly.
Impact	It has a direct and immediate impact on daily business operations and short-term strategies.	It has an indirect and long-term impact on overall business growth and sustainability.

Nature of Influence	The microenvironment influences business decisions on product development, marketing strategies, pricing, and customer satisfaction.	The macroenvironment influences overall market conditions, economic stability, government policies, and technological changes.
Responsiveness	Companies can quickly respond to changes in the microenvironment by making operational adjustments.	Companies require long-term strategic planning to cope with macroenvironment changes.
Business Strategy Impact	Directly influences day-to-day operations like production, supply chain, marketing, and customer service.	Indirectly influences long-term business strategies, future expansion plans, and overall market presence.
Example of Impact	A textile company like Raymond negotiates better raw material prices with suppliers to reduce production costs.	Under the Fame II policy, the government of India pressurized auto players like Tata Motors to go on the electric vehicle route on electric vehicles (EVS).
Customer Influence	Adopting changes in customers' requirements or behavior affects immediate manufacturing and propagation. An example is that domestic consumer will tilt the company's portfolio towards desire for environmentally friendly products.	Changes in social trends such as increasing demand for electronic payment systems affect business models for long periods. For example, Paytm increased its services after India's demonetisation in 2016.
Competitive Influence	Competitors launching similar products, reducing prices, or increasing marketing efforts can directly affect a company's market share.	Competitive pressure arising from changing economic policies or global trade relations can indirectly influence a company's market share.
Government Influence	Minimal government influence, except for regulatory guidelines on operations or local business norms.	High government influence through economic policies, trade regulations, taxation systems, and legal frameworks.
Example	A retail store like Big Bazaar collaborates with local suppliers to ensure consistent inventory during festive seasons.	The rise in fuel prices in India, driven by global crude oil shortages, has impacted logistics and supply chains, forcing companies like Amazon India to increase delivery fees.

Activity: Evaluating Micro and Macro Environment in Business

Choose a multinational company and study how microenvironmental elements (suppliers, competitors, customers, intermediaries) and macro environmental elements (economic situation, technological innovation, legal and cultural factors) influence its marketing strategies. Investigate how the elements affect product positioning, price, distribution, and promotional approaches. Evaluating critically the firm's potential to address threats from such factors and suggesting key strategic adaptations—like adjustments in price, growth in channels of distribution, or creative promotion—to enhance market standing. Last, assess the manner in which optimaling such strategies can lead to enhanced brand value, loyalty of customers, and long-term profitability.

2.3   Responding to the Marketing Environment

2.3.1 Introduction to Responding to the Marketing Environment

Businesses continue to work in the changing market environment that is constantly being affected by internal and external factors. To survive, develop and achieve a long-term competitive edge, the firms must be able to react effectively to replace. The marketing environment can significantly affect business operations, including product demand, pricing, customer satisfaction and overall market share.

By responding to the marketing environment effectively, organizations can affect the environment or adapt to the changes based on the strategy determined by them. Proactive organizations anticipate changes and shape the environment, while reactive organizations respond after changes occur. Not responding to environmental changes may cause a decline in market share, customer dissatisfaction, or business closure. Thus, understanding and adapting to the marketing environment is crucial for long-term business success.

2.3.2 Strategies for Reacting to the Marketing Environment

Companies have different strategies for reacting to the marketing environment. The two dominant strategies are:

1. Proactive Approach

Definition: A proactive strategy is a business approach in which firms deliberately initiate actions to shape or mould the external environment to their advantage instead of reacting to changes. It is an approach that emphasizes staying ahead of change in the market by launching innovations, creating market trends, or formulating future-proof strategies.

Focus:

- Innovation and improvement.
- Establishing a strong market presence.
- Shaping customer behavior through marketing initiatives.

Example: Tata Motors launched budget-friendly electric vehicles (Tata Nexon EV) to foster sustainability and decrease carbon footprint in India. This forward-thinking action enabled Tata Motors to become a trendsetter in the electric vehicle (EV) market.

Asian Paints invests significantly in technology and data analysis to anticipate future market demand, enabling them to remain pioneers in the paint market and drive consumer behavior.

2. Reactive Approach

Definition: A reactive approach is a strategy in which businesses react to external environment changes only when they take place, without ever exerting influence or anticipation beforehand. Businesses employing this approach usually have minimal control over externalities and react according to market fluctuations.

Focus:

- Rapid reaction to market changes.
- Making adjustments to marketing strategies after changes occur.
- Reducing possible losses due to market shifts.

Example: Ola ventured into electric cars (Ola Electric) when market demand for sustainable transport picked up. In contrast to Tata Motors, Ola did not start the electric car trend but reacted when sustainability became trendy.

Parle-G ramped up production of its biscuits during the COVID-19 lockdown upon seeing a huge boost in demand for affordable consumables, reflecting a reactive move.

2.3.3 Key Environmental Factors Influencing Business Response

Business organizations are required to keep responding to several environmental determinants in order to be sustainable and competitive within the market. Such determinants can either occur within the micro or macroenvironment and have direct effects on company strategies, business operations, as well as total market performance. Through knowledge about these determinants, business companies can make decision-making easier while responding to adjustments effectively. Key environmental determinants affecting business response include:
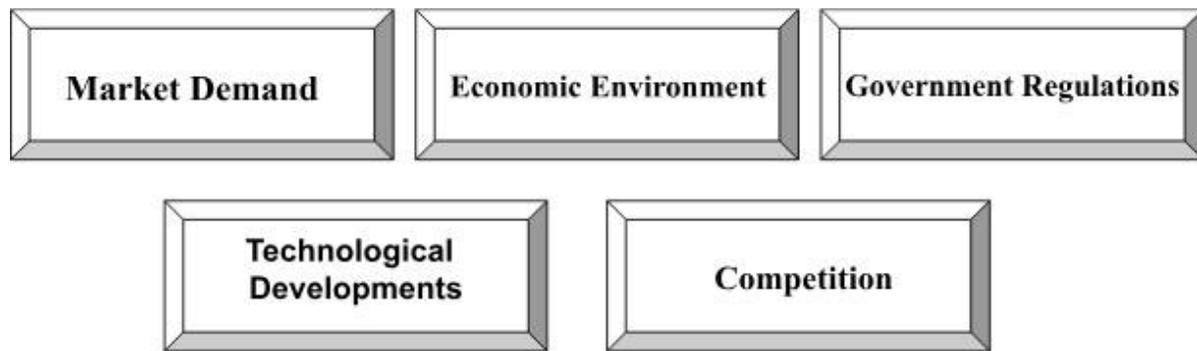
Fig 2.3 Key Environmental Factors Influencing Business Response

1. Market Demand: Shifts in customer tastes, buying power, or way of life compel companies to change their services, products, or marketing approach to keep up with changing demand. Firms need to anticipate changes in demand and react promptly to avoid losing market share.

Example: Sugar Cosmetics diversified its line of vegan and cruelty-free products following the observation of an increasing consumer movement towards ethical and clean beauty products in India.

2. Competition: Tough market competition forces companies to often change their price, product development, promotional offer, or quality of service in order to maintain their market position. Businesses that fail to withstand competitive pressures are likely to experience declining sales and brand value.

Example: Rapido launched bike taxis at cheaper rates following Ola and Uber's dominance of the ride-hailing space, providing a budget-friendly option for short-distance commutes.

3. Government Regulations: Sudden changes in government laws, policies, or regulations oblige companies to adapt their operations, product mix, or marketing processes to keep in line. Such changes might encompass taxation, labour laws, or industry rules.

Example: Haldiram changed the packaging and labels of its products after the Food Safety and Standards Authority of India (FSSAI) implemented new packaging rules to provide more transparency in nutritional content.

4. Technological Developments: Sudden technological advancements push companies to modernize their products, services, or ways of working to remain competitive in the market. Companies that do not take advantage of new technology risk being overtaken by their competitors.

Example: Myntra launched an AI-based fashion assistant to offer customers personalized product suggestions, improving the online shopping experience.

5. Economic Environment: Changes in economic variables like inflation, GDP, exchange rates, or employment rates have a strong influence on business operations and profitability. With economic growth, businesses grow, while in economic declines, they tend to reduce costs or prices.

Example: Hyundai introduced affordable funding schemes in the 2019 Indian economic recession to enhance car sales despite declining consumer purchases.

2.3.4 Strategic Responses to the Marketing Environment

Companies use strategic responses to adapt to the changing marketing environment, and realize sustainable growth, customer satisfaction, and competitive dominance. Through preemptive or reactive action in line with industry developments, companies are able to steer clear of future threats or realize maximum emerging opportunities. Designing an ideal strategic response assists companies in retaining competitive leadership, innovation, and operational stability.

1. Product Innovation: Introducing new or enhanced products because of changing customer needs, technological advances, or emerging market trends helps businesses maintain customers' interest and competitiveness. The practice guarantees continued revenue generation in spite of the dynamic market condition.

Example: Bajaj Electricals introduced intelligent ceiling fans with remote control and IoT features in an effort to cater to rising demand for smart home appliances. The introduction helped them gain more market share in the premium home appliance segment.

2. Market Diversification: Entering business operations into new geographical markets, product lines, or industries enables firms to diversify away from a single market and enhance revenue sources. Diversification allows businesses to reduce the risk of an economic downturn or market saturation.

Example: Pidilite, which was famous for its adhesive brand Fevicol, ventured into waterproofing and construction chemicals under Dr. Fixit to ensure sustained business growth irrespective of fluctuations in demand for adhesives. Pidilite's diversification enabled it to capture both the construction and industrial markets.

3. Cost Leadership: Reducing operating, production, and distribution expenses enables firms to provide competitive prices, gain price-conscious consumers, and produce increased volumes of sales. Cost leadership helps firms stay competitive and improve profitability in price-sensitive markets.

Example: Star Bazaar operates under a cost-leadership approach by purchasing items in bulk from the manufacturers and reducing overhead. Through this practice, Star Bazaar can sell its products at remarkably low prices, attracting a lot of customers and generating high revenues.

4. Strategic Alliances: Creating partnerships or alliances with other firms, suppliers, or technology partners enables companies to extend their market presence, improve product offerings, or share resources. Strategic alliances promote business expansion while reducing operational risks.

Example: Joint venture *Tata Consumer Products and Starbucks* Corporation's joint venture, Tata Starbucks, permitted Starbucks to get into the Indian market effectively. By tapping the local market know-how and facilities of Tata, Starbucks grew hugely in big cities in India.

5. Digital Transformation: Adopting advanced digital technologies like e-commerce websites, data analytics, and automation helps firms enhance operational effectiveness, customer satisfaction, and market presence. Digital transformation helps firms stay competitive in a changing marketplace.

Example: Nykaa, which was initially an e-retailer of beauty products, modified its business model by establishing an omnichannel presence, that is, having physical stores in addition. The digital makeover augmented the customer base of Nykaa and solidified brand perception in online and offline channels.

6. Dynamic Pricing: Changing the prices of a product or service according to demand, competition, or market conditions allows firms to generate the highest revenue possible and remain competitive in the market. Dynamic pricing is especially effective in variable-demand businesses.

Example: OYO Rooms uses dynamic pricing by increasing room rates when there is peak tourist season and offering discounted rates when there is an off-season. This helped OYO to capture the highest revenues while having maximum occupancy rates around the year.

7. Green Marketing: Adopting eco-friendly business policies, green packaging, or green product marketing is employed to encourage businesses to be in line with growing consumer realization of the value of sustainability. Green marketing reaffirms brand worth and creates permanent customers.

Example: Amul substituted ice cream and milk product packaging with biodegradable packaging to reduce ecological degradation. This move promoted Amul's image as an eco-friendly company, boosting customer loyalty and trust.

8. Market Retrenchment: Pulling out of underperforming markets, reducing operations, or shutting down unprofitable business units allows companies to redirect resources to profitable businesses. This strategy helps companies maintain financial health and operational efficiency.

Example: Future Retail Ltd. shut down some small retail outlets in low-income areas and concentrated on large-size stores in high-priority urban markets. The action enabled the company to maximize its operating expenses and boost profitability.

9. Supply Chain Optimization: Optimizing the sourcing, production, and distribution functions ensures quicker delivery, cost-effectiveness, and fewer operational disruptions. Supply chain optimization enables companies to react swiftly to fluctuating market demand.

Example: Britannia Industries overhauled its supply chain model during the COVID-19 lockdown to provide seamless delivery of staple food items. This strategy enabled the company to achieve steady sales and brand visibility amidst uncertain times.

10. Brand Repositioning: Brand image, target market, or product perception change enables companies to position themselves in line with changing market trends or consumer behaviour. Brand repositioning enables companies to remain relevant and increase their market share.

Example: Mahindra & Mahindra repositioned its image from a conventional utility vehicle company to a premium SUV brand to suit contemporary customer tastes. This change enabled Mahindra to increase its market penetration in urban markets considerably.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. What is the main reason for implementing a Market Diversification strategy?

   A) Entering new markets using established products

   B) Diversifying product lines to new and unrelated markets

   C) Saving operational costs by producing in bulk

2. Which of the following best describes Cost Leadership as a strategic reaction?

   A) Providing premium-priced products to upscale customers

   B) Cutting production costs to price products competitively

   C) Spending more on advertising to saturate market visibility

3. What is the fundamental reason of Digital Transformation in companies?

   A) To improve customer experience with technological incorporation

   B) To augment manual labor for production effectiveness

   C) To uphold traditional marketing and operational practices

2.3.4 Role of Marketing Manager in Responding to the Environment

The marketing manager is charged with the responsibility of ensuring that a company responds and adapts suitably to the dynamic marketing environment. Through competent analysis of micro and macro environmental factors, the marketing manager ensures that the company retains its competitive advantage, addresses consumer needs, and reduces potential risks. The marketing manager's activities are centred on strategy-making, risk reduction, and customer satisfaction while adhering to laws and regulations. Failure to respond to environmental change could lead to decreasing market share and business instability, thus rendering the marketing manager role highly influential in organizational performance.

1. Environmental Monitoring: Marketing managers continuously monitor micro and macro environment shifts to recognize future trends, threats, and opportunities. This helps them make effective decisions to stay competitive.

Example: Meesho's marketing team keeps a constant eye on social media to determine trending product categories and adjust their products accordingly.

2. Risk Management: Marketing managers specifically identify potential risks due to environmental changes and implement measures to mitigate their impact. This can involve price alteration, product line adaptation, or differing promotion approaches to contain business loss. Successful risk management shields the company from market risk.

Example: Mother Dairy launched low-price milk packets during the inflationary period to counter the threat of losing price-conscious customers, thereby ensuring steady demand irrespective of the financial condition.

3. Customer-Focused Approach: Marketing managers are concerned with understanding changing customer tastes and adjusting product features, services, and marketing efforts accordingly. This allows companies to create long-term relationships with customers and maintain competitive advantage. Managers use customer feedback and market studies also for continuous improvements.

Example: Sugar Cosmetics expanded its range of vegan and cruelty-free beauty products to keep up with the growing demand for ethical and sustainable beauty products, enhancing customer satisfaction and brand loyalty.

4. Strategy Formulation: Marketing managers develop adaptable and vision-based marketing strategies to respond to dynamic environmental changes. This involves modifying product characteristics, altering pricing frameworks, and new methods of promotion to address the requirements of markets. Strategically crafted strategy enables firms to be competitive and responsive.

Example: Britannia introduced a line of multigrain and high-fibre biscuits on noticing a trend towards healthier shopping by consumers, linking its product strategy to the changing trends of the market.

5. Legal Compliance: Legal compliances are handled by marketing managers to keep business operations, promotional campaigns, and products legal and within regulatory levels. These practices prevent legal fines, loss

of clients, and business failures. There is ongoing observation of regulatory laws that enable businesses to operate as normal.

Example: Parle Agro repackaged and relabeled its juices by the FSSAI's new labelling regulations to meet the requirements of ingredient clarity and health safety standards, thereby avoiding regulatory troubles.

The marketing manager's role in reacting to the marketing environment is vital for promoting business sustainability, growth, and customer satisfaction. Through constant awareness of environmental alterations, developing adaptable strategies, mitigating risks, remaining legally up-to-date, and adapting to customer demands, marketing managers ensure that businesses keep pace with market uncertainties. Strong response to changes in the environment allows companies to remain competitive and attain long-term success.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Why do employee communications matter? | Deloitte UK. (2022, February 21). Deloitte United Kingdom.

Did You Know?

- Approximately 72% of Indian companies said that customer trends and competitor moves are the two largest drivers of their marketing plans.
- India's online retailing market is estimated to grow to $350 billion by 2030, with much of it fueled by advances in technology and shifting consumer attitudes.
- Research indicates that 68% of businesses that actively react to changes in the environment perform better than competitors who wait until changes happen before reacting.

2.4 Summary

❖ The marketing environment is internal and external variables impacting business plans, operations, and customer relationships.

❖ Business firms should adjust to evolve with varying economic, technology, social, and competitive contexts for continued expansion and viability.

❖ A marketing environment categorizes itself under the microenvironment (competitors, suppliers, customers) and the macroenvironment (economic influences, regulations, technology).

❖ Prospective organizations embrace change prior to market transformations while reactive companies just react upon completion of such change, hence affecting their eventual success.

❖ Strategic initiatives involve innovation, digitalization, market diversification, and cost leadership to achieve competitive differentiation.

❖ Companies are required to watch out for government policy, customer behavior, and technology developments in order to remain competitive.

❖ Marketing strategies and business sustainability are influenced by environmental variables such as market demand, competition, and regulatory laws.

❖ Marketing managers are in a pivotal position to assess the external environment, stay clear of risks, comply with rules, and synchronize strategy with customer needs.

❖ Virtual Reality (VR) advertising is changing the way customers interact, but cost and accessibility must be addressed.

❖ Case studies of companies like Tata Motors, Zomato, and Reliance Jio are instances of successful adaptation to the marketing environment.

❖ There are ethical concerns like data privacy, disinformation, and AI bias that must be dealt with while using new marketing technologies.

2.5 Key Terms

1. **Marketing Environment:** The internal and external factors that influence a firm's ability to produce and sell goods, and require companies to adapt to stay competitive.

2. **Microenvironment:** The local influences acting on a firm, such as customers, suppliers, competitors, and intermediaries, which have an immediate effect on marketing choices and firm performance.

3. **Macro Environment:** Broad external factors like economic conditions, technological trends, and government policies indirectly affect business strategies and long-term sustainability.

5. **Strategy:** An enterprise strategy whereby firms prepare ahead of changes, innovate, and create trends instead of simply responding to market fluctuations, thus providing a competitive advantage.

6. **Reactive Strategy:** An outside-in business strategy where businesses change only in response to changes in the external environment, resulting in late response and possibly risk.

7. **Digital Transformation:** The process of incorporating cutting-edge technologies such as AI, AR, and automation into business processes to enhance efficiency, customer experience, and market responsiveness.

8. **Competitive Advantage:** The exclusive standing a firm gains

through innovation, cost leadership, or market differentiation, so that it can surpass competitors in a dynamic world.

2.6 Descriptive Questions

1. In what ways does the marketing environment contribute to a business's capability for product development and delivery in addressing customer needs?

2. What are the major distinctions between microenvironment and macroenvironment, and how do they influence business decision-making?

3. Why is it that businesses need to take a proactive instead of a reactive stance in reacting to the marketing environment?

4. How do emerging technologies such as VR and AI affect customer engagement and marketing strategies?

5. What are some effective strategies that companies employ to acquire a competitive edge in an ever-changing market environment?

6. How do companies make sure ethical factors, including data privacy and AI bias, are taken into account while utilizing new technologies?

7. What is the marketing manager's role in tracking external changes and making marketing strategy adjustments accordingly?

8. How do firms manage cost considerations while embracing digital transformation and new technologies in marketing?

2.7 References

1   "Marketing Management" by *Philip Kotler* and *Kevin Lane Keller*

2   "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by *Philip Kotler, Hermawan Kartajaya*, and *Iwan Setiawan*

3   Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by *Michael Porter*

4   Consumer Behaviour by *Schiffman* 12th Edition

5   Marketing Warfare by *Jack Trout* and *Al Ries*

6   "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by *Michael R. Solomon*

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1. b) Company culture

2. b) By driving innovation and transforming business processes

3. a) It helps companies anticipate market trends and adapt strategies accordingly

Knowledge Check 2

1: B) To expand product lines into new and unrelated markets

2. B) Reducing production costs to offer products at competitive prices

3. A) To enhance customer experience through technological integration

2.8 Case Study

Revolutionizing Marketing: Adapting to the Marketing Environment

Introduction

The marketing environment is vital in determining business strategies, and companies need to keep adjusting to dynamic internal and external business components. Flipkart, a prominent Indian e-commerce giant, is in a highly competitive retail industry with market conditions, customer behavior, and technology impacts on business decisions. This case study analyzes how Flipkart adapts the marketing environment through feedback to microenvironmental and macroenvironmental forces, overcoming obstacles, and making the most of opportunities.

Background

Established in 2007, Flipkart revolutionized India's e-commerce scene by presenting a wide variety of products on an effective online platform. The success of the company lies in its capacity to modify itself according to evolving consumer tastes, competition, and technological currents. Flipkart has broadened its services, incorporating AI-based suggestions, online payments, and a strong logistics system during the course of time to improve customer experience.

For example, Flipkart has added cash-on-delivery in order to respond to low penetration of credit cards in India. It also diversified its supply chain by acquiring Ekart Logistics in order to speed up deliveries. Flipkart does have some problems in continuing its market leadership, coping with changing regulations, and adapting to changing customer needs.

Problem Statement 1: Competition from Global Players

The Indian online shopping market is extremely competitive, with international players such as Amazon and Reliance Jio Mart aggressively expanding. Flipkart is under constant pressure to innovate and maintain customer loyalty in a market where price wars, technology upgradation, and service differentiation dictate market share.

Solution:

In order to remain competitive, Flipkart has emphasized localized marketing efforts, providing region-specific offers and increasing its footprint in Tier 2 and Tier 3 cities. The company uses AI-based analytics to provide personalized recommendations, making the shopping experience more relevant.

Furthermore, exclusive product launches with brands have assisted Flipkart in driving differentiation.

Problem Statement 2: Regulatory Issues in E-commerce

Government regulations and policies regarding foreign direct investment (FDI) in e-commerce influence Flipkart's business model. Limitations on exclusive tie-ups with brands and discount-based sales influence price policies and operational flexibility.

Solution:

Flipkart has responded to regulatory shifts by diversifying its seller base to ensure compliance with marketplace standards. It also launched Flipkart Wholesale, facilitating B2B transactions in line with government regulations while diversifying its business model. It also aims to build its private label brands, minimizing its reliance on third-party sellers.

Reflective Questions

1. How does Flipkart's response to the marketing environment help it achieve competitive advantage?

2. What are the strategies Flipkart has used to counter threats from international rivals such as Amazon?

3. How do changes in regulations affect Flipkart's business and pricing?

Conclusion

Flipkart's success in managing the marketing environment by way of strategic innovation, compliance with regulations, and competitive alignment has enabled it to maintain growth in a fast-changing industry. By constantly evolving to microenvironmental and macroenvironmental dynamics, Flipkart is able to remain at the top of India's e-commerce industry while satisfying changing consumer needs.

Unit 3: Marketing, Consumer & Competitor Research

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will be able to recognize the essential purposes of market research and comprehend what methods and tools assist in making more informed business decisions.
2. Learners will learn how to distinguish between qualitative and quantitative approaches in consumer research and what time to apply them.
3. Learners will learn consumer decision stages and how businesses can influence these segments to create additional value.
4. Learners will integrate their consumer and market research findings to develop a model of decision-making and modify their marketing strategy to generate value.

Content

3.0 Introductory Caselet

"Understanding the Consumer Code: An Entrepreneur's Challenge"

Meera, an entrepreneur, has launched NutriBliss, a premium health snack brand in Mumbai. She is a food scientist and is confident about the nutritional value and quality of her product. However, sales are lower than expected, and she is unable to understand why customers are not responding the way she expected. Meera encounters prospective buyers at an exhibition and realizes that many of them are hesitant because of price concerns, lack of familiarity with the brand, and confusion about how NutriBliss is unique compared to other snacks. She also realizes that consumers have varying expectations—some are seeking weight-loss-friendly snacks, while others are searching for high-protein snacks.

Since she does not have direct knowledge of consumer desires, she cannot position her brand. Going deeper, Meera realizes that she will need to adopt a scientific market research methodology to realize her target segment's buying process. She begins to study consumer behaviour models, surveys, and feedback systems to unravel the mystery of what motivates buyers at each step of their process—awareness to purchase. Meera's success in this situation now hinges on whether she can use market research techniques to enhance her product positioning, pricing strategy, and marketing communication.

To begin with, Meera decides to conduct focus group discussions and online surveys with a direct consumer insight. She also uses social media analytics to find out if there is a growing health concern or a preference for snacking. Through this research, she sees that her ideal customers care about convenience, clean ingredients, and functional benefits, like energy boosting and gut health support. With these insights under her belt, Meera gets the brand messaging to focus on the benefits NutriBliss offers in a unique way and refines pricing strategy to introduce smaller trial packs as well as collaborates with fitness influencers to build authenticity. She begins using a data driven approach and soon enough starts to notice increases in engagement and a steadily climbing sales.

Critical Thinking Question

How does Meera use consumer research methods to track the consumer decision process and identify customer preference, brand attitude, and purchase intention?

3.1 Consumer Behaviour

3.1.1 Introduction

Consumer behaviour refers to the study of how individuals, organizations, or groups make decisions to buy, use, acquire, and discard goods and services to fulfill their needs and wants. Consumer behaviour is driven by multiple internal and external influences, controlling the preference patterns and consumption behaviours of buyers. It guides marketers to craft practical marketing programs, forecast business patterns, and realize improved consumer satisfaction, translating to enhanced loyalty to the brand as well as revenue.

3.1.2 Determinants of Consumer Behaviour

1. Psychological Factors: These are motivation, perception, learning, beliefs, and attitudes that affect how consumers perceive and react to marketing messages. For instance, a consumer's perception of the quality of a brand can determine purchase decisions. Psychological triggers such as fear and excitement can influence immediate buying behaviour, while trust plays a crucial role in long-term brand loyalty. Understanding these factors helpscreate effective branding and advertising strategies.

2. Personal Factors: Age, lifestyle, income, occupation, and personality also heavily influence buying choices. Younger shoppers will often emphasize fashionable and high-tech items, whereas older shoppers will be concerned about quality and dependability. Lifestyle decisions, including health-conscious lifestyles, foster demand for organic and fitness products. Companies segment markets by these characteristics to design their product lines and marketing communications.

3. Social Factors: Friendships, family, reference groups, and social standing influence consumer behaviour and purchasing decisions. Recommendations from peers and word-of-mouth online reviews are extremely influential in buying behaviour, particularly in the digital age. Celebrity endorsements and social media influencers have a high impact on consumer purchases. Companies use social proof, such as endorsements and customer-generated media, to influence consumer decisions.

4. Cultural Factors: Society's values, beliefs, norms, and traditions shape consumer behaviour in product and brand acceptance. Cultural differences affect product acceptability, advertisement appeal, and consumer expectations.

For example, fashion and food preference varies across regions due to cultural factors. Marketing must be localized to address cultural moods and preferences so that consumers can interact optimally.

5. Situational Factors: Time limitation, shopping environment, and purchase occasion affect buying behaviour. Impulse buying can be instigated among customers at clearance sales, during festive periods, or at promotion events. Time-limited offers and time-bound promotions create an urgency to decide once. "The shopping environment, such as store layout, music, and customer service, can influence buying decisions.

3.1.3 Importance of Studying Consumer Behaviour

Consumer behaviour plays a significant role in shaping business strategy and marketing decision-making. Understanding consumer cognition, the determinants of their purchase decisions, and how consumers respond to different marketing efforts enables firms to make improved strategies. A study of consumer behaviour enables companies to optimize customer engagement, predict future trends, and stay competitive in the industry.

Key Benefits of Consumer Behaviour Study

1. Improves Marketing Strategies: Complete information about customer behaviour helps businesses to develop targeted marketing campaigns that fulfil customers' needs and preferences. Companies can use targeted promotions, personalized messages, and focused advertising strategies to attract and retain customers.
Example: Coca-Cola designs its advertisements based on geographical and cultural diversity to enhance audience engagement.

2. Predicts Market Trends: Knowledge of consumer behaviour allows businesses to predict future needs and market trends so that they can continue to stay ahead of others. By anticipating changes in consumer taste, businesses can innovate and realign their product lines.
Example: Apple frequently introduces new versions of iPhones based on emerging technological preferences and customer feedback.

3. Enhances Customer Experience: Understanding consumer behaviour enables companies to design personalized experiences that increase customer satisfaction and loyalty. Companies can offer customized products, services, and support according to customers' preferences.

Example: Amazon's AI-driven recommendation system suggests products based on buying history, ensuring a hassle-free shopping experience.

4. Enabling Market Segmentation: Consumer behaviour study helps organizations segment their audience into specific groups based on age, lifestyle, and consumption habits. Segmentation allows organizations to develop tailor-made products and marketing strategies for different customer segments.

Example: Nike has various product lines and advertisements for sportspersons, casual consumers, and fashion consumers.

Through observation and application of consumer behaviour trends, businesses can refine marketing strategies, improve customer relationships, and remain resilient in the market in an ever-changing business environment.

Knowledge Check 1

Choose the correct option:

1. Psychological stimuli like _____ drive short-term purchasing behavior, whereas trust is key to long-term brand loyalty.
   a) Product price
   b) Fear and excitement
   c) Manufacturing costs

2. Firms segment markets according to _____ in order to craft their product lines and marketing communications.
   a) Age, lifestyle, and income
   b) Production costs and supply chain
   c) Factory location and employee number

3. _____drive consumer behavior and buying decisions through word of mouth, online reviews, and endorsements.
   a) Social factors
   b) Manufacturing processes
   c) Warehouse management

3.2 Models of Consumer Behaviour

Consumer behaviour models provide a systematic approach to examining and comprehending the consumers' decision-making process. This model helps marketers to predict purchase behaviour, identify drivers, and formulate strategies based on consumer likes, dislikes, and other preferences. Through models, organizations can comprehend the needs of customers, make better product placement, and establish improved marketing strategies.

3.2.1 Consumer Behaviour Model Types

1. Economic Model: Consumers in this model are rational decision-makers who attempt to maximize utility and reduce costs. Consumers evaluate product worth, price, and their ability to purchase before making a purchase. Economic conditions, price strategies, and discounts influence consumer buying. Marketers utilize price differentiation and competitive pricing methods to attract price-conscious customers.

Example: A customer compares *Apple, Samsung, and OnePlus* smartphones based on features, price, and value. They wait for offers to save money and select the best option within their budget. Companies apply competitive pricing to lure price-sensitive customers.

2. Psychological Model: This model is interested in psychological processes including perception, motivation, learning, and attitudes that affect purchasing behaviour. It outlines how purchasing behaviour is influenced by emotions, cognitive biases, and personal experience.

Example: People prefer brands that emulate their values or good sentiments. Marketers use persuasive communications, brands, and storytelling to appeal to consumer psychology.

3. Sociological Model: This model is concerned with the impact of social forces, i.e., family, peer groups, social status, and cultural values, on consumer behaviour. It shows how individuals select what to purchase according to social needs and trends.

Example: Luxury goods, leverage social status and scarcity to attract wealthy consumers. Brands utilize influencer marketing and community creation to impact consumer decision-making.

4. Howard-Sheth Model: This sophisticated model integrates sociological and psychological variables to reveal how customers shift from need recognition to purchase. It considers inputs like learning, consumer attitudes, and marketing stimuli. Customers develop alternatives, decide, and choose alternatives based on their

experience with a company. Firms use this model to maximize customer routes and encourage loyalty through recurrent interaction.

Example: A customer looking to buy a new car researches **Toyota, Honda, and Ford**, based on ads, reviews, and experience. They weigh features, fuel efficiency, and reliability before making a decision. Toyota, through ongoing quality and involvement, creates long-term brand loyalty.

5. Engel-Kollat-Blackwell (EKB) Model: This model distinguishes five stages in consumer decision-making, which include problem recognition, information search, alternative evaluation, purchase decision, and post-purchase behaviour. The model outlines the five stages of consumer decision-making—problem recognition, information search, alternative evaluation, purchase decision, and post-purchase behaviour—emphasizing the influence of marketing communication and consumer experiences at each stage.

Example: The consumer requires a laptop and looks at options such as **Dell, HP, and Lenovo**, reading reviews and asking for suggestions. Based on the evaluation of specs and price, they buy a Dell laptop. Post-purchase satisfaction impacts subsequent brand choice and word-of-mouth recommendations.

3.2.2 Significance of Models of Consumer Behaviour

Consumer behaviour models provide a scientific approach to understanding the process of consumer decision-making. Consumer behaviour models allow companies to predict customer behaviour, identify determinants of consumer behaviour, and design effective marketing campaigns. By examining different consumer behavior models, companies can hone their marketing strategy, enhance customer satisfaction, and achieve long-term business success.

Major Importance of Consumer Behaviour Models

1. Facilitates Understanding Purchase Decisions: Consumer behaviour models articulate the psychological and rational rationale for purchase decisions, which allow organizations to align their strategies according to what the consumer desires. Having knowledge of these patterns allows brands to create more efficient marketing campaigns.

Example: Retailers like *McDonald's* study consumer buying reasons to modify their product line in order to match the customer's decision and eating habits.

2. Aids in Determining Influencing Factors: These models put into perspective factors that affect consumers' choices, e.g., cultural, social, personal, and psychological factors. By identifying these factors, companies can formulate messages that resonate with particular individuals.

Example: Luxury brands like *Rolex* focus on aspirational marketing through the use of social influence and status purchases.

3. Enhances Predictive Analysis: Consumer behaviour models enable businesses to forecast market trends and customer responses to emerging products or promotions. Businesses can forecast demand and optimize inventory management by reviewing historical purchasing habits.

Example: Online retailers like *Ajio* use predictive analytics to order top-selling products in advance of key sales periods.

4. Facilitates Marketing and Advertisement Strategies: These models provide insights into customers' reactions to different marketing strategies, thus enabling companies to refine their marketing efforts to receive more engagement. Excellent advertisement strategies can be developed depending on what the target markets are most attracted to.

Example: Firms like *Pepsi* utilize customer behaviour insights to create region-based advertisements that resonate with local palates.

By employing consumer behaviour models, firms can make better decisions, create more targeted marketing campaigns, and form closer consumer relationships, ensuring long-term profitability and market salience.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Investopedia. (n.d.). Starbucks' comeback plan: Algorithms, digital menus and ceramic plates. Retrieved March 11, 2025

3.3 Market Research

3.3.1 Introduction to Market Research

Market research is the systematic process of gathering, analyzing, and interpreting information regarding a target market, customers, competitors, and the industry in general. It helps minimize business risks by giving

insight into market trends, consumer tastes, and potential hurdles. Market research, in its final analysis, seeks to empower organizations to make optimal decisions, deliver value to customers, and obtain a competitive advantage. Businesses, whether start-ups or large corporations have always depended on market research to innovate, fine-tune their strategies, and discover growth opportunities.

3.3.2 Definition and Purpose

Market research is the process of collecting and analyzing data to develop an understanding of how a market operates, including customer needs, desires, and behaviours. "Market research involves collecting and analyzing actionable information to inform decisions in areas such as product design, marketing campaigns, and resource allocation. Market research aims to reduce risks, identify market gaps, and increase customer satisfaction.

Example: Hindustan Unilever, a leader in the Indian FMCG market, conducts market research to understand consumer preferences. One key finding was the increasing demand for natural and organic personal care products. To answer this shift, they introduced product lines like Pureit water purifiers and Pond's natural skin care range that catered to the change in consumer behaviour.
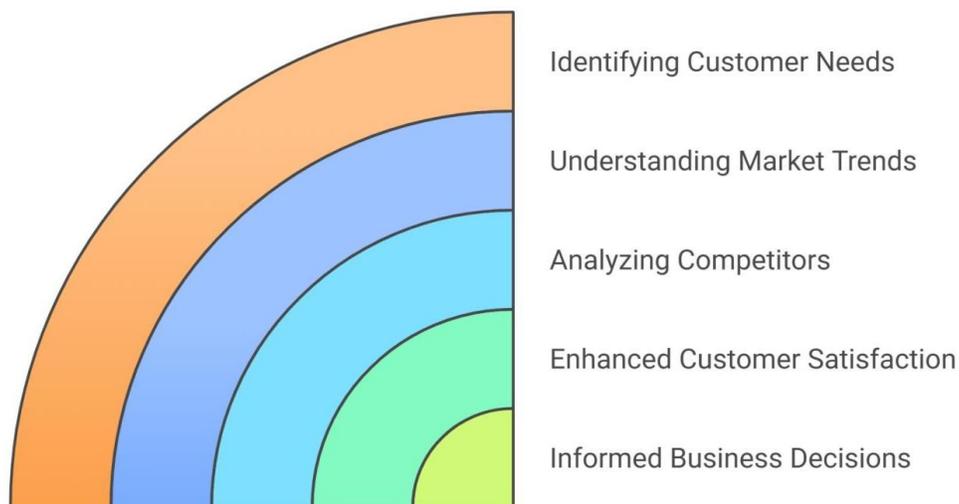
Purpose of Market Research

Fig 3.1 Purpose of Market Research

a. **Identify Customer Needs and Preferences to Create Value:** Market research shows organizations exactly what their customers desire from their product offerings. Businesses can build solutions that please customers better than expectations by identifying what customers prefer. Through customer-focused value creation companies build stronger brand loyalty.

b. **Understand Market Trends and Predict Future Opportunities:** When companies study market behaviour they find new patterns that show how customers change their buying preferences. Their market research gives them early knowledge which they use to update business plans and create new solutions. Businesses gain competitive advantages when they act before trends develop.

c. **Reduce Business Risks by Making Informed Decisions:** Market research lowers business guesswork by giving factual information to guide better decisions. Through market research companies can evaluate hypothetical situations and measure dangers before making decisions. Data from research helps companies allocate their resources properly while avoiding expensive errors.

d. **Analyse Competitors to Develop Effective Strategies:** Businesses gain a market advantage when they study competitor details about strengths and weaknesses together with market positions. Reviewing competitors shows firms where market opportunities exist so they can build effective strategies to take market share.

e. **Enhance Customer Satisfaction through Tailored Products and Services:** Companies can design better products when they learn from what their customers tell them about their needs. Companies that focus on solving their customers' primary issues and enhancing their experiences foster greater customer satisfaction and loyalty.

3.3.3 Types of Research

The classifications of market research can be derived from the data sources and ways of data gathering and information analyses. The types of research that are important in a research setting offer a deep understanding of markets from many sides, as they assist businesses in learning the different behaviour patterns among customers and in markets at a deeper level than using just a single research type. Each type has different strengths, so choosing the right one that matches the company's research goals, budget, and resources available is very important.

a. Primary Research: Primary research includes gathering first-hand data from the target audience. It aids in gaining insight into particular customer needs, preferences, and points of pain that may not be accessed through second sources. Techniques such as surveys, focus groups, and interviews are often employed in primary research.

Example: A well-known example is ***Domino's Pizza***, which carried out primary research about customer preferences before introducing the "Pizza Tracker" facility whereby customers could follow their orders live.

Through its survey, the company understood some of the critical pain points from the customers that were mainly characterized by uncertainty about when the pizza was going to be delivered. Because of customer complaints, Domino's introduced the tracker, improving customers' satisfaction and loyalty. By surveying and conducting interviews with their customers, this direct engagement permitted Domino's to address specific needs and improve their overall customer experience.

b. Secondary Research: Secondary research consists of examining available data from sources such as government reports, industry journals, and market research. It is inexpensive and offers a wider perspective of the market. It can be less specific to an individual business requirement.

Example: Indian logistics start-up *Rivigo* used secondary research from *IBEF* and *McKinsey* reports to gauge the market potential of expanding its fleet in the rapidly growing Indian freight sector. This helped Rivigo understand the trends and challenges within the industry and guide its innovative approach to logistics and driver relay systems.

c. Qualitative Research: Qualitative research targets the investigation of consumer attitudes, feelings, and motivations using non-numeric data. It employs open-ended techniques such as interviews and focus groups for an insight into deeper consumer understanding. This technique assists companies in exploring unconscious consumer desires that might not be revealed in quantitative questionnaires.

Example: Havells India, an electrical goods manufacturer, has undertaken qualitative research that includes in-depth interviews and focus groups on customers' attitudes towards energy-efficient home appliances. Such research would inform the company regarding consumer motivations toward adopting new technologies and would thereby guide the products developed with an understanding of what consumers value - sustainability and cost-efficiency.
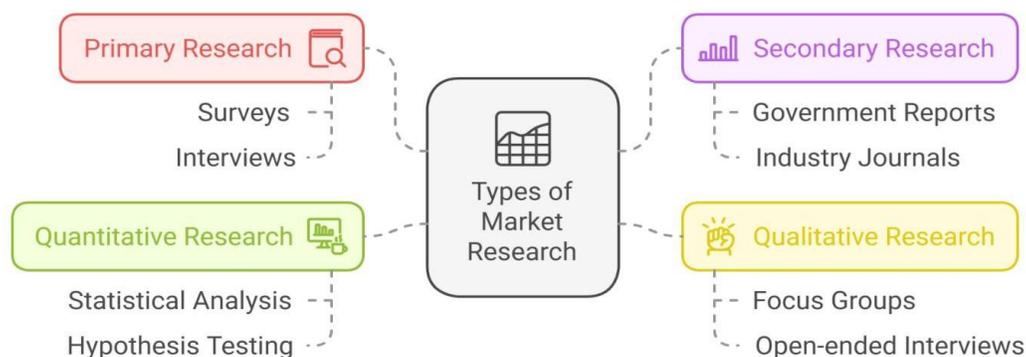

Fig 3.2 Types of Research

d. Quantitative Research: Quantitative research utilizes numeric data and statistical analysis to quantify consumer behaviour and market trends. It is utilized to test hypotheses and justify data-driven decision-making. *Example: Maruti Suzuki* makes use of quantitative research by measuring customer satisfaction, performance of cars, and preferences through big sample surveys and analysing sales data. This gives the company trends in-car features and customer demands, thus guiding in new model designs and improvement in customer service.

3.4 Steps in Market Research

The process of market research is structured and systematic, involving several steps that ensure that the collected data is relevant and actionable. These steps guide businesses on how to define objectives, collect data, analyse it, and present findings, all of which are steps in formulating good and informed decisions. Executively conducted market research not only helps in delivering great insights into the behaviour and dynamics of customers and the markets but also mitigates risks. All these procedures ensure that step by step, the researched output is consistent with business strategy, reliable, and accurate.

Fig 3.3 Market Research Process

a. Define Objectives: The very first thing that one must do in market research is to clearly define what the most important goals of the company are. Goals can for instance know what the customer is looking for, competitor analysis, improving sales, growth, or finding new opportunities in a market.

Example: A luxury car brand may have a goal to determine why young consumers are choosing SUVs over sedans. In this manner, the company can align its marketing strategy and design features according to consumer preference.

b. Design Research Methodology: It is the next step that covers choosing the best research design and that may mean choosing between quantitative and qualitative. That would largely depend on the research purpose and whether it's intended to obtain in-depth information.

Example: A business in the cosmetics sector chooses to utilize focus groups to measure a new product's popularity and web surveys for statistical data. The combined approach ensures thorough consumer evaluation and statistically accurate trends.

c. Data Collection: The next step is data collection and this is done by obtaining informative data through different means like interviews, surveys, observation, or secondary data. Data collection needs to be conducted in a systematized and impartial manner so that it may be reliable.

Example: Nike uses customer surveys and social media posts to collect information that will be used to improve product designs. This immediate feedback enables the company to adjust promptly to developing trends and consumer demand.

d. Data Analysis: In the next step, raw data collected is converted into usable information. The process entails the use of statistical methods and qualitative methods for the analysis of the findings. The step is used to identify patterns, correlations, and trends that are beneficial for strategic decision-making.

Example: A fast food restaurant, *KFC,* examined survey data to identify consumer preferences for healthier menu items. By identifying important preferences, the restaurant can introduce new products that appeal to healthy-eating consumers.

e. Present Findings: The last step is to present the study results in a clear and actionable manner, i.e., reports or presentations, to stakeholders. And use the same for achieving business goals. Effectively communicating research findings allows companies to make informed decisions to improve their operations and positioning in the marketplace.

Example: A consulting company, *Bain & Company,* creates an extensive report on customer behaviour for a retail client, recommending some adjustments to the in-store layout. These findings assist the retailer in streamlining store layouts, enhancing customer experience, and increasing sales.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
"Discover How Market Research Drives Success"
Bridges, M. (n.d.). 35 case studies showcasing market research initiatives.

3.4.1 Research Tools and Techniques

Market research techniques and tools are critical in collecting, analysing, and interpreting information to identify customers' behaviours, market patterns, and competitors' patterns. The tools enable organizations to draw meaningful conclusions from unanalysed data and allow them to make informed choices. Based on the objectives of the research, companies may use a mixture of qualitative and quantitative tools to obtain thorough findings. Each tool serves a distinct purpose and is selected based on research objectives and the type of data required.

1. Surveys: Surveys are formal questionnaires prepared to gather information from a large group of people. They are very common because they can capture data at a fast and efficient rate. Surveys can be administered online, by phone, or in person, and they help in obtaining opinions, tastes, and comments from various segments of people.

Example: Amazon sends out frequent surveys to customers to measure satisfaction with delivery services and identify areas to improve. Amazon adjusts its logistics based on survey results, enhancing the overall shopping experience.

2. Focus Groups: A focus group is the gathering of a small number of participants for a discussion on selected topics with a moderator. Focus groups are specifically useful for research into consumer attitudes, feelings, and preferences. Open discussions give immediate feedback as well as detailed qualitative insights into understanding how the customer perceives the product or service.

Example: L'Oréal, a French multinational personal care corporation, conducts focus groups to try out new skincare products before launch. Participants comment on the texture, scent, and performance of the product, allowing the company to refine the formula based on feedback.

3. Interviews: Interviews are when one-to-one conversations are held to gather a lot of detailed information about any participant's opinion, experience, or preference. Interviews can be used during qualitative research for effective exploration of very complex or sensitive issues. They can be face-to-face by phone calls, or conducted online.

Example: Tesla holds interviews with its loyal customers to gain insight into their loyalty and preferences. These findings are utilized to enhance customer experience and product development such as the provision of more features in electric cars.

4. Observations: Observation involves tracking consumer behaviour in real-world environments without face-to-face interaction. This method assists researchers in understanding how consumers engage with products,

services, or retail environments. Observations are particularly useful for studying consumer behaviors that may not be accurately self-reported in surveys or interviews.

Example: IKEA, a global home furnishings retailer, observes customers' movement patterns to learn how they go through their store configurations. By studying customer traffic patterns, IKEA optimizes product placement to increase sales.

5. Online Analytics: Online analytics refers to the process of applying online tools to monitor and quantify the behaviour of users on websites, applications, or social media. The tools offer quantitative metrics on aspects such as page views, time on site, click-through rates, and demographics of users. Companies use online analytics to comprehend customer behaviour and enhance digital marketing efforts.

Example: Spotify, a streaming service, uses online analytics to monitor the behaviour of users, including listening trends and playlist choices. Such information is applied to personalize suggestions and enhance user interaction with playlists.

> **Activity: Evaluating Market Research Tools in Business Strategy**
>
> Choose a multinational company and explain how it makes use of market research tools and techniques like surveys, focus groups, interviews, observations, or online analytics in order to make sense of customer behaviour and market trends. Explain which tools are most used by the company and assess their success in influencing marketing strategies, product development, and customer interaction.
>
> Critically evaluate the merits and drawbacks of such research methods and suggest improvements or other techniques to make data more accurate and effective for business decisions. Lastly, analyze how maximizing market research approach can contribute to improved customer understanding, competitive edge, and long-term profitability.

3.4.2 Contextual Review and Examples

1. *Deloitte* Research on Sustainability: According to *Deloitte*, 65% of global consumers are willing to pay more for sustainable products, which means the demand for green choices is on the rise. Such information made companies operating in various industries push the development and marketing of sustainable products by making sustainability part of their value proposition to appeal to the eco-conscious consumer.

2. *Zara's* Rapid Trend Adaptation: *Zara* constantly conducts market research to be in advance of rapid changes in fashion. It watches consumer behaviour and that of its preferred fashion influencers closely and can

refresh its collections quickly because it ensures that new designs hit stores based on changes in consumer interest. Thus, the brand remains relevant and in demand within a highly competitive fashion industry.

3. *Tesla's* **Consumer Feedback Loop:** *Tesla* improves its electric vehicle technology by responding to customer demands through surveys, social media, and user forums. It thus accelerated the development of its Supercharger network when customers demanded improvements in convenience in charging, thereby making charging faster and more accessible, which in turn improved the customer experience and helped expand the adoption of electric vehicles.

> **Did You Know?**
>
> A McKinsey report reveals that companies leveraging advanced market research and analytics see up to a 15% increase in sales growth. Firms focusing on customer insights through market research outperform peers by generating 20–25% higher ROI.
> .

3.5 Consumer Research

3.5.1 Introduction

Consumer research refers to the systematic process of collecting and analysing information about consumers to provide insight into their behaviours, needs, preferences, and decision-making processes. It provides the base for every marketing decision to be taken wisely and is a key element in making any business succeeds. Consumer expectations can be better met by designing a product and service according to expectations, which results in higher customer satisfaction and loyalty. Consumer research is not only among the vital resources a company may employ to remain relevant, competitive, or innovative but also indispensable in the present competitive dynamic marketplace.

Definition: Consumer research involves studying individuals or groups who purchase, use, or influence the buying of goods or services. It examines their likes and dislikes, attitudes, motivations and behaviour by discovering structured ways such as surveys, focus groups, and observational studies. For instance, surveying a fashion company to discover the most popular colours or fashions among teenage girls.

3.5.2 Importance of Consumer Research

Consumer research is central to the success of any business, as it gives tangible clues about the desires, needs, and behaviours of customers. Knowledge of what compels consumer decisions in a very competitive market is

thus critical in the development of products and services that are of equal or greater quality than desired. Consumer research assists companies in bridging the gap between what they have to offer and customer needs by ensuring marketing efforts are data-driven and efficient. This will also assist companies in responding to the shifting market trends, recognizing new opportunities, and also assist companies in maintaining a competitive advantage. Consumer research is essential as it boosts customer satisfaction, loyalty, and long-term growth.

a) Know Consumer Needs: Consumer research helps businesses understand what the target market expects and wants from a product or service. Consumer research helps align a business's products or services with customer expectations. With an understanding of consumer needs, businesses can develop products better, improve customer satisfaction, and maintain a competitive advantage in business.

Example: Starbucks, Starbucks, a US-based multinational coffeehouse chain, developed customized beverages in response to customer demand.

b) Innovation and Product Development: By studying consumer psychology and feedback, companies can innovate products that address unmet needs or enhance existing offerings. This proactive approach helps companies foretell market trends, develop unique value propositions, and keep them ahead of the competition.

Example: UrbanClap, now Urban Company, expanded its offerings based on consumer feedback on home service. The company saw this need for professional home and beauty services, thus innovatively introducing new categories like home sanitization and appliance repair to the full-fledged platform.

c) Market Segmentation and Targeting: Consumer research assists businesses in reducing their audience into smaller but more manageable segments by selecting attributes like age, geography, income levels, or lifestyle. It ensures targeted and effective marketing activities.

Example: Netflix, an internet streaming service, uses consumer information to provide targeted content suggestions based on a user's viewing habits and preferences.

d) Enhancing Customer Satisfaction and Loyalty: Identify consumer pain points and eliminate them to enhance customer satisfaction, thereby building loyalty and repeat buying. Happy customers are also likely to be brand champions, generating positive word-of-mouth and long-term business expansion.

Example: BigBasket enhanced customer satisfaction by reducing customer pain points of product availability and delivery schedules. On complaints of missing products with delayed deliveries, they implemented a more

efficient inventory management system and quicker delivery systems.

e) Staying Ahead of Trends: Consumer research enables companies to stay ahead of shifting trends, thereby allowing them to evolve and stay competitive in the market. By staying ahead, companies can innovate before competitors and respond to shifting consumer needs effectively.

Example: Nike came out with eco-friendly products once studies revealed consumers were increasingly eager for such options.

3.5.3 Objectives of Consumer Research

The objectives of consumer research are always in line with the larger objectives of a firm to provide value to its customers. This provides businesses with better ways of building more targeted and effective marketing tools. The objective of consumer research extends beyond merely analysing existing consumer behaviour to also consider future needs and preferences. Organizations are better able to sustain themselves in the constantly changing marketplace and build sustainable relationships with their customers. Let's understand the main objectives of consumer research.

a. Identifying Consumer Needs and Preferences: Consumer research is aimed at discovering what the consumer wants and needs in a product or service. The result of such knowledge is the design of an offering that fits the needs of the target audience.

Example: A skincare company like *Himalaya,* conducts surveys to understand the demand for natural and organic ingredients in beauty products.

b. Understanding the Decision-Making Process: Consumer research helps companies understand what matters to the customers when making purchasing decisions, which factors they use in their selection process, the alternatives they look for, and what drives them. It, therefore, allows companies to anticipate customer needs and offer appropriate solutions.

Example: Automobile companies like *Mahindra and Mahindra* analyze the car buyer's purchase decision based on considerations such as cost, features, and brand reputation.

c. Analyzing Consumer Behavior: Consumer research assists in identifying the patterns of how customers engage with products or services: the purchase frequency, usage patterns, or the level of satisfaction felt by the customer. These patterns assist companies in changing their offerings to be more appropriate for customers and,

subsequently, improve their engagement patterns.

Example: Fast food companies like ***McDonald's*** monitor customers' purchase behaviour and use this data to offer focused promotions such as combo meals or loyalty schemes to drive retention and boost purchase frequency.

d. Predicting Market Trends and Consumer Behaviour: Consumer research helps predict future trends by analyzing current consumer behaviour data. This enables companies to forecast the market transition, create new products, and plan ahead of the competition. It enables companies to be proactive instead of reactive.

Example: The ***Coca-Cola Company*** employs predictive analytics to predict trends in drink consumption, enabling it to create new product lines such as healthier beverages and flavoured beverages in response to changing consumer tastes.

e. Marketing Plan Analysis: Consumer research enables businesses to measure the success of their marketing plan and decide what can be done better. Through gathering consumer feedback, businesses can tailor their messages, discover lost opportunities, and enhance campaign effectiveness.

*Example: **Patanjali Ayurveda*** aligned its ad campaigns with consumer inputs by toning down the pitch and messaging to emphasize natural ingredients and wellness better, which created more engagement and sales.

f. Building Customer Retention and Loyalty: The foundation for developing successful customer retention and loyalty strategies is to understand the drivers of customer satisfaction. Companies can develop customized programs and experiences that retain customers and foster long-term relationships by understanding what drives repeat purchases.

*Example: **Starbucks Rewards*** is founded on consumer research and what motivates consumers to become repeat buyers, it includes individualized offers and rewards. This has led to customer retention as well as brand loyalty while still having a stable and growing number of customers.

3.5.4 Process of Consumer Research

Consumer research is an organized process where a business accumulates and evaluates information about its target market. The systematic way of gathering and processing information provides accuracy, reliability, and practicality to the data. Typically, it will go through many steps from research problem identification and end with putting the findings into practice. Following the systematic process leads to the exclusion of errors and

biases in marketing approaches.

1. Specify the Research Purpose: The research purpose is all about defining what the research aims to find out. This includes the question being asked about consumer preferences, buying patterns, or product feedback. A good purpose ensures the research stays on course and does not deviate from the target.

Example: A smartphone company might want to understand why a specific model is performing below par in the market.

2. Research Plan Formulation: After the objective has been defined, the next thing to do is to make a detailed plan for the research. This entails what type of research to do, qualitative or quantitative, together with selecting methods of gathering data, determining the sample size, and allocating all resources. The research plan acts like a roadmap which guides the whole process.

Example: A clothing brand may want to hold focus groups to elicit qualitative responses and then continue with an online survey to generate quantitative data.

3. Data Collection: Data from the target audience may be obtained by using techniques like surveys, interviews, focus groups, or even observation. The data collected needs to be very accurate and representative of the target audience.

Example: In-store interviews are taken by the retail store about customer shopping behaviour and preferences.

4. Data Analysis: After data collection, data is analysed to find patterns and trends that imply action ability. Thus, if the data complexity is high, then specialized statistical tools, software, or even manual approaches would be used.

Example: A fast-food chain surveys its customers to discover what menu items are most popular and which ones need improvement.

5. Interpret Findings: Interpretation of the data is followed by conclusions in addressing the objectives of the research. The findings must be communicated clearly and practically with important insights and recommendations.

Example: A travel agency may determine that most of its customers prefer customized holiday packages and may offer more flexible options.

6. Present and Apply Results: Finally, the conclusions are presented to key stakeholders in the organization. The findings could be applied for the betterment of marketing strategy, product offerings, or customer services. This helps ensure that research provides practical worth to the business.

Example: A beverage company may use consumer preferences for a healthier option in launching a new flavour.

3.5.5 Types of Consumer Research

Consumer research can be broadly classified into types depending on the source of data and the nature of the study. These types help a business select the most appropriate one according to its objectives, budget, and time. The two major types are primary research and secondary research. These two are complementary to provide an all-rounded view of consumer behaviour.

Types of Consumer Research

1. Primary Research: Primary research is collecting data directly from the consumer by conducting surveys, interviewing them, and having a focus group. The data and information collected are fresh, specific, and valid. This method provides first-hand knowledge of consumer behaviour, preferences, and future market need

Example: SBI Life Insurance conducts primary research through Focus groups which help them understand the customer perception of an insurance plan and the features most appealing to a specific demographic. Such insights refine the policy offering and marketing strategies, ensuring they align with the customer's needs and expectations.

2. Secondary Research: Secondary research analyses already-developed data such as reports from different industries, books on academic topics, or competitor analysis. This research is inexpensive and it also saves time. It helps firms gain industry knowledge, keep track of market trends, and make strategic choices without conducting new studies.

Example: Axis Bank conducts studies of RBI reports and industry studies on trends in digital banking to understand evolving consumer preferences. The findings help the bank develop mobile banking features that improve the user experience, thereby offering services to customers' increasing demand for seamless digital transactions.

3.5.6 Methods of Consumer Research

Consumer research methods refer to the processes of collecting information from or about consumers. The selection of the method is subject to research objectives, target audiences, and the kind of information desired. In general, methods fall into two types: qualitative and quantitative. Qualitative methods provide a general, overall description, while quantitative ones give more in-depth analysis in understanding consumer behaviour. Let's understand the different methods of consumer research.

1. Qualitative Methods: These methods involve the exploration of subjective aspects of consumer behaviour, such as motivations, emotions, and attitudes. They seek to find the "why" behind consumer decisions, providing insights that are difficult to quantify. This can be collected in the following ways:

a. Focus Groups: Focus groups are guided discussions between a small number of consumers to reveal their views on a certain product, service, or campaign under the leadership of a moderator. Businesses will obtain various points of view and discover consumer reactions to something in a social context.

Example: A cosmetic company would make use of focus groups to solicit opinions from people regarding the packaging, texture, and fragrance of its new line of skincare.

Fig 3.4 Consumer Research Methods

b. In-depth Interviews: These are personal interactions between the researcher and the consumer to drill down into individual thoughts and preferences. They are usually helpful when discussing sensitive topics or getting detailed information.

Example: A financial service company may use interviews with customers to understand areas of pain within the loan application process.

2. Quantitative Techniques: Quantitative techniques are methods that collect numerical data to measure the behaviour of the consumer and pattern identification. Such techniques are well suited for the generalization of the population. This can be collected through the following ways.

a. Surveys: A survey is a structured questionnaire given to a target group through various means such as emails, online sources, or face-to-face interaction. It is inexpensive and data can be gathered from a large sample size.

Example: Businesses can use a web-based questionnaire to evaluate their customers' perceived satisfaction with its delivery speed as well as application usability.

b. Experiments: Experiments test the consumer response to various variables such as price, packaging, or advertising. Tests are carried out in controlled settings to understand cause-and-effect relationships.

Example: Online subscription service tests two different pricing models to determine which model has more conversions.

c. Observational Methods: This type of research studies consumer behaviour without direct interaction, but in real-time. The method is important for understanding the behaviour of consumers in natural settings, such as in stores or online.

Example: A retail store can observe customer traffic inside the shop to know areas that attract much traffic and put their products.

3.5.7 Tools and Techniques of Consumer Research

Consumer research techniques have evolved through leveraging technological improvements into deeper insights for consumer behaviour change. Ranging from conventional methods like surveys to cutting-edge techniques involving artificial intelligence and big data, and all others, having the right tool aids businesses to get data gathered effectively, analyse the data well, and help businesses make more accurate decisions in life. Let's look at these different tools in detail.

1. Surveys and Questionnaires: Among the most commonly applied tools for consumer research are these. Surveys enable businesses to collect structured data from a huge audience, whereas questionnaires may be customized for specific research objectives.

Example: Google Forms or *Survey Monkey* are one of the popular tools for gathering feedback regarding customer experiences with new products or services.

2. Social Media Analytics: Social media is a database of consumer information, offering insight into

preferences, sentiment, and trends. Analytics software enables firms to monitor and analyse social media usage and understand consumers' behaviour.

Example: A fashion retailer such as *Myntra* can use tools like Hootsuite or Sprout Social to analyze Twitter and Instagram data for the identification of fashion trends or consumer engagement tracking.

3. Big Data and Predictive Analytics: Big data software handles enormous data to discover trends and forecast future consumer behaviour. Predictive analytics allows companies to predict a customer's requirements and desires based on past data.

Example: Amazon applies big data and predictive analytics to suggest products to a customer depending on their history of purchases and browsing behavior.

4. Heatmaps and Eye-Tracking Tools: They are employed to analyse how customers interact with digital content like websites or advertisements. Heatmaps reveal high interaction regions and eye-tracking tools reveal which region is being focused on.

Example: Microsoft, a software company, uses Crazy Egg to make its website design more clickable.

5. **Sentiment Analysis Tools**: Sentiment analysis tools employ artificial intelligence to analyze consumer feelings and attitudes on text information such as reviews, comments, or social media posts to realize how a customer feels about a product or brand.

Example: A restaurant chain would use the application *MonkeyLearn* to analyse customer reviews to find complaints or praises regularly.

6. A/B Testing Tools: A/B testing shows one version of the product, webpage, or ad to part of your audience, and another version to a different group. These are helpful tools to tweak and optimize your business's marketing.

Example: An e-commerce company tests two versions of the homepage against one another in an optimised test, testing which of these layouts brings the most conversion activity.

7. Focus Group and Interview Software: Virtual focus groups and interviews are supported by such platforms as Lookback and Zoom, which ease the process of collecting qualitative insights from participants distributed across geographical regions.

Example: A tech start-up may use such platforms to gather feedback from app users located in different countries.

These help businesses know and understand their target market better. Methods, tools, and techniques of consumer research include qualitative and quantitative traditional approaches and modern technologies such as big data and sentiment analysis. All these sources give the currently needed decision-making actionable insight. Examples abound across different industries demonstrating successful applications of the tools for business purposes and customer satisfaction.

Did You Know?

"85% of new products fail due to a lack of consumer research and understanding of target market preferences. This statistic underscores the critical importance of consumer insights in developing products that align with market demands."

3.5.8 Challenges in Consumer Research

Consumer research is very essential for understanding consumer behaviour, preferences, and needs. Despite its importance, however, businesses face several challenges while conducting effective consumer research. Some of the common reasons include constraints in data collection, rapid change in consumer preferences, biases, and technological complexity. All these have to be addressed to ensure the accuracy and relevance of the insights gained. If these challenges are not successfully addressed, the outcomes may be that key decisions are made based on less-than-complete or misleading data, leading to substantial consequences for strategies and performance.

1. Rapidly Changing Consumer Behaviour: Consumer tastes and habits change rapidly due to fashion, technological innovation, and non-gradual factors like recession or war. Businesses have to research continuously about the changes, which proves to be resource-intensive.

Example: When the COVID-19 pandemic began, consumers moved to buying online and purchasing essentials, leaving many businesses unprepared to prepare for the sudden demand for digital platforms and delivery services.

2. Bias in Data Collection: Biases may emerge in a variety of consumer research steps from the design of the survey through to the interpreting of data. Whether unintentional or deliberate, biases affect the outcomes, leading to incorrect conclusions.

Example: In surveys *a*sking biased or confusing questions, such as "How much do you love our product?" as opposed to the question, "How do you feel about our product?" changes the respondent's answer and will skew results.

3. Data Overload: With big data and advanced analytics, businesses are loaded with information, but processing and extracting actionable insights from that data is too tough for them. Since each organization cannot focus on relevant data points, business findings become incomplete.

Example: A leading global e-commerce platform may collect data from millions of users but will find it difficult to filter meaningful insights from the large dataset.

4. Reaching the Target Audience: Identifying the target group and accessing it for proper research requires precision. However, getting representative samples and ensuring diversification in participation could be challenging, especially in niche markets.

Example: A luxury watch brand conducting consumer research would find it difficult to contact affluent customers who represent a small fraction of the population.

5. Cultural and Regional Differences: Consumer preferences vary based on culture, region, and demographics. To study different markets effectively, businesses must tailor their approach to these differences, making research more complex.

Example: The hospitality sector, growing its business internationally, will need to factor in cultural and eating patterns such as the vegetarian diet being more popular in India.

6. Technological and Privacy Issues: With greater reliance on digital aids and online data gathering, there is a heightened risk of data security breaches and privacy concerns. The intricacy of consumer research is further compounded by adhering to regulations like GDPR or CCPA.

Example: A social media firm gathering user information must be privacy law compliant and transparent to the users.

7. Cost and Time Constraints: Consumer research requires significant time and financial investment, which can be challenging for small businesses or start-ups with limited resources to conduct large-scale studies. Limited finances may restrict businesses from applying basic surveys and observation methods instead of large-scale research methods.

Example: A small coffee shop would not have enough money to invest in advanced tools like eye-tracking software or even hire professional research agencies.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. Are questionnaires and surveys commonly used in consumer research?

a) Yes, they are used frequently to obtain consumer insights

b) No, they are of limited use and infrequently used

c) They are used only by large companies in research

2. In what ways do big data and predictive analytics assist businesses?

a) They enable businesses to predict consumers' future wants based on past behavior

b) They assist only in monitoring current sales performance

c) They are primarily employed in automating customer service

3. Why are heatmaps and eye-trackers utilized in consumer research?

a) They measure consumer interaction with online material like websites or advertisements

b) They monitor offline buying behaviour

c) They are applied solely for security and surveillance

3.5.9 Consumer Decision Journey

Fig 3.6 Importance of Consumer Decision Journey

(I) Introduction to the Consumer Decision Journey

The Consumer Decision Journey is the process a customer goes through before, during, and after a purchase. Rather than following a straight and linear path, modern consumers interact across a range of touch points. This includes websites, social media, and advertisements. Businesses need to be aware of every single phase of that journey and the factors governing consumer behaviour so that they can bring about specific experiences that help fulfil the needs of customers at each point in the journey.

Example: Tata Nexon EV has successfully been able to move through the Consumer Decision Journey by engaging with customers at every step, from awareness to the post-purchase support level. For instance, Tata Motors educates consumers with campaigns that speak about electric vehicles, promotion of test drives, and engagements with influencers. Their digital touchpoints, social media, and website tools to compare costs with dealerships, help guide the buyers through the consideration stage. Post-purchase, Tata ensures customer satisfaction with extensive charging infrastructure support, service assistance, and user communities, fostering brand loyalty and advocacy.

(II) Importance of Consumer Decision Journey (CDJ)

The significance of understanding the CDJ is that it aids marketers in tailoring experiences to cater to better customer engagement and higher conversion rates. Mapping the journey can help businesses consider consumer pain points, offer relevant information, and then guide customers through the buying process smoothly. Let's understand the importance of the consumer decision journey.

1. Individualization of Marketing Strategies

Why it matters: By knowing the CDJ, companies can communicate their message of marketing at each step of the journey. Personalized marketing improves the level of engagement and ensures consumers are provided with content that applies to them. A targeted approach boosts brand recall and develops deeper connections with prospective customers.

Example: A skincare brand like *Lakme* can figure out that potential customers research online on topics like "sensitive skin solutions" during the awareness stage. They create targeted blog posts, social media ads, and influencer partnerships based on this concern to grab one's attention and build trust.

2. Consumer Pain Points Identification and Solution

Why it matters: The CDJ map points to areas where consumers are struggling-whether they're confused over which product to purchase or frustrated during checkout. Solved pain points enhance the user experience. Resolving these issues not only improves customer satisfaction but also reduces drop-offs along the buying process. An efficient experience leads customers to make purchases and return for repeat business.

Example: Paytm realized that customers were abandoning transactions due to complex payment processes. Therefore, it brought to the market the facility of one-tap payment, personalized reminders for unfinished transactions, and even the facility of cashback while ensuring a smooth checkout for increasing transaction completion.

3. Touchpoints across Channels and Optimizing

Why it matters: Consumers interact with brands on many channels—e.g., websites, social media, in-store. If it's all smooth, consumers will engage more and trust the brand more. A well-implemented omnichannel strategy provides a smooth customer experience, reducing platform friction. Design and messaging consistency across touchpoints create a coherent brand image.

Example: ICICI Bank integrates the mobile app, website, and physical locations so that people can bank seamlessly. Customers will be able to initiate loan applications online, get targeted offers through the app, and complete all paperwork at a branch, with multiple touchpoints eliminating convenience and trust concerns.

4. Building Stronger Customer Relationships

Why it matters: Understanding the CDJ on a deeper level allows brands to connect emotionally with customers, which leads to loyalty and long-term engagement. Emotional connection enables repeat transactions and word-of-mouth advocacy through satisfied customers. Stronger relations also build a brand community to foster trust and word-of-mouth.

Example: Dove, a personal care brand, campaigns use emotional storytelling to convey real beauty and self-confidence. By highlighting the stories of diverse women and natural beauty Dove has built strong, emotional relationships with its customers, thus establishing long-term loyalty and engagement.

5. Conversion Rate Optimization

Why it matters: Brands will more likely convert their leads into customers if they walk consumers through a smooth decision-making process. Streamlined buying experiences reduce uncertainty and accelerate the sales conversion rate. Improved conversion optimization yields reduced lost carts and higher revenue potential.

Example: Bajaj Finserv provides a quick pre-approval feature on its website for potential loan customers, where they can check their eligibility before making a final decision. This helps in making the entire decision process faster, eliminating hesitation and converting loan applications into significant quantities.

6. Proper Utilization of Marketing Resources

Why it matters: Knowing which stages or touchpoints are most influential allows brands to spend their budget and efforts wisely. Conversion-driven marketing eliminates unnecessary spending on inferior channels. Resourceful utilization maximizes brands receiving a greater return on investment (ROI) from well-thought-out campaigns.

Example: A technology company such as *Dell* discovers that the conversion rates are at their peak when customers are in the comparison stage. Thus, they invest in comparison tools and partner with review websites to assist customers in making informed decisions that will influence their purchasing choices.

7. Drive Repeat Purchases and Advocacy

Why it matters: The CDJ doesn't end at the sale; post-sale engagement leads to repeat business and word-of-mouth marketing. Fostering long-term connections via post-purchase processes enhances customer lifetime value. Customer involvement ensures they are more likely to refer others, creating organic growth through word of mouth.

Example: Tanishq (Jewelry Brand) encourages repeat purchases and word-of-mouth advertising through personalized messages for new collections, exclusive offers for loyal customers, and post-purchase follow-up through customer care engagement, which maintains satisfaction levels and promotes further recommendations.

8. Staying Competitive in the Market

Why it matters: Brands that do not understand or adapt to the evolving CDJ might lose their customers to competition offering better experiences. Being one step ahead of customer expectations makes companies stand out from the competition. Continuous adaptation to trends and criticism ensures long-term market sustainability.

Example: Zara keeps perfecting its product lines with real-time consumer insights and trends. Rapid response to consumers' needs provides the company with a competitive advantage over slow fashion companies.

It is crucial for companies wanting to establish deeper and more significant relationships with their customers to know the Consumer Decision Journey or CDJ. Every journey step can be plotted by brands to tailor their marketing strategy, locate pain points, maximize engagement throughout touchpoints, and influence conversions. This can assist in generating improved campaign strategies and also be reactive to consumers' needs and expectations, leading to enhanced customer satisfaction, loyalty, and sustainable growth. With the competitive marketplace of today, a well-rounded understanding of the CDJ is a vital component to staying current and competitive.

Did You Know?

"Modern consumers are exposed to approximately 10,000 marketing and advertising messages daily."The average person makes about 35,000 decisions on any given day, with varying levels of consideration and cognitive load."

.

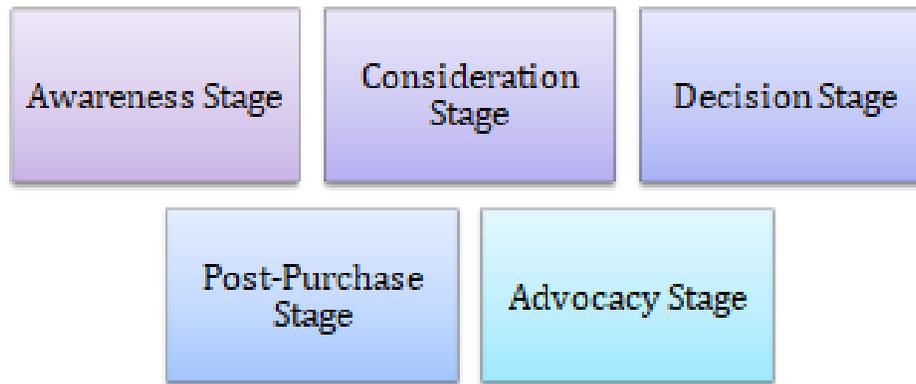**(III) Stages of the Consumer Decision Journey**

Fig 3.7 Stages of the Consumer Decision Journey

The consumer decision process is divided into phases that an individual goes through when he or she is deciding on some kind of purchase. The idea has gone through numerous phases over the years and is no longer a linear process. Consumers engage with brands through several channels before reaching a point of decision-making. Let's see what are the key phases that a consumer goes through.

1. Awareness Stage: The awareness stage is the initial step involved in the process of buying used by consumers. Consumers create awareness of a problem or need during this step. Externally, they become aware of needs from advertisements, social media, friends or influencers' recommendations, or even coverage by the media. They may not know what they need to purchase at this point, but they are certain there is something wrong that should be addressed. *Example:* A customer notices an ad for **Kent RO** Water Purifiers emphasizing the risks of polluted water. This leads them to understand the necessity of hygienic drinking water and brings into focus their need for a trustful water purification system.

2. Consideration Stage: During the consideration stage, active research and comparison are carried out by consumers looking to solve a specific need identified by them. Information gathering can be done through numerous sources such as online reviews, product specifications, word-of-mouth recommendations, or brand reputation. Evaluation of features, prices, quality, and benefits is examined at this point to narrow down the choices. *Example:* When buying a new laptop, consumers compare the various models, such as **Apple MacBook**, **Dell XPS**, or **HP Spectre,** by researching online reviews, performance specifications, and prices. Therefore, they weigh the pros and cons of each option to determine which one provides the best value for their needs.

3. Decision Stage: The decision stage is when customers have already evaluated the options available and is ready to decide which one they want to buy. In this final decision, the decisive factor could be previous experiences, personalized offers, or specially designed marketing content. Companies might also apply tactics in terms of 'urgency' (limited time for discounts), or bundling offers to get the customer to the final decision-making process. ***Example: Flipkart*** influences the buying decision through the use of time-limited offers, personalized product recommendations, and special deals exclusively offered for their Plus members. They create the impetus to purchase by adding value and time urgency.

4. Post-purchase Stage: This phase entails consumers judging the product against their expectations. They judge its quality, attributes, and overall performance, resulting in satisfaction or dissatisfaction. Organizations leverage this feedback to improve their offerings, resolve concerns, and enhance customer retention. ***Example:*** Customers will rate the quality of battery life, camera, and user interface after buying a smartphone. Overall satisfaction guarantees the loyalty of the consumer to the brand and gives the potential for word-of-mouth publicity, while dissatisfaction leads to returns and negative reviews on e-commerce websites.

5. Advocacy Stage: In this phase, satisfied customers promote the brand actively with word-of-mouth, social media shares, and recommendations. Their loyalty impacts potential consumers and increases brand credibility. Organizations foster advocacy through personalization, referral incentives, and loyalty programs. ***Example: Tesla*** owners are very passionate and loyal and are good advocates. They recommend Tesla's electric cars to others, promote them on social media, and write reviews. This increases the brand's reputation and attracts new customers because of their good experience.

Knowledge Check 3

Fill in the Blanks:

1. Consumer experience is the sum of an interaction that a consumer has with a brand, from the _____ and functional to the post-purchase interaction. (*emotional/economic*)
2. Brands build interest and excitement in the Awareness phase using _____ and interactive events. (*websites/newspapers*)
3. A minimalist and clean web design refines the _____ phase by making product research easier. (*consideration/retention*)
4. A simple purchasing process, i.e., quick deliveries and efficient checkout, enables the opportunity of achieving the _____ stage. (*awareness/decision*)

3.6 Consumer Persona

For businesses to effectively do marketing in this competitive era, they need to know their customers very well. A consumer persona is a researched-based character representation of a business's ideal client that assists firms in customizing their products, services, and communication tactics. With the construction of well-outlined personas, firms can foresee consumer demands, increase engagement, and enhance satisfaction.

An effectively written consumer persona relies on actual data and findings, encompassing demographics, behaviour, pain points, and preferences. This ensures customer expectation-aligned marketing for enhanced conversion rates and customer loyalty. Businesses such as Apple and Amazon utilize consumer personas to tweak marketing messaging and products, allowing them to effectively speak to the desired consumer segment.

Important Elements of a Consumer Persona

1. Demographics: This consists of fundamental information like age, gender, income, education, occupation, and geographic location. These are used by businesses to see who their target customers are and how their background affects purchasing decisions. It also aids in establishing the optimal pricing, communication style, and product accessibility for various groups of consumers.

Example: A 30-year-old Mumbai marketing manager who earns ₹18 lakh a year has a liking for high-end skincare products and regularly buys them online for ease of purchase, also often persuaded by expert tips on beauty websites.

2. Psychographics: It is a deeper study of interests, personality traits, values, lifestyle, choices, and opinions. It identifies why customers are making specific purchase decisions and how they are impacted by brand preference. Psychographic data assists companies in creating emotional bonds and adapting messages that communicate effectively with customers.

Example: A health-driven consumer who adopts a vegan lifestyle and is fond of eco-friendly fashion brands such as ***Stella McCartney*** and ***Nike's*** green collections, motivated by a sense of ethical consumption.

3. Buying Behaviour: It studies the frequency with which customers buy, their preferred mode of shopping, expenditure behaviour, and decision-making. Companies use this information to create customer loyalty schemes and personalized offers that drive maximum interaction. Knowing buying behaviour enables brands to optimize supply chain strategies for improved inventory management.

Example: An online shopper who is a young professional, buys things online during festive offers, compares products, reads customer reviews, and makes the final purchase based on influencer suggestions.

4. Pain Points & Challenges: These are the frustrations or challenges that consumers experience and can be addressed by a product or service. Addressing consumer pain points ahead of time allows businesses to become competitive and establish themselves as problem solvers. Businesses can leverage these insights to come up with product improvements and customer service solutions.

Example: A university student finds it difficult to get cheap but long-lasting backpacks, so they are more likely to buy from companies such as Wildcraft, which is reputed for quality and affordability, particularly for daily commutes.

5. Goals & Motivations: Determining what motivates the consumer to buy—convenience, status, cost-effectiveness, or sustainability—enables companies to create value propositions that resonate with customers' dreams. This also assists in product innovation and the creation of strong unique selling propositions (USPs).

Example: A busy working woman values convenient kitchen appliances and leans towards brands such as Philips and Prestige, which provide fast-cooking products with maximum efficiency, enabling her to manage office and family life.

6. Preferred Channels of Communication: Customers interact with brands at several touchpoints such as social media, email, mobile apps, or physical store visits. Companies that keep pace with the preference of consumers regarding communication provide superior engagement and recall of brands. Proper choice of channels enhances the effectiveness of marketing campaigns and customer service functions.

Example: A Gen Z consumer learns about brands mostly from Instagram influencers and prefers customer support through WhatsApp rather than the traditional help lines because it gives quicker and more convenient problem-solving.

7. Brand Affinity & Preferences: This delves into the brands that customers already trust, why they are loyal, and how likely they are to switch. This knowledge assists companies in fine-tuning their positioning, improving customer retention, and building emotional bonds with consumers.

Example: A technology fan who stays with Apple because of its seamless integration, innovation, and better customer support, even at a higher cost, tends to upgrade devices at product launch events for new features.

An effective consumer persona helps companies customize their marketing approach, increase customer interaction, and enhance product development. With the knowledge of demographics, behaviours, and motivations, businesses can design experiences that produce loyalty to a brand. Proper application of consumer personas results in informed decisions, higher sales, and customer satisfaction over a long period.

3.7 Competitor Research

3.7.1 Introduction to Competitor Analysis

Competitor research refers to the strategic activity conducted to discover the strengths, weaknesses, strategies, and market position of companies that operate in a similar business with similar products or services. The chief tool for competitor research is an analytical approach used by companies to gain a competitive advantage, sharpen their value proposition, and identify opportunities for innovation and expansion. A systematic study of competitors helps companies identify the prerequisites for certain market changes, understand customer sentiments, and mitigate possible threats.

In a world of markets characterized by the speed of change through technology and a constant shift in customer needs, competitor intelligence has emerged as a strategic choice. Competitor research is the process of benchmarking against others and identifying latent customer needs, new market directions, and leading-edge practices that better prepare firms to differentiate and create long-term competitive strengths.

A new product launch or a startup looking to disrupt an existing market requires competitor analysis as a guide to making the right decision. Through a multiplicity of tools, frameworks, and data points, companies can gain insights that can be transformed into actionable strategies to fuel long-term growth and success.

3.7.2 Importance of Competition Research

Competition research is important since its recommendations provide actionable insight into driving strategic business decisions. The following are six major points explaining why it is important, using supportive examples:

1. Market Trend Identification: Competitor research enables businesses to understand changes that are taking place in their specific industries by reviewing competitors' strategies, new product launches, and marketing. This knowledge allows the organization to forecast consumer preferences and align its products with market

demand. In a dynamic industry like technology and fashion, being ahead is key because consumer preferences change fast.

Example:Apple, which is known for its innovative products, underscored sustainability by launching products using recycled content. The move is said to influence the technology tycoons, **Samsung** and **Google**. Samsung has also introduced **Galaxy** with environment-friendly packaging as it adopts the growing demand for sustainability among eco-conscious consumers.
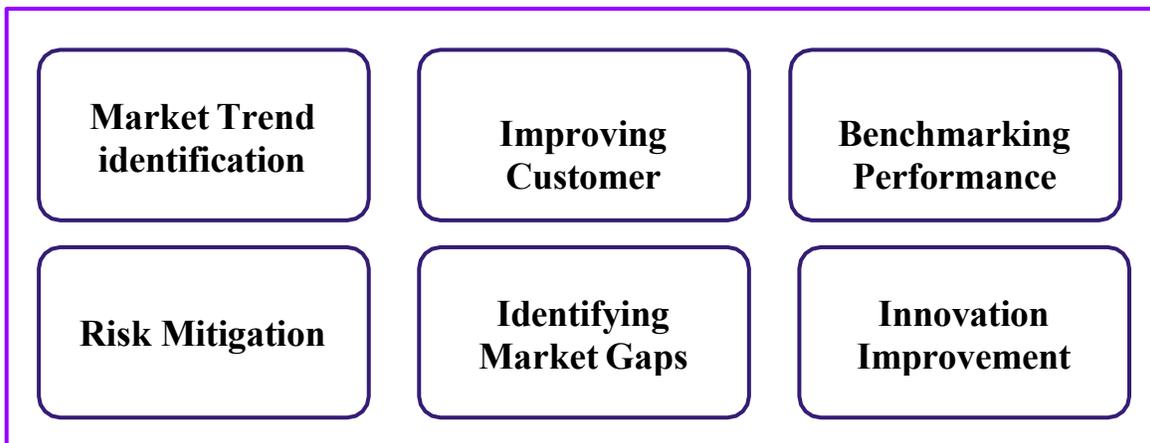

Fig 3.8 Importance of Competition Research

2. Benchmarking Performance: Competitor research can help organizations measure their performance against key players in the industry. This encompasses market share, customer satisfaction, and operational efficiency measurements. Performance gaps can be identified, and companies can make more informed goals for improvement by setting more realistic ones.

Example: McDonald's, the fast-food giant of the world, continuously compares customer satisfaction and operational efficiency with competitors like **Burger King** and **Wendy's**. For example, seeing the revamped digital ordering facility of Burger King prompted McDonald's to upgrade its mobile app with better user convenience, which boosted its digital sales.

3. Identifying Gaps in the Market: It allows businesses to discover unmet customer needs or underserved market segments by analyzing the offerings of competitors. Such information forms a basis for niche products or innovative solutions that could be offered to these gaps, hence a first-mover advantage.

Example:Tesla found a niche for luxury electric vehicles in the traditional gasoline-powered car-dominated market. High-performance electric cars such as the Model S were introduced and, along with the development

of a strong charging infrastructure, helped Tesla revolutionize the industry and position itself as a leader in sustainable mobility.

4. Risk Mitigation: Competition research helps the firm understand challenges that may come about, such as new entrants, price wars, or changes in consumer preferences. Having the foresight allows companies to prepare contingency plans and maintain strength to withstand market disruption.

Example: When *Netflix* changed the game of entertainment through streaming services, traditional cable companies like Comcast acted very fast. They expanded their on-demand offerings and bundled services with high-speed internet to retain customers and reduce subscriber losses.

5. Innovation Improvement: Studying competitors' innovations inspires businesses to refine their products, services, and processes. Through competitor research, businesses can identify shortcomings in existing offerings and deliver better solutions. Also, competitor innovation analysis assists companies in forecasting market trends and creating unique value propositions in advance.

Example: The logistics and delivery innovations of *Amazon*, such as same-day delivery, set the bar high for the industry. Inspired by the efficiency of Amazon, *Walmart* extended its e-commerce and developed the capabilities of a two-day delivery guarantee.

6. Improving Customer Experience: Analyzing the competitor's customer reviews, feedback, and engagement strategies will give valuable insights into customers' pain points. The data analyzed by businesses can be used to improve their offerings and enhance customer satisfaction. In addition, knowledge of competitor weaknesses allows companies to build a more customized and integrated customer experience.

Example: Delta Airlines, which is a leader in the aviation industry, continuously receives feedback from competitors such as *United Airlines* and *American Airlines*. This market research helped Delta bring complimentary in-flight Wi-Fi, and an upgraded seating option, which gave them an edge over their major competition.

Did You Know?

"A study by McKinsey & Company shows that by analyzing competitors' strengths and weaknesses, businesses can identify untapped market opportunities and areas for differentiation, driving innovation and fostering growth."

3.7.3 Types of Competitors

In the competitive landscape, companies face different kinds of rivals that can influence their market positioning, growth strategies, and overall business success. A comprehensive competitor analysis categorizes competitors into various types. These help the business look forward to identifying what may potentially appear as new competitors and help it in preparation ahead of them, making such a distinction of critical importance to react and respond strategically in a dynamic environment.

1. Direct Competitors: Direct competitors are firms that provide identical or highly identical products or services targeting the same customer segment. These firms directly compete for market share, with direct competition focusing on price, quality, features, and brand positioning.

Example: **Coca-Cola vs Pepsi:** The *Coca-Cola* Company and *PepsiCo Inc*. are leading global soft drink manufacturers, offering tastes preferred by many consumers. These companies are always in direct competition over tastes, advertising promotions, sponsorships, and innovative new products. Despite some brand message variations, they are essentially in direct competition for soft drink consumers.
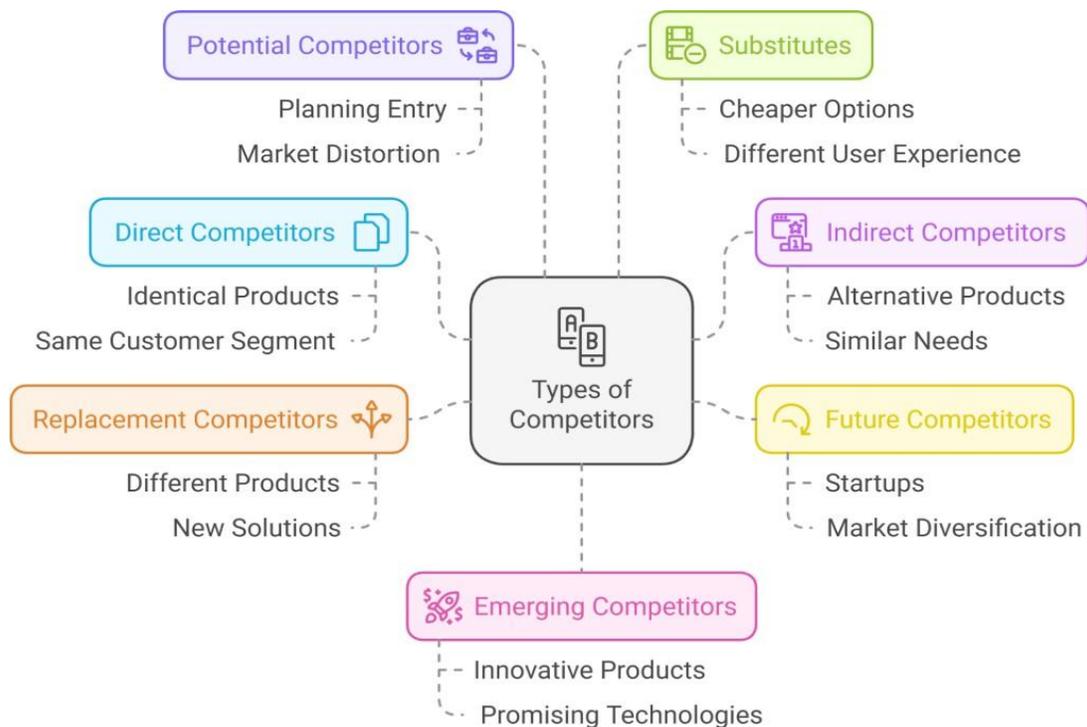

Fig 3.9 Types of Competitors

2. Indirect Competitors: Indirect competitors are alternative products or services from other businesses that fulfil similar needs for consumers yet do not equal direct substitution in their capabilities. They may not be in the same industry yet can threaten a business's market share if they develop solutions that succeed in fulfilling the same functional or emotional needs.

Example: **Cinema Halls vs Streaming Services:** Although cinema halls provide the experience of watching films in person, streaming services like *Netflix* offer a substitute that meets the entertainment requirement. As consumers prefer the convenience of streaming at home, Netflix and other streaming services are indirect competitors to traditional cinema halls, making them innovate and rethink their business models.

3. Future Competitors: Future competitors include those that are not currently active in the market but can potentially enter and disrupt it. These could be startups looking to innovate, businesses diversifying into new markets, or foreign companies looking to expand in other markets. In any case, these competitors may not immediately be a direct threat but can become so if they have the necessary resources or capabilities soon.

Example: Rivian vs. Traditional Automotive Companies: Rivian, a new electric vehicle (EV) start-up, is a future competitor to legacy auto companies such as *Ford and General Motors*. In the beginning viewed as a niche player, Rivian's interest in electric pickup trucks and SUVs has positioned it as a future challenger. Its innovation in technology and focus on sustainability has forced legacy auto companies to pick up their pace in moving towards electric mobility and viewing Rivian as a competitor in the developing EV space.

4. Replacement Competitors: Replacement competitors bring with them disruptive business models that reshape the way consumer needs are fulfilled, rendering conventional methods obsolete. Though they might be in the same industry, their innovations radically change market forces and consumer behaviour, compelling established players to innovate or become irrelevant.

Example: **Uber vs Traditional Taxis:** While initially, the primary public mode of transportation in cities was a taxi, nowadays *Uber* and other ride-sharing services have largely replaced traditional taxis in most urban areas. These platforms offer convenience, lower prices, and technology-driven services that make taxis less competitive.

5. Potential Competitors: Potential competitors are firms that have yet to enter the market but will enter in the future. Companies that are still planning to come into the market but have not yet started selling their product or services. Businesses need to be vigilant because once these firms enter the market, they will distort the market.

Example: **Apple's Potential Entry into Financial Services:** Although *Apple* has not yet fully ventured into the financial services market, the launch of Apple Pay and Apple Card along with the bank partnerships already demonstrates that financial institutions, like *JPMorgan Chase* and *Bank of America*, need to watch their backs because disruption in the hands of the giant is imminent.

6. Substitutes Competitors: Substitutes differ a little from indirect competitors. Substitutes offer a product or service which can be used in the place of another, but it will usually be cheaper or provide a different user experience. Such competitors could be accessed as cheap or affordable.

Example: **Public Transportation vs Private Car Ownership:** Public transportation systems, such as buses and subways, serve as a substitute for private car ownership. Consumers may choose to use public transport rather than own and maintain a car, especially in strong public transit cities.

7. Emerging Competitors: Emerging Competitors include firms during the early stages of development but have the potential to become significant players. Although these competitors are not yet highly recognized, they often have promising innovative products, technologies, or business models that suggest their importance shortly.

Example: **Airbnb versus Traditional Hotels:** From a small startup to a global travel and accommodation network, *Airbnb* disrupted the traditional hotel industry. It was able to provide more unique, lower-cost, and highly individualized accommodations to travellers, therefore it is becoming a large-scale emerging rival to brands like *Marriott* or *Hilton.*

"Companies must stay ahead of and understand the competitive climate to succeed in today's dynamic market culture. With constant sensitivity to shifting and new trends, companies realize opportunities for differentiation, innovation, and market positioning. A dynamic and evolving competitive landscape helps companies formulate proactive strategies against market disruptions. This foresight strategy extends beyond assisting organizations in maintaining market share; it helps them establish avenues for long-term success through continuous growth.

3.7.4 Digital Competitor Research

Businesses operating now need to monitor how their competitors handle their digital strategies as part of maintaining market relevance. Researching digital competitors requires a close examination of website traffic patterns alongside social media activity and search engine performance metrics as well as content marketing

initiatives. Online tools enable businesses to track their competitors' digital tactics so they can improve their Internet-based performance metrics. The important features of digital competitor research together with their respective significance are listed below.

1. Tools for Online Analysis: Digital analytical tools enable businesses to track competitors' web traffic patterns and evaluate their search engine effectiveness alongside purchasing decisions about digital marketing tactics. SEMrush and Ahrefs together with Google Trends and SimilarWeb stand as leading tools for monitoring keyword performance as well as both backlink profiles and online visibility.

Example: Expedia can rely on *Ahrefs* to learn about how *Flying.com* aggregates keywords because of its competitive stance against Booking.com alongside *Airbnb* in travel research. Through keyword performance analysis Expedia strengthens their SEO approach which draws greater organic site visitors.

2. Social Media Presence and Engagement Analysis: Companies use Facebook, Instagram, Twitter, LinkedIn and TikTok to gather important information about competitors' follower activities and social content approaches. Through analysis of follower growth together with post-engagement data plus campaign results businesses can adapt their social media strategies.

Example: Myntra can look into the social media strategy of *Ajio*, especially the performance of Instagram Stories and shoppable posts. Through the likes, comments, and shares of seasonal campaigns and new fashion drops, Myntra can change its social media tactics to create more interactive posts and offer exclusive experiences to elicit similar engagement from its target audience.

3. Search Engine Rankings and Keywords: When businesses analyze their rivals' SEO practices they gain insights that help them boost their website position in search engine rankings. Companies that examine competitors' keyword approaches together with their backlink profiles and search rankings can improve their site content for increased organic search visibility.

Example: HealthifyMe, a leading Indian fitness platform, tracks rising interest in search terms using tools such as *Google Trends*. If for instance, "plant-based diet" or "home workouts" are gaining interest, then HealthifyMe will find itself in an excellent position to create specific content in the blog, videos, and meal plans around similar topics. This proactive approach enables the company to dominate the search traffic and present itself as an authority source of new health trends to outclass other companies such as Fitter and MyFitnessPal.

4. Content Strategy Analysis (Blogs, Videos, etc.): Businesses can discover successful content approaches that drive attention by evaluating competitors' promotional campaigns through analysis of their blogs, video content and webinars. They examine how often companies publish blog posts as well as how videos are formatted together with the storytelling methods used.

Example: By analyzing competitor content, **HubSpot**, as a software-as-a-service *(SaaS)* provider, identifies which blog topics from Salesforce drive the most traffic. If Salesforce's "AI in CRM" posts prove successful, HubSpot must create in-depth, data-driven content on the same topic to establish itself as a recognized thought leader.
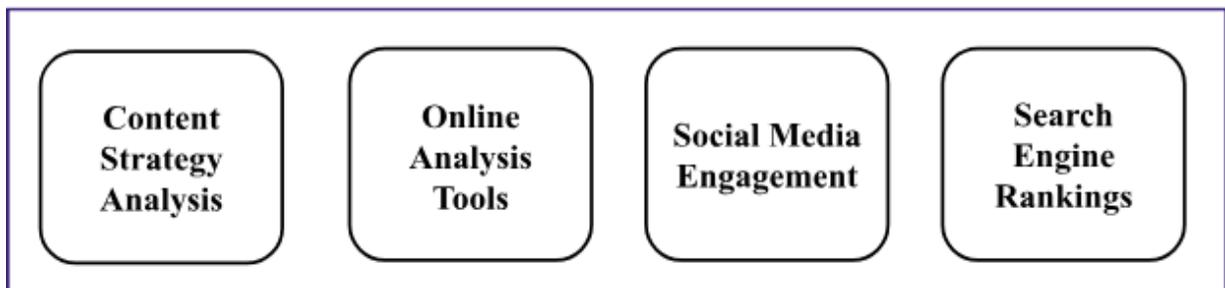
Fig 3.10 Digital Competitor Research

Online market dynamics require the strategic use of digital competitor research to maintain a sophisticated competitive understanding. Small businesses which use SEO tools along with social media and content analysis gain a competitive advantage online. Long-term business growth happens when strategic competitor analysis online improves marketing outreach while boosting search engine visibility and customer connection levels.

Activity: Assessing Competitive Pricing Strategies

Analyse the pricing models of two competing brands operating in the same sector. Choose a product segment, e.g., smartphones, clothes, or food delivery businesses, and study how each brand positions its price in order to reach out to its customers. Study whether the brands adopt cost-based pricing, value-based pricing, penetration pricing, or premium pricing. Assess how discounts, promotions, and bundling affect consumers' decision-making. Compare the customers' view towards the price of each brand through an examination of online reviews and product ratings. Lastly, suggest price changes or promotional strategies that would enable either of the brands to have a more competitive edge in the market.

3.8 Summary

- ❖ Market research looks at how to get data on consumers' preferences, trends, and competitors for better decision-making and fewer risks.

- ❖ Consumer research refers to gathering information about consumers' needs, preferences, and behaviours through systematic data collection.

- ❖ Research methods include qualitative methods such as interviews and focus groups and quantitative methods such as surveys and experiments to have detailed consumer insight.

- ❖ The consumer decision journey is not a linear process that includes the awareness, consideration, decision, and post-purchase stages.

- ❖ Online reviews, social media, and mobile technologies play a highly influential role in making consumer decisions during the digital era.

- ❖ Tools used include surveys, analytics, sentiment analysis, and A/B testing to aid in effective research and strategy development.

- ❖ Challenges include data biases, rapidly shifting preferences, and privacy issues to effectively research consumers.

- ❖ Emotional and psychological factors including trust and fear play an enormous role in deciding consumer buying behaviour.

- ❖ Personalization through focused approaches with big data and AI strengthens consumer experiences and interactions.

- ❖ Seamless interaction across touchpoints online and offline, or omnichannel approaches, boost satisfaction and loyalty.

- ❖ The circular model from McKinsey supports ongoing consumer involvement and underscores personalized, omnichannel marketing.

- ❖ Examples from companies like Amazon, Nike, and Tesla reveal how the effective application of research-based insights for consumers enhances business performance.

3.9 Key Terms

1. **Market Segmentation:** The process of breaking down the target market into segments, be it demographic, geographical, or behavioral, for a more focused approach.

2 **Consumer Insight:** Consumer insights are actionable interpretations of consumer data to guide product development and marketing.

3 **Sentiment Analysis:** These are AI-based analyses of customer sentiment from online reviews and social media.

4 **Omnichannel marketing:** Omnichannel marketing refers to a seamless consumer experience between digital and in-store platforms.

5 **Predictive Analytics:** Predictive analysis is to analyse historical data and algorithms to forecast future consumer behaviour and trends

6 **Consumer Decision Journey (CDJ):** This is the multi-stage process for a consumer, which includes awareness of advocacy during a purchase decision.

7 **Quantitative Research:** The research which analyses consumer trends and preferences using statistical tools.

8 **Quantitative Research:** Quantitative research is data analysis based on statistics and tools for determining consumer trends and preferences.

3.10 Descriptive Questions

1. How do tools such as surveys, focus groups, and interviews help improve business decisions and minimize risks?

2. What are the major differences between qualitative research methods, such as interviews, and quantitative research methods, like surveys, in consumer behaviour?

3. How can organizations rethink their strategy to incorporate all the aspects of a non-linear and dynamic consumer decision journey?

4. What specific ways do digital technologies, including social media and mobile apps, influence consumer research and decision-making?

5. Why is understanding consumer psychology critical in designing marketing strategies that appeal to consumer emotions and preferences?

6. What are the key challenges of businesses in seamless omnichannel marketing strategies across digital and physical touchpoints?

7. How can sentiment analysis and online reviews assist businesses in the improvement of their marketing strategies and the satisfaction of the customers?

8. How do big data and AI technologies help businesses deliver highly personalized consumer experiences and targeted marketing campaigns?

9. What role does innovation play in establishing market leadership and how does ongoing product development function as a necessity for competing successfully with rivals?

10. How does competitor research impact strategic decisions within fast-changing markets and why benchmarking is important in sustaining competitive advantage in the market?

3.11 References

1. "Marketing Management" by *Philip Kotler* and *Kevin Lane Keller*
2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by *Philip Kotler, Hermawan Kartajaya,* and*Iwan Setiawan*
3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by *Michael Porter*
4. Consumer Behaviour by *Schiffman* 12th Edition
5. Marketing Warfare by *Jack Trout and Al Ries*
6. "Consumer Behaviour: Buying, Having, and Being" by *Michael R. Solomon*
7. https://www.forbes.com/sites/garydrenik/2021/09/21/85-of-products-fail-when-companies-dont-talk-to-consumers--this-company-is-changing-that/?utm_source

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1
1. (b) Fear and excitement
2. (a) Age, lifestyle, and income
3. (a) Social factors

Knowledge Check 2
1. a) Yes, they are commonly used to gather consumer insights
2. a) They allow companies to forecast consumers' future desires based on past behavior
3. a) They analyze consumer engagement with online content such as websites or ads

Knowledge Check 3
1. a) Emotional   2. a) Website   3. a) Consideration   4. b) Decision

3.12 Case Study

McKinsey & Company

McKinsey & Company, the global management consulting firm, has studied how modern consumers make buying decisions in great detail. Their findings indicate that the consumer decision journey is no longer just a straightforward awareness-to-purchase journey. Today, it is much more complex and influenced by digital channels, social media, peer recommendations, and personalized marketing. Companies have thus had to redesign their strategies as a response to these changes: consumers are doing research online, using social media to engage, or judging brands by past experiences.

According to *McKinsey*, the biggest challenge was that brands needed to recognize that consumer behaviour was cyclical and not linear. Consumers frequently change their minds and make different choices or even switch to other brands due to new experiences or information.

Problem 1: Traditional Marketing Models No Longer Work

Many companies continued their reliance on a linear, decades-old marketing approach that considered a consumer journey consisting of clear and distinct stages. This methodology did not acknowledge the complexities found in modern behaviour.

Solution: *McKinsey* suggested that the model should shift to a cyclical one where the consumer journey is a loop, which enables continuous engagement and the possibility of returning to earlier stages. *Example:* It is the case with *Nike* and *Apple* to implement this non-linear approach by incorporating continuous feedback loops into mobile applications, email campaigns, and loyalty programs that ensure consumers come back after the first purchase.

Problem 2: Disconnection Between Marketing Channels

Brands had a hard time making it seem like one smooth experience for consumers across channels, which often meant inconsistent messaging and missed opportunities to engage.

Solution: *McKinsey* also pointed out that an omnichannel marketing strategy ensures that there is a consistent message at all consumer touchpoints: online, in-store, and through customer service. *Example: Starbucks* used their app, Starbucks Rewards, to successfully execute an omnichannel strategy, through which the customer may order online, earn rewards, and receive offers customized by their buying history.

Reflective Question:

1. How does a shift in consumer journey from linear to cyclical change marketing strategies across brands?

2. What are the most common challenges that companies face while implementing omnichannel marketing strategies, and how can they be overcome?

3. How does data-driven personalization impact customer satisfaction and create long-term brand loyalty?

Conclusion

A transition from a linear to a cyclical consumer path means that brands need to use continuous engagement instead of depending on old-school marketing models. Firms that deploy omnichannel marketing and data-driven personalization can improve customer satisfaction and drive long-term brand loyalty. Difficulty with channel fragmentation and messaging consistency, though, needs to be overcome through unified integration of digital and physical touchpoints. Strong brands such as Nike, Apple, and Starbucks show the way to sustain consumer interest through ongoing feedback loops and individualized interactions. Ultimately, companies that evolve along this changing path through the use of technology and data analysis will establish a competitive advantage and propel long-term growth.

Unit 4: Segmenting, Targeting, and Positioning

Learning Objectives

1. Learners Students will describe the definition of market segmentation and how companies define consumers as unique groups for many reasons.
2. Learners will debate targeting strategies that assist companies in finding the most lucrative segments of customers for their goods and services.
3. Learners will learn positioning methods that enable the brand to be differentiated in markets.
4. Learners will be able to harmonize segmentation, targeting, and positioning to develop a concentrated and effective marketing strategy.

Content

4.0 Introductory Caselet

Mastering Market Segmentation: The Success Story of Ananya's Start-up

Ananya, the owner of a small business from Mumbai, opened up her sustainable clothing brand with an aspiration to change the world of apparel. She was positive that sustainable garments would be desired by a significant base of consumers. However, with good-quality products, she received limited orders. She knew she was not reaching the right set of customers. Her brand was marketing campaigns toward the public, and approaching buyers who shared sensitivity toward sustainability was not an easy task.

Ananya faced another challenge when she tried to launch additional products in the line. Lacking the right understanding of customers' desires, her new products flopped. She also struggled with positioning her brand because her start-up lacked differentiation in a saturated market of fast fashion businesses. From the analysis, Ananya realized that she would apply strategic segmentation, targeting, and positioning (STP) methods to simplify her process.

By market segmentation according to consumer behaviour, she was able to target a central cohort of green-conscious consumers prepared to pay a premium for sustainable fashion. She subsequently formulated her marketing communications specifically for these consumers, emphasizing the ethical sourcing, longevity, and low environmental footprint of her goods. She also repositioned her brand as a premium sustainable fashion brand instead of an alternative to fast fashion. These alterations assisted her in creating a solid brand identity and gaining a loyal customer base.

Critical Thinking Question

How can Ananya keep improving her segmentation, targeting, and positioning strategies to achieve long-term business success and effectively differentiate her startup from others in the sustainable fashion space?

4.1 Segmenting

4.1.1 Introduction and Definition

Market segmentation is a fundamental strategy in marketing that categorizes a broad customer base into smaller, well-defined groups according to common characteristics. This method helps businesses focus their marketing activities so that their products and services will be targeted at the specific needs of various groups of customers. Identifying specific market segments enhances customer engagement, maximizes the efficiency of available resources, and enhances competitiveness.

Market segmentation is essentially the dividing of a heterogeneous market into smaller, homogenous groups based on particular characteristics such as demographics, behaviour, psychographics, and geography. This process assists businesses in understanding their target customers better and devising focused marketing campaigns that are more productive.

4.1.2 Purpose and Role of Market Segmentation

Market segmentation is of utmost importance to businesses as it allows them to target the right audience effectively. With an extremely diversified customer base, dividing it into targeted groups can lead to customized marketing strategies based on consumer needs and preferences. Not only does it increase customer satisfaction, but it also optimizes resource allocation, thereby making marketing and product development more efficient. Segmentation goes beyond just marketing and impacts business strategy, innovation, and competitive positioning.

1. Customer Personalization: Segmentation enables businesses to craft highly personalized marketing messages, products, and services that are specifically designed to meet the distinctive needs and interests of different customer segments. With demographics, behaviour, and psychographics on hand, businesses can craft targeted offers that resonate with their audience at a basic level. Personalized marketing increases customer engagement, improves conversion rates, and builds long-term brand loyalty. Instead of a one-size-fits-all strategy, businesses can build deeper relationships by confronting customer pain points directly.

Example: Tanishq, a jewellery company, segments its clients based on occasions like weddings, festivals, and everyday wear, and it possesses special collections and advertisement campaigns catering to the financial and emotional needs of each segment.
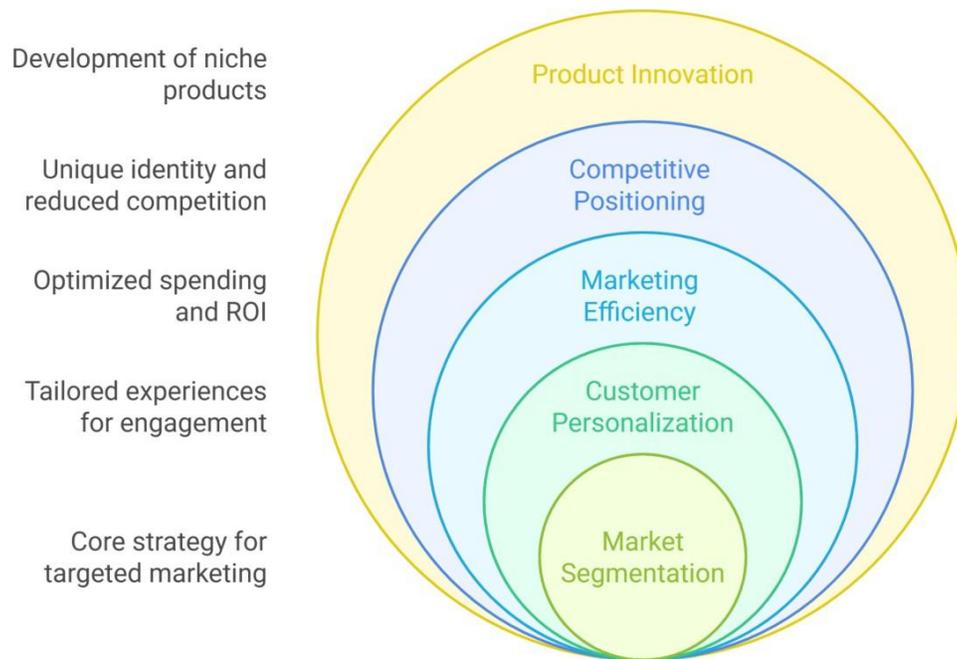
Development of niche products

Unique identity and reduced competition

Optimized spending and ROI

Tailored experiences for engagement

Core strategy for targeted marketing

Product Innovation

Competitive Positioning

Marketing Efficiency

Customer Personalization

Market Segmentation

Fig 4.1 Purpose and Role of Market Segmentation

2. Increasing Marketing Efficiency: By focusing narrowly on well-defined customer segments, firms can optimize marketing spend and improve Return on Investment (ROI). Instead of putting efforts over a wide base, segmentation avoids wasteful spending, optimizes the impact of campaigns, and makes it simpler to track performance. Successful marketing also leads to maximum use of resources, thus ensuring that money and time are spent on high-converting targets.

Example: Nykaa, a retailer of beauty and cosmetic products segments customers based on skincare needs, type of makeup, and budget segments, allowing it to provide targeted recommendations and advertising, leading to higher sales and reduced customer acquisition costs.

3. Competitive Positioning: A clear segmentation strategy enables companies to create a distinctive brand identity by targeting niche segments which are not of interest to the competition. By fulfilling definite customer needs, companies can differentiate themselves and build a powerful position in the market. Segmentation enables brands to compete on value, experience, and relevance rather than competing on price. By concentrating on specific segments, brands can reduce broad-market competition and create a more distinctive value proposition.

Example: Vistara, a high-end airline service is positioned as a business and premium airline, distinguishing itself from low-cost carriers such as IndiGo by providing better in-flight service, premium lounges, and gourmet meals.

4. Facilitating Product Innovation and Development: Customer segments' in-depth understanding enables businesses to look for under-served needs, which translates into developing innovative products to solve particular problems. Rather than bringing generic products, organizations can produce options for various lifestyles, tastes, and behaviours. Through this process, products are made meaningful, needed, and apt to gain traction in the market. Segmentation also enables brands to reinvent themselves by constantly adjusting to the changing expectations and trends of customers.

Example: Paper Boat, a drinks company, employed nostalgia segmentation by launching classic Indian beverages such as Aam Panna and Jaljeera, appealing to customers seeking healthier and culturally appropriate substitutes for carbonated drinks.

5. Facilitating Pricing Strategies: Segmentation makes it possible for firms to devise differentiated pricing strategies that appeal to various customer groups based on their buying power, willingness to pay, and value perception. Instead of a single pricing strategy for all, firms can implement tiered pricing, discounts, and premium offerings to maximize revenue. Price segmentation enables firms to reach more markets without eroding profitability. It is particularly useful in firms where customers vary in budgetary constraints and perceived value.

Example: Cure.fit, a health and fitness company has variable membership plans, like low-cost home workout subscriptions, middle-range gym membership, and premium personal training, making it accessible to different customer segments.

6. Customer Retention and Loyalty: The segmented approach enables businesses to establish long-term relationships by repeatedly providing appropriate experiences, rewards, and products to various groups of customers. Customers feel valued and understood, so they are likely to remain loyal to a brand and repeat the purchase. Special offers, personalized communication, and loyalty programs to targeted segments strengthen customer retention. It generates consistent revenue, lowers churn, and increases customer lifetime value.

Example: BigBasket, an online grocery store segments customers into the frequency of purchase and order value and provides loyalty rewards, priority delivery, and personalized discounts to high-value customers, resulting in repeated interaction and purchase.

4.1.3 Advanced Perspectives on Market Segmentation: Evolution, Strategy, and Integration

Market segmentation, Over the years, market segmentation has evolved significantly, shifting from broad-based mass marketing approaches to increasingly precise, AI-driven hyper-personalization strategies. This has helped organizations better engage consumers, rendering their services and products custom-made for specific consumer requirements. Apart from application in market categorization, segmentation has evolved as a core catalyst of business development, sustainability, and competitive strategy. Furthermore, its incorporation into broader marketing systems, including branding, positioning, and pricing, has solidified its position in shaping contemporary business landscapes.
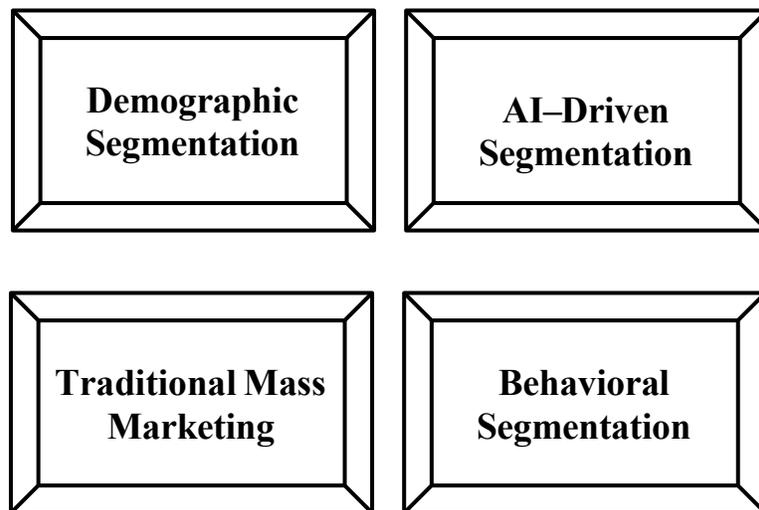

| Demographic Segmentation | AI–Driven Segmentation |
| Traditional Mass Marketing | Behavioral Segmentation |

Fig 4.2 Advanced Perspectives on Market Segmentation: Evolution, Strategy, and Integration

Evolution of Segmentation: From Mass Marketing to Hyper-Personalization

The evolution of market segmentation has been that of a huge shift from mass marketing to a sophisticated, data-based mechanism. Businesses initially used mass marketing strategies that employed a one-fits-all message for all consumers. Over time, demographic and geographic segmentation became popular, allowing businesses to better personalize their marketing efforts. The revolution in the digital space ushered in the era of behavioural, psychographic, and AI-based segmentation, which gave rise to hyper-personalization. This change

enables brands to anticipate the preferences of customers and provide very relevant content, offers, and experiences.

Example: Casual wear brand *The Souled Store* initially appealed to young pop-culture followers via demographic segmentation. With competition on the rise, it turned to AI-fueled hyper-personalization, which also entailed offering product recommendations on the basis of repeat purchases, website browsing history, and social media engagement. The shift to this strategy massively boosted conversion rates and encouraged increased customer loyalty.

Strategic Role of Segmentation in Business Growth and Sustainability

Segmentation is not just a marketing strategy; it is a strategic approach that significantly contributes to long-term business growth. Accurate identification of profitable customer segments enables companies to maximize the use of resources and reduce wastage. Effective segmentation fosters the growth of new products, retention rate improvement, and brand differentiation for businesses. In an era of increasing competition, brands that constantly innovate segmentation outperform them.

Example: NoBroker, the property platform, applied behavioural segmentation to divide tenants, homebuyers, and landlords. The company provided personalized services, such as rent agreements, home loans, and maintenance services, to facilitate repeat interaction with various customer segments. This allowed NoBroker to grow at a fast pace without compromising on efficiency in operations.

Did You Know?

Psychographic segmentation allows marketers to target groups based on lifestyle, values, and interests, creating deeper consumer connections.

4.1.4 Theoretical Foundations of Market Segmentation

Market segmentation is a marketing term referring to the division of a large consumer or business market, usually made up of current and prospective customers, into specific groups of consumers according to some common attributes. This helps companies target specific customers more effectively. Several well-known theories and frameworks contribute to the knowledge and use of market segmentation. Some of the major theories include the principles of *Philip Kotler*, the strategies of *Michael Porter*, the STP model, and the relationship between segmentation and competitive advantage, Particularly by leveraging segmentation as a

strategic advantage. These theories help marketers design appropriate strategies for achieving a competitive advantage.

A. Philip Kotler's Market Segmentation Principles

Philip Kotler, the world's best-known "Father of Modern Marketing," is a celebrated American academician and writer who has transformed the marketing paradigm through his farsighted ideas on consumer behaviour, segmentation, and strategic planning.

Kotler's contributions to marketing theory, especially in the 20th and 21st centuries, have left an indelible mark on how companies engage with segmentation. His early assumptions require knowledge of the needs, behaviour, and characteristics of the consumers to develop significant segments to which marketing can be targeted economically to enhance marketing results. Kotler's principles of segmentation allow companies to formulate tailored products or services to meet the specific needs of different consumer segments. These principles, well-rooted in scientific research and hands-on experience, still influence contemporary marketing concepts and business models globally.
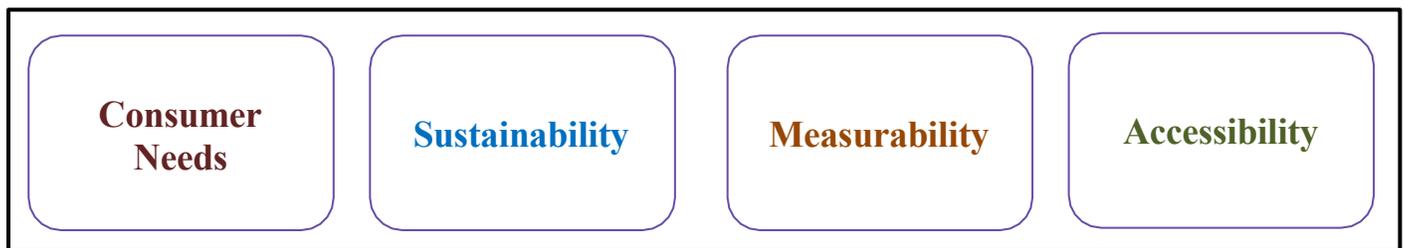

| Consumer Needs | Sustainability | Measurability | Accessibility |

Fig 4.3 *Philip Kotler's* Market Segmentation Principles

1. Segmentation Based on Consumer Needs: *Kotler* bases his argument on the fact that segmentation should be done according to the needs of consumers differently so that businesses are better positioned to understand what drives customer behaviour in different segments. By clearly identifying those needs, the companies can offer products or services tailored towards filling them, and thus, their marketing effort is both targeted and impactful.

Example: Lakmé has successfully segmented its products in the cosmetic industry based on different skin concerns, such as acne, anti-ageing, or skin lightening, catering specifically to each group's distinct needs.

2. Segmentation Based on Measurability: According to *Kotler*, measurable segments must be categorized in terms of size, purchasing power, and the possibility of profitability. This will ensure that businesses can

evaluate the value of each segment and how best to distribute resources, and thereby invest in the right market strategy.

Example: Amazon's vast data analytics is used for segmenting a market based on purchasing behaviour so that the measurement of size and growth of electronic buyers or a home goods shopper can be exactly targeted and then managed in an inventory.

3. Availability of Segments: Accessibility, according to *Kotler*, is the key in market segmentation, which argues that segments have to be accessible through proper marketing channels. That way, it is possible for businesses to effectively communicate their offers to the relevant consumers and make their marketing spending effective in influencing more consumers. Accessibility ensures resources are channelled to the right segments so that returns can be maximized.

Example: Swiggy focuses on urban consumers by utilizing an efficient delivery network and a mobile app that will ensure the convenience of services offered is much higher in metropolitan areas, ensuring convenience for busy professionals.

4. Substantiality of Segments: *Kotler's* principle of substantiality states that a market segment should be large enough or valuable enough to justify investment, ensuring long-term business viability. If a market segment is too small, a company may find it unviable or unprofitable in the long run. This principle will ensure that the businesses target the segments which are offering growth potential, hence sustainable business success and strategic expansion.

Example: Nike targets the youth athletic market, a large and growing segment, with their innovative athletic wear and shoes appealing to young, active individuals who represent a large potential market.

Market segmentation rules by *Kotler* allow companies to identify and focus on specific consumers with suitable offerings. By segmenting the market into distinct pieces, companies can maximize marketing efforts and serve customers more effectively. This provides more efficient use of resources as well as more loyal customers and hence propels business success.

B. Michael Porter's Generic Strategies and Segmentation

Michael Porter, a leading expert in competitive strategy, introduced a model for achieving a competitive advantage, which includes segmentation within the Focus strategy. His three generic strategies, differentiation,

cost leadership, and focus, provide a model which businesses can use to obtain a systematic approach to outdo others in a competitive market. These approaches enable businesses to focus their activities on particular market segments, achieving more suitable and sustainable profitability through products that are tailored to the needs and nature of the target market.
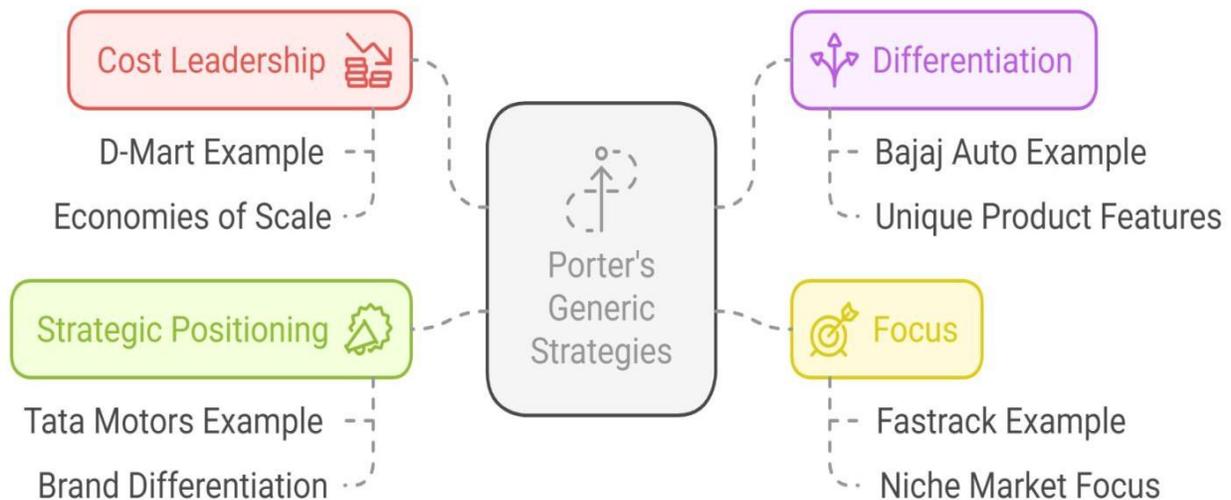

Fig 4.4 Michael Porter's Generic Strategies and Segmentation

1. Cost Leadership through Segmentation: Porter's cost leadership strategy targets a price-sensitive segment of the market with lower-cost products compared to others, usually obtained through economies of scale or operational efficiencies. This kind of strategy would enable a company to enter larger segments and still be profitable.

Example: D-Mart, an Indian retail chain, follows the cost leadership strategy by selling its products at lower prices than that of competitors. It has thereby gained a good position in the budget retail market by targeting price-sensitive customers.

2. Differentiation Strategy through Segmentation: *Porter's* differentiation strategy involves creating a product or service that offers unique attributes, such as quality, design, or good customer service that would target the market. As a result, the company has a competitive edge and can obtain higher prices.

Example: Bajaj Auto is using the principle of differentiation by targeting a high-performance motorcycle to the style and performance seeker as in Pulsar and Dominar, to make a value proposition for their product, hence its higher price.

3. Focus Strategy in Niche Segments: *Porter's* focus strategy suggests businesses should focus on niche segments that could be underserved by larger players. Tailoring offerings to specifically meet the needs of such a segment allows the business to win loyal customers and establish a stronghold in the niche market.

Example: The Fastrack brand of *Titan* is targeting young adults by offering stylish accessories like watches and sunglasses at affordable prices, effectively targeting a segment of price-sensitive, trend-driven consumers.

4. Strategic Positioning through Segmentation: Market segmentation aids strategic positioning by helping businesses tailor their brand identity and offerings to specific consumer groups. Businesses can position their products or services so that they stand out in the minds of customers from the competition.

Example: Through the positioning of its electric vehicle, Nexon EV, *Tata Motors* aims at attaining sustainable and affordable alternatives towards lowering the carbon footprint for Indian consumers targeted at environmentally conscious customers by using a competitive pricing strategy.

Porter's generic strategies, when combined with market segmentation, provide a competitive advantage for businesses. Focusing on cost leadership, differentiation, or niche markets can help companies tailor their strategies to meet the specific needs of their target segments, leading to clearer market positioning and sustainable growth.

4.1.4 Segmenting Consumer Markets

Advanced market segmentation involves the refinement of the targeting process beyond traditional methods and increases the efficiency of marketing. Innovative techniques, such as AI, predictive analytics, and advanced data-driven approaches, are used to better understand consumer behaviour and preferences. The more refined segmentation will enable the development of more personalized and relevant offerings that can improve customer engagement and increase business growth. The following advanced segmentation criteria are meant to delve deeper into the behaviours of consumers and help businesses tailor their marketing strategies.

1. Demographic Segmentation – Beyond the Basics: Generational Marketing, Income Elasticity of Demand

Demographic segmentation has developed way beyond basic age, gender, and income level classifications. It now includes a deeper understanding and recognition of the differing generational attitudes toward demand in

which a business seeks a precise level of an income bracket or segment in proportion to how individuals will react to a change in price. There are varying attitudes among different groups and different financial segments.

Example: Airtel uses generational marketing as it targets millennial customers through mobile data and entertainment packages as they consume the most digital content and are ready to pay for mobile services while offering more basic plans to old customers who seek simplicity.

2. Geographic Segmentation – Geo Clustering and AI-driven, Location-based

Geographic segmentation has become dynamic through geo clustering, in which businesses segment consumers based on location and similar characteristics. Location-based segmentation by AI can enable a company to reach out to its customers with highly localized offers and experiences by considering their geodata and the current location in real time.

Example: Swiggy uses AI-driven location-based segmentation to recommend food delivery options based on user proximity, time of day, and even regional cuisine preferences, increasing customer satisfaction and service relevancy.

3. Psychographic Segmentation: Advanced Consumer Profiling using AI and Big Data

Psychographic segmentation is all about comprehending customers' lifestyles, values, interests, and opinions. Thanks to AI and big data, companies can now examine intricate consumer behaviour and create elaborate, dynamic profiles that go beyond superficial characteristics, creating more personalized and relevant products.

Example: Luxury skincare firm *Forest Essentials* applies psychographic segmentation with the focus of consumer's wellness and living nature-oriented. Applying AI-based insights, it provides customized product suggestions aligned with the individual's lifestyle and health and beauty values.

4. Behavioural Segmentation: Predictive Analytics for Customer Behaviour

Predictive analytics is applied in behavioural segmentation to forecast the behaviour of customers as per history, such as purchase behaviour and frequency of use. It helps companies target consumers effectively by developing two-for-one marketing strategies that are founded on anticipating every need and maximizing the level of engagement.

Example: Myntra employs predictive analytics for recommending fashion items to shoppers based on their past searches and buying behaviour, leading to higher conversions because products are recommended based on the personal style of individual customers.

5. Technographic Segmentation – Determination of Customers Based on Patterns of Technology Usage

Technographic segmentation classifies customers based on their technology usage patterns, including device preferences, software adoption, and digital engagement, helping businesses refine their product offerings and marketing strategies.

Example: Paytm would use technographic segmentation for selecting mobile app users with specific features, such as scanning the payment of QR codes, and focusing on smartphone users for mobile wallet services based on usage patterns.

6. Hybrid Models of Segmentation – Using Multiple Criteria for Strategic Segmentation

Hybrid models of segmentation combine two or more segmentation criteria to form more wholesome, multi-dimensional profiles of customers. This helps businesses integrate various factors and thus create more accurate targeting strategies that reflect the complexity of consumer behaviour and improve segmentation precision.

Example: BigBasket adopts a hybrid model of segmentation with a combination of geographic, behavioural, and demographic data. Based on the segmentation criteria of their location, shopping behaviour, and income level, they can deliver tailor-made offers of discounts and promotions to help sell more to these customers.

Advanced market segmentation criteria allow businesses to develop highly individualized and focused marketing strategies that go beyond the traditional segmentation approach. By using AI, predictive analytics, and the cross-merging of demographic, geographic, psychographic, and behavioural information, businesses can more precisely adapt offerings to individual needs. Hybrid segmentation further optimizes targeting activities to improve the success of marketing initiatives and build even more solidified relationships with consumers.

4.1.5 Requirements for Effective Segmentation

For the effectiveness of market segmentation, firms ought to ensure that their segments are clear, actionable, and marketing objectives-focused. Good segmentation helps to target customers correctly, maximize marketing efforts, and improve customer satisfaction. The following are the most essential requirements of successful segmentation:

1. **Measurability:** Quantification of the segment's size, purchasing power, and characteristics should be possible. Firms require access to relevant information to estimate market potential and track segment performance. Without clear metrics, firms will not be able to allocate resources.

2. **Accessibility:** The segment should be accessible through marketing channels such as digital media, advertising, and distribution networks. Companies should be able to communicate and engage with the target market effectively via suitable platforms. A segment that is not accessible will render marketing inefficient or ineffective.

3. **Substantiality:** The segment should be large and profitable enough to sustain marketing efforts. It should have enough potential buyers to enable business growth and continuity in the future. A small or non-buying power segment may not be able to generate a good return on investment.

5. **Differentiability:** Each segment should have different characteristics and behaviours that set it apart from the rest. It should respond differently to marketing strategies than other segments, so companies can tailor their messaging. Overlapping segments can lead to confusion and dilute marketing effectiveness.

6. **Actionability:** The segment should be actionable and feasible, in the sense that companies must be able to create effective marketing strategies that are a reaction to the requirements of the segment. If a segment cannot be addressed effectively with a unique marketing mix, then it is not difficult to achieve business objectives.

By meeting such criteria, corporations are able to create well-delineated market segments, leading to better-focused marketing, increased customer engagement, and increased profitability.

4.1.6 Market Segmentation Process (Strategic Execution)

Strategic market segmentation calls for the systematic identification and targeting of the proper consumer segments. Companies need to leverage data-driven knowledge, research confirmation, and moral ethics to sharpen segmentation tactics. When segmentation is aligned in its correct business setting and advanced technologies are used strategically, companies can develop more precise and optimized marketing campaigns. The below-mentioned key steps outline the market segmentation process for strategic implementation:
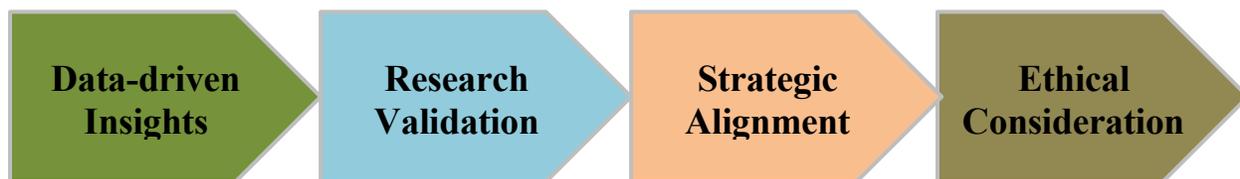
Data-driven Insights	Research Validation	Strategic Alignment	Ethical Consideration

Fig 4.5 Market Segmentation Process (Strategic Execution)

1. Data-driven Segmentation using AI, ML, and Predictive Modelling: Advanced segmentation uses artificial intelligence (AI), machine learning (ML), and predictive modelling to sort through massive amounts of

information about consumer behaviour. It helps the business identify patterns, predicts behaviours, and builds markets based on real-time insights, making it more possible to target them correctly through automated data clustering.

Example:Tata AIG Insurance takes advantage of the use of artificial intelligence and ML to segment customer bases based on risk profiles that are predictive to offer customized plans based on data modelling for predictive health, road behaviour, or financial data and continuously evolving new data that refine a company's policy to ensure such customers get highly personalized coverage choices that reflect constantly changing risk.

2. Market Research Methodologies for Segmentation Validation: Market research helps validate segmentation strategies by ensuring the identified consumer groups are accurate and relevant. The methods used to achieve this include surveys, focus groups, and conjoint analysis. Businesses refine their segmentation through these methods and tailor their marketing strategy accordingly. This step ensures that segmentation aligns with actual consumer preferences.

Example:Boat, an Indian consumer electronics brand, conducts extensive market research through customer feedback and product testing to validate segments based on lifestyle needs so that its audio products can service separate groups, such as gamers, fitness enthusiasts, or casual listeners.

3. Selecting the Appropriate Segmentation Strategy According to Business Goals: Selecting an adequate segmentation approach thus depends on the company's objectives, whether they focus on revenue growth, market expansion, or customer retention. The business should align its choices of segmentation according to its strategic priorities to enhance efficiency and appropriate competitive positioning. Proper segmentation approaches always direct resource allocation.

Example:Mamaearth, a personal care brand, uses psychographic segmentation to target eco-conscious consumers who prioritize organic skincare and sustainable products.

4. Ethical Considerations in Segmentation (Data Privacy, Consumer Rights): Consumer data must be used responsibly, keeping in mind ethical segmentation by ensuring transparency, protecting privacy, and adhering to regulations. Companies cannot practice exploitative uses of personal information for marketing while respecting the rights of consumers. Ethical segmentation fosters trust and facilitates more long-term relationships with customers.

Example: Through the implementation of strict data privacy policies that ensure ethical segmentation, *Razorpay* protects the payment information of its business clients while basing the financial services on secure insights.

Market segmentation can be strategically executed in business operations, enabling the fine-tuning of targeting to precision. This is done by ensuring effective marketing campaigns with the use of data-driven insights, research-based validation of segmentation, and business goals. Companies can improve their competitive advantage further by having ethical segmentation that increases customer trust and long-term relationships for sustainable business growth.

Activity:Identifying Market Segments for a New Product

Choose a recently launched product of an Indian start-up. Profile its target market by determining important market segments by demographics, psychographics, geographical locations, and behavioural characteristics. Study the brand's marketing promotions, product functionalities, and consumer interactions to determine how well it matches various groups of consumers.
How effectively does the segmentation strategy of the company address its target audience? Outline the strengths of its strategy and recommend how it can improve its segmentation strategy for improved market penetration and customer interaction.

4.2 Targeting

4.2.1 Introduction

Targeting is the process of choosing specific consumer segments to target marketing efforts at so that businesses reach the most profitable and relevant audience. It follows segmentation and involves the evaluation of various market segments to determine which ones best align with a company's products, services, and strategic goals. Effective targeting enhances customer engagement, maximizes resource efficiency, and strengthens brand positioning. Businesses use targeting to provide tailor-made experiences to clients, thus boosting conversion and helping them secure long-term customers. The best targeting strategy makes the difference in a competitive business and creates an advantage that stands the test of time.

Definition: *Kotler and Keller* (Marketing Management, 15th Edition) defines targeting as:

"The process of targeting one or more market segments to enter and form marketing strategies suitable for those target markets."

4.2.2 Selecting Target Market Segmentations

Selecting a proper market segment is the core part of marketing strategy as it allows organizations to address specific groups of consumers who are likely to avail of their services or products. Market segmentation involves the grouping of a big consumer market into smaller, controllable segments having similar attributes. This facilitates effective marketing, customer-specific, and customer-centric marketing. The key considerations in the selection of target market segments are:

1. **Identifiability:** The segment should be identifiable with clear features, which allow companies to segment and define it effectively. It should be possible for marketers to segment consumers based on common attributes like demographics, lifestyle, or purchasing behaviour.

2. **Size and Future Growth Opportunities:** The segment should be of good size and should have sufficient future growth opportunities to justify investment. A company needs to analyze the future demand patterns, customer base, and potential income of a segment before targeting it.

3. **Profitability:** Firms should analyze the profitability of the segment. Depending on purchasing power, price sensitivity, and competitiveness, firms can determine whether a segment is profitable enough to be targeted.

4. **Accessibility:** The selected segment should be reachable through marketing media like digital media, advertising, and distribution channels. If a business cannot talk to or distribute to a segment, then the segment may not be an effective target.

5. **Business Goal Congruity:** The segment ought to complement the company's mission, resources, and long-term strategy. It should also complement the capabilities of the company to produce, distribute, and place the brand.

By careful selection of appropriate market segments, businesses can market more effectively, make better contact with customers, and remain ahead of the competition. This stage lays the foundation for the selection of the appropriate targeting strategy and the development of effective marketing plans.

Did You Know?

Precise audience targeting can significantly improve your ROI by focusing your marketing efforts on the most relevant customers, resulting in better engagement and higher conversion rates.
.

4.2.3 Types of Targeting Strategies

Targeting strategies allow a business to decide how wide or narrow a reach they need to make on the market of their products. There are so many targeting strategies, from mass marketing to highly specific. The type of strategy is based on criteria like market size, consumer behaviour, competition, and company resources. The following are the four primary targeting strategies.

1. Undifferentiated Targeting (Mass Marketing): Undifferentiated targeting chooses a huge market by concentrating on a single product or message to the total market. It assumes that all consumers in the market require the same thing, and this leads to cost efficiencies in production and advertising. Such companies rely more on volume sales and lesson differentiation of the customers. It is best applied for products with universal appeal and with less competition, especially in price-sensitive markets.

Example: Parle-G, as a mass-marketed biscuit brand, utilizes an undifferentiated targeting approach by reaching a broad consumer segment without differentiation variations in the product or marketing in terms of individual segments. Their affordability and universal availability support such a strategy.
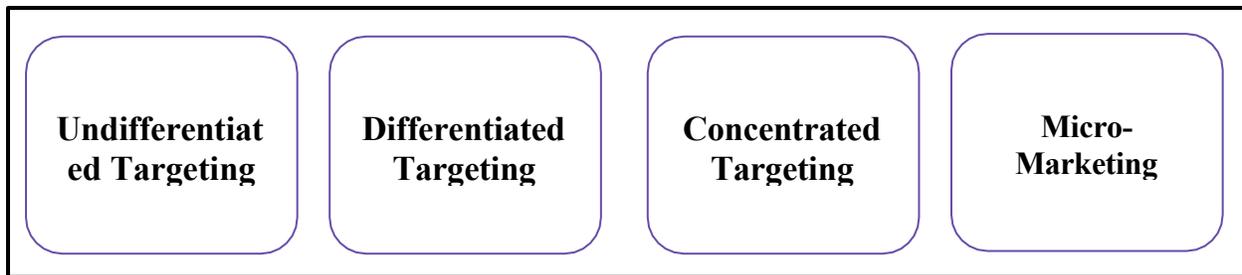

| Undifferentiated Targeting | Differentiated Targeting | Concentrated Targeting | Micro-Marketing |

Fig 4.6 Types of Targeting Strategies

2. Differentiated Targeting (Multi-Segment Marketing): Differentiated targeting is marketing more than one product to different groups, each having a unique message and positioning. This strategy is used to optimize market reach and revenue potential while investing more in marketing and products. Businesses diversify their client base and spread the risk from dependence on just one market. It is most suitable for those brands that intend to diversify their audience with a competitive advantage.

Example: Maruti Suzuki car models target various segments. They provide affordable hatchbacks for price-conscious buyers and premium sedans and SUVs for luxury-conscious customers. Every model is positioned with unique value propositions to appeal to specific consumer preferences.

3. Target Concentration (Niche Marketing): Concentrated targeting is targeting a single, well-defined segment. It enables businesses to serve niche markets with specialized products. This is good for resource-constrained firms or those looking to establish expertise in a category. It can provide deep customer relationships, strong brand loyalty, and premium pricing opportunities. Dependence on a single segment increases vulnerability to market shifts and competition.

Example: Wakefit is a specialty mattress brand targeting health-conscious customers through orthopaedic mattresses that support a better quality of sleep and spinal support. Its focus on innovation related to sleep differentiated it from generic mattress brands.

4. Micro-Marketing (One-to-One Marketing): Micro-marketing deals with personalizing products and marketing to single customers or localized segments. Data analytics and personalization are used to fulfil the exact demands and choices of single customers, typically through AI and predictive analytics. This strategy is highly successful in enhancing customer experience and retaining customers but needs sophisticated technology and greater investment. Companies following this strategy concentrate on hyper-personalization and deliver a custom value proposition to every customer.

Example: Micro-marketing is employed by *Bombay Shirt Company*; it enables the customer to customize fabrics and designs that suit their individual tastes while providing custom-fitted shirts. Its made-to-order system provides exclusivity and a customized shopping experience.

Targeting helps companies manage their resources effectively and focus on market efforts, as well as develop desirable relationships with customers. The right targeting approach differentiates the company competitively, leading to long-term market success. An effective targeting approach can generate higher customer satisfaction and greater brand loyalty, thus leading to sustainable growth.

Choose the correct option:

1. What is the targeting strategy that aims at addressing a mass audience with a single message or product?

    a) Differentiated Targeting
    b) Micro-Marketing
    c) Undifferentiated Targeting

2. Which targeting strategy suits companies catering to a single well-defined market segment with specialized goods?

    a) Target Concentration (Niche Marketing)
    b) Undifferentiated Targeting
    c) Differentiated Targeting

3. How does Micro-Marketing differ from other targeting approaches?

    a) It tailors products and advertising to individual buyers or localized groups
    b) It targets various segments with varied marketing messages
    c) It addresses the whole market with one product strategy

4.2.4 Strategic Target Market Selection

It is a process of selecting a strategic target market, in which market segments are analysed to identify a profitable and aligned market opportunity related to the resources, capabilities, and goals of a company. Marketing efforts are thus well-aimed at the most promising segments on both customer acquisition and retention sides. A well-planned business strategy can focus on the most promising markets while avoiding wasted resources. The analysis has taken into account factors such as the size of the segment, growth potential, competition, and alignment with the objectives.

Criteria for Evaluating and Selecting Profitable Target Markets Strategic target market selection should be based on multiple well-defined criteria. Below are key considerations for ascertaining which criteria are crucial to market selection under business goals.

1. Market Size and Growth Potential: An important criterion of selecting the target market is its size and potential to grow further. Larger or high-growth segments tend to have more chances for long-term profitability,

whereas smaller or flat markets may offer lower returns. It's important to gauge both the current size of the market and future growth prospects to forecast revenue opportunities.

Example: Nokia initially targeted the rapidly expanding mobile phone market. Later, it shifted to the smartphone sector, anticipating future growth in mobile applications and connectivity.

2. Segment Profitability: Profit will be identified based on purchasing power and consumption behavior by target customers in a segment. The average revenue per customer and servicing cost of the specific segment should be calculated by companies. High-margin segments are most desirable because they guarantee high returns on investment.

Example: Apple targets premium-priced product lines such as iPhones and MacBooks to high-income consumers, maximizing profitability through premium margins and brand loyalty.

3. Competitive Intensity: Competitive intensity in a market segment is a strong determinant of selection. Very competitive segments can necessitate increased expenditure on differentiation and marketing activities to establish a niche and to get noticed by customers. Less competitive segments might afford softer entry points into the marketplace and allow for greater market share.

Example: GoPro first concentrated on the niche of extreme sport enthusiasts, in which it faced limited competition against more generic camera brands, allowing it to establish a solid base in this category.

4. Alignment with Business Objectives and Resources: Markets best aligned with a company's core strengths, capabilities, and overall business goals should be chosen. The company must ensure that it possesses the resources and expertise needed and has the correct brand positioning for success in that segment. This can result in costly failures or missed opportunities in the event of misalignment.

Example: Lenskart aligns its business model on its technology and e-commerce strength through online prescription eyewear solutions, thus leveraging its strengths to emerge as the eyewear market leader in India and worldwide.

Strategic selection of target markets helps businesses focus their resources on high-potential segments that are aligned with their goals. Evaluating criteria such as market size, profitability, competition, and alignment with resources increases the chances of success for businesses. A well-chosen target market is the key to sustainable growth and competitive advantage.

4.2.5 Competitive Positioning through Targeting

Targeting refers to competitive positioning by a firm to determine which markets or target groups should be selected to derive an advantageous market position. By choosing the right target markets, businesses can effectively differentiate their brands, making them stand out from competitors. A firm's position on its target products would correspond with the desired customer needs, preferences, and behaviour. This strategy, when integrated with a business's MOAT, ensures that the brand remains strong, unique, and appealing over time.

How Targeting Enhances Competitive Advantage: MOAT Integration

Effective targeting plays a significant role in building the MOAT for a business: it helps a business to achieve a unique market position, and it is relatively difficult for others to replicate success. The following points explain how targeting strengthens competitive positioning and differentiation:
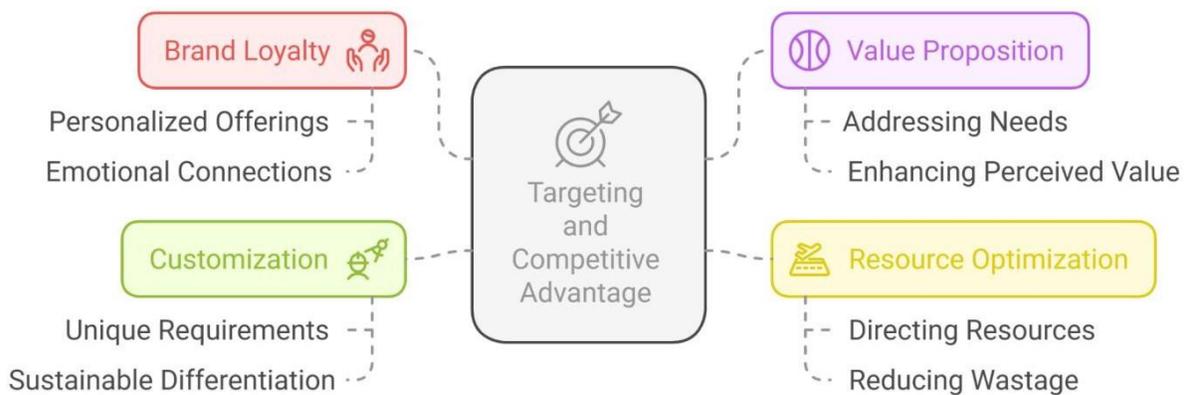

Fig 4.7 Competitive Positioning through Targeting

1. Building Strong Brand Loyalty: Targeting enables the business entity to concentrate on specific segments, leading to more personalized offerings and communications to customers and thereby strengthening their emotional connections. Consequently, it encourages brand loyalty in consumers, who feel that the brand understands their needs and preferences. It is an important base of competitive advantage because the customer base not only ensures repeat business but also acts as a powerful barrier to competition.

Example: Adidas, a German sportswear company, was able to target athletes and fitness enthusiasts, including having personalized products and experiences such as customized shoes and athlete endorsements, which built strong loyalty and increased its market share in the sportswear market.

2. Focused Value Proposition: Targeting helps companies create a more focused and customized value proposition for specific segments, enhancing the effectiveness of their marketing. Addressing the specific needs and pain points of targeted groups can make a company deliver greater perceived value, making the brand more unique in the market. The clarity of the brand message will then strengthen its competitive position and drive customer preference.

Example: Dove promotes real women in all shapes and sizes with the "Real Beauty" campaign as a brand that celebrates diversity and self-confidence as opposed to most beauty brands competing for unrealistic standards of beauty.

3. Resource Optimization and Efficiency: Proper targeting will help in directing the resources where the highest return can be generated. This is the focus on profitable segments so that marketing budgets can be optimized, and wastage is reduced to have a more efficient operation. Resource optimization further strengthens the MOAT by letting the company reinvest the savings into further innovations and product enhancements.

Example: Spotify focuses on music fans with various plans (e.g., student, family, individual), maximizing its resources to concentrate on individualized music experiences and higher engagement while keeping it affordable.

4. Differentiation through Customization: Firms can provide extremely customized products or services specially designed to address the unique requirements of the specific customer segment targeted. This extreme level of customization creates a differentiation factor that cannot be easily replicated by others, thereby further cementing the brand's position. Customization fuelled by targeting creates a sustainable source of competitive differentiation.

Example: FabIndia is the leading Indian retail brand that has been offering handcrafted, environment-friendly products to customers with customizable clothing and home decor with unique regional craftsmanship and personal preferences. This personalization has helped FabIndia stand out from the rest of the competitive retailers.

An effective target enables brand differentiation in a competitive environment on the grounds of loyalty, value propositions, resource optimization, and tailoring. Therefore, such a targeted approach, coupled with the MOAT of the company, is likely to give rise to an authentic market position that no one can copy easily. It helps establish a sustainable competitive advantage as part of the targeted strategies.

4.3 Positioning

4.3.1 Introduction and Definition

Positioning is that fundamental marketing concept that deals with the process of establishing a brand or product in the consumer's mind relative to its competitors. It's actually about creating a unique identity for the brand or product so it resonates well with the target audience, ensuring that it is perceived in a way that aligns with the needs and desires of those consumers. Positioning allows businesses to create a unique and valuable space in an increasingly crowded marketplace. Strategic positioning allows companies to communicate their unique value proposition and create emotional connections with consumers.

Philip Kotler, a renowned marketing expert, defines positioning as the process of designing the company's offering and image to occupy a unique and precise space in the target market. "This explains the concept by highlighting the factors that shape the consumer's perception. It is about the creation of impressions that will remain in the consumer's mind to provoke preference and loyalty.

4.3.2 Importance of Positioning

A position in the marketplace is a determinant of the success of a brand. It will ensure that the brand speaks to the target audience, carves out a place in their minds, and sets them apart from competitors. In effect, the business can clearly communicate its value, establish credibility, and then build long-term relationships with the customers. Through positioning, a company can align its products or services with the needs, desires, and expectations of its target market, thereby increasing the chances of customer preference and loyalty.

1. Differentiates the Brand in a Competitive Market: A clear and compelling positioning strategy carves out a unique space for a brand in a saturated marketplace. Without differentiation, the brand cannot differ from

competitors, creating difficulty in attracting and retaining its customers. Positioning is that process which helps the brand communicate its unique value different from competitors.

Example: Britannia Treat is unique in the competitive snacking industry by virtue of its creamy-filled biscuits, novel tastes, and competitive price point for families and children. With its blend of taste, quality, and price, it is a cut above the rest of the biscuit players, and therefore a favourite among Indian consumers.

2. Aligns the Brand with Consumer Needs: Positioning enables a brand to line up its products or services with the particular needs of the customers and their desires. This alignment creates strong emotional attachment by the consumers, who feel understood by a certain brand and are, in turn, more likely to be loyal. Repeat purchases are likely as the brand continues to meet consumer expectations.

Example:Amul has branded itself as a provider of fresh, high-quality dairy products at affordable prices, making them accessible to the masses. Its clarity with the message ensures that Amul is trusted as the go-to brand in India for true quality and daily consumption of dairy items.

3. Enhances Brand Recall and Recognition: Proper positioning helps the brand become, over time, easy to remember and recognizable to the consumer. Clear messaging, consistent brand imagery, and differentiated product offerings prevent the brand from getting lost in customers' minds. This enhances the possibility of recall when a consumer is ready to make a buying decision.

Example: Cadbury has positioned Dairy Milk as a premium chocolate brand. that signifies pleasure, sharing, and celebration. The unique purple packaging, along with consistent messages, helps that memory for the brand to stay at high recall in the confectionery market.

4. Improves Communication and Messaging: A clear position enables brands to craft contextual, relevant messages around their needs and desires. All marketing activities help to strengthen the brand's identity and create a bond of trust with the consumer. Stronger bonds that last for a long time are easily formed between the brand and the consumer.

Example: With *Zomato* positioned as a quick and reliable food delivery service, keeping the focus on customer convenience and variety, it can communicate to a lot of customers effectively. Zomato maintains a consistent brand identity through targeted messaging in its app, advertisements, and social media by specifically communicating its promise of swift and dependable service.

5. Builds Customer Trust and Credibility: A brand that clearly and consistently communicates its message earns the trust and credibility of the consumers. Customers can relate to the message sent by the brand, and they end up staying with the brands for long periods, thus experiencing higher customer retention and loyalty.

Example: HDFC Bank has positioned itself as a trusted, customer-friendly financial institution that offers innovative banking services for urban and rural customers has helped it gain huge amounts of trust. Its continued service delivery and customer satisfaction have gained strong credibility in the long term.

Positioning represents an essential definition of a brand's specific place in the marketplace that creates and maintains difference and loyalty. Thus, if a brand can position its values effectively in the customers' minds, trust is built, and competition is maintained.

4.3.3 Differentiation and Positioning

Differentiation and positioning are core marketing strategies that allow brands to create a distinct identity and have the upper hand over the competition. Differentiation is concerned with developing distinctive features, attributes, or services that distinguish a brand from others. Positioning, however, ensures that differentiation is effectively communicated to the target market and has an impact on consumer perception of the brand in the market. An effective differentiation and positioning strategy serves to enable companies to attract their desired customers, create brand loyalty, and propel long-term success.

Key Features of Differentiation:

1. Product Differentiation: Product differentiation involves developing unique features, higher quality, a new design, or superior performance to distinguish a brand from others. Firms invest money on research and development to provide distinctive functionalities, longevity, or beauty that resonate with customers' requirements and tastes. Differentiated products tend to have greater brand loyalty and enable firms to charge a premium price because of perceived uniqueness and value addition.

Example: Apple differentiates its smartphones by utilizing advanced technology, smooth software integration, high-quality build, and a robust ecosystem that maximizes user experience.

2. Service Differentiation: Service differentiation is about providing excellent customer service, individualized support, and ease of providing a superior experience. Companies invest in prompt customer service, simple

returns, extended warranties, and tailored interactions to boost satisfaction. Great service creates strong brand loyalty, enhances greater customer retention, and provides a competitive edge in commodity markets.

Example: Zappos excels by offering great customer service, including free returns, individualized support, and 24/7 customer support, allowing the shopping process to be hassle-free and easy.

3. Brand Differentiation: Brand differentiation is the process of establishing a strong emotional connection with customers based on core values, reputation, and unique brand heritage. Those companies that build a good brand identity create a strong impression in the minds of consumers, influencing purchasing decisions and long-term loyalty. Effective brand differentiation is based on consistent communications, strong brand heritage, and common values and aspirations with the customers.

Example: Patagonia differentiates itself on the grounds of sustainability, environmentally conscious manufacturing, and environmental responsibility, drawing in eco-conscious consumers who appreciate its mission.

4. Price Differentiation: Price differentiation enables firms to price according to exclusivity, value, or segments of customers. Premium pricing communicates luxury, status, and high quality, while budget pricing targets price-sensitive customers looking for value for money. Price differentiation also encompasses dynamic pricing, whereby prices change in response to demand, segmentation-based pricing specific to various consumer segments, and price discounting aimed at attracting price-sensitive buyers without sacrificing profitability.

Example: Tesla follows a premium pricing policy, targeting high-income people who want luxury electric vehicles, whereas Tata Motors provides low-price, economical cars for price-sensitive markets.

5. Channel Differentiation: Channel differentiation is the method of employing unique distribution approaches, collaborative alliances, and innovative access attributes to attain a competitive edge. Firms maximize customer convenience via one-of-a-kind online transactions, omnichannel retailing strategies, or DTC models. Special distribution channels allow brands to manage pricing models, manage customer relationships, and determine the overall brand experience.

Example: Warby Parker, an eyewear company, led the way in an online-centric approach where consumers cantry on glasses virtually before making a purchase, thereby increasing convenience and accessibility.

6. Experience Differentiation: Experience differentiation is the process of creating a valuable customer experience through custom services, immersive experiences, or innovative technological breakthroughs. Firms employ artificial intelligence (AI), loyalty programs, and experiential retail environments to enhance customer relationships. Brand exclusivity drives brand awareness, increases customer satisfaction, and promotes long-term loyalty.

Example: Starbucks stands out based on a personalized coffee experience, in-store mobile ordering, personalized rewards, and a welcoming atmosphere that extends customer experience.

Positioning by Differentiation

1. **Target Audience Alignment:** Successful differentiation has to be consistent with the target market's needs, buying habits, and expectations. Companies need to conduct thorough research and understand their customers to customize offerings that specifically meet their requirements. Effective alignment guarantees that differentiation attempts are heard by consumers, making them more relevant and appealing to brands.

2. **Sustainable Competitive Advantage:** An established differentiation strategy gives a competitive edge for the long term by precluding competitors from copying a brand's point of difference. Sustainable differentiation fosters customer loyalty, decreases price sensitivity, and enhances market positioning. Firms that are continually innovating and working at enhancing their differentiation strategy can sustain a powerful presence in changing markets.

3. **Clear and Consistent Brand Messaging:** Positioning guarantees effective communication of the differentiation through the marketing channels and builds a sound and consistent brand identity. It requires brands to have consistent communications in advertisements, product packaging, online content, and customer interfaces. A succinct and concentrated message for the brand reinforces the sole value proposition as well as inhibits consumer ambiguity.

4. **Emotional and Psychological Appeal:** Effective positioning generates an emotional bond with consumers, encouraging them to choose and stick with a brand. Emotional appeal creates trust, engenders more meaningful brand relationships, and improves customer retention. Brands that elicit strong emotions through narratives, cause marketing, or individualized engagement make lasting impressions on consumers.

4.3.4 Choosing a Differentiation and Positioning Strategy

Opting for the correct differentiation and positioning strategy is critical for long-term brand success. It involves knowing the target market, competitor analysis, and deciding how to establish a different and valuable brand image. A clearly defined strategy assists companies in developing customer loyalty, enhancing brand recall, and holding a strong position in a highly competitive market. In the absence of a focused differentiation and positioning strategy, companies will risk fading into the background among competitors and losing their market competitiveness.

Steps to Select a Differentiation and Positioning Strategy:

1. **Find Key Differentiation Points:** Identify why the product or service is differentiated, e.g., better technology, sustainability, or special features. A company needs to find its strengths and align them with what consumers expect.

2. **Understand Consumer Needs and Preferences:** Do extensive market research to determine customer pain points, wants, and buying behaviour. Brands that are in sync with consumer needs will be able to establish strong relationships and brand loyalty.

3. **Analyze Competitor Positioning:** Look at how competitors are positioning themselves and find gaps in the market. A brand should try to occupy a space that competitors have not been able to address effectively.

4. **Create a Unique Value Proposition (UVP):** Write a great statement that distinguishes why the brand is unique and why consumers should pick it over the rest. The UVP must be concise, short, and centred on customer advantage.

5. **Define a Clear Positioning Statement:** A positioning statement must clearly define what the brand is about, who it addresses, and why it serves customer needs better than others. Sample: "Nike: Bringing inspiration and innovation to every athlete in the world."

6. **Execute the Strategy through All Marketing Media:** Maintain a consistent message throughout advertising, social media, packaging, and customer communications. A robust brand presence enhances differentiation and positioning.

7. **Test, Monitor, and Adjust:** Collect customer feedback, measure performance statistics, and gradually sharpen positioning to remain relevant in an ever-changing market. Consumer behaviour and competitor strategy shift, necessitating modifications in response.

Common Differentiation Strategies

1. Cost Leadership: Cost leadership deals with offering products or services at prices that are competitive but acceptable quality. Firms achieve this by reducing production costs, enjoying economies of scale, and streamlining operations for the purpose of delivering affordability without any compromise in value. This approach works well in price-sensitive settings where shoppers are price-sensitive. Firms pursuing cost leadership must maintain supply chain efficiency and profitability regardless of reduced prices.

Example: Walmart is a best example of cost leadership as it uses economies of scale, effective operations, and an extremely optimized supply chain to provide products at a consistent low price. Rather than offering "acceptable" quality, Walmart delivers affordable quality at a reasonable price, becoming a price-insensitive market leader.

2. Product Leadership: Product leadership emphasizes continual innovation, first-class design, and technological advancement to deliver superior, state-of-the-art products. Organisations that adopt this style spend considerably on R&D to become distinct through innovative functionality, improved performance, and an improved customer experience. Product leadership allows organisations to command premium prices and possess a strong competitive advantage by setting industry trends.

Example: Apple updates its products repeatedly with new, innovative features like superior processors, AI-driven capability, and refined software integration in order to set its products apart and maintain the high-end image brand.

3. Customer Intimacy: Customer intimacy is concerned with developing intimate, long-term relationships with customers through customized experiences, customized services, and high-touch interactions. In contrast to experience differentiation, customer intimacy is less interested in service design and technology and more in customer relationship management (CRM), loyalty programs, and data-driven insights in order to anticipate and deliver individualized needs. Customer intimacy develops trust, loyalty, and higher lifetime value per customer.

Example: Amazon Prime deepens customer intimacy through customer data, providing personalized suggestions, subscription-relevant benefits, and special promotions. Its active involvement, like pre-sale promotions and content personalization suggestions, forges a richer, relationship-based bond with members.

4. Lifestyle Branding: Lifestyle branding connects a company's image, values, and message with the subcultures, aspirations, and lifestyle of their target market. In addition to facilitating an emotional connection,

this approach embeds the brand in consumer communities and identity, becoming an integral part of their personal expression. Lifestyle branding companies use influencer marketing, sponsorships, and experiential marketing to place themselves in the everyday life of their audience.

Example: Red Bull differentiates itself by becoming a part of the high-adrenaline, action-oriented lifestyle. With sponsorship of extreme sports, endorsement by extreme athletes, and branded events, Red Bull is not only a drink—it represents the personality of consumers who live for adrenaline and activity.

Selecting an effective differentiation and positioning strategy is essential for businesses to create a strong market presence, acquire the right target market, and achieve long-term development. Companies must continually sharpen their strategies to keep up with changing consumer preferences and competitive forces. An effective differentiation strategy fosters brand recognition, enhances customer trust, and fosters long-term brand loyalty. Through innovation and adapting to changing market forces, companies can maintain a differentiated value proposition and ensure long-term profitability.

> ### Knowledge Check 2
>
> **Fill in the blanks:**
> 1. Companies attain cost leadership through lowering production costs, reaping _____, and optimizing operations to provide affordability without sacrificing value. (economies of scale / high-end branding)
> 2. This approach targets establishing long-term relationships through _____, loyalty programs, and tailored experiences. (customer relationship management / mass production)
> 3. Lifestyle brands establish an emotional bond by identifying with consumer _____, aspirations, and identity. (subcultures / cost efficiency)

4.3.5 Positioning Strategies

The only method by which a brand can make its identity unique in a competitive market situation is through effective positioning strategies. This strategy creates a distinct, precise message to target customers for the brand and differentiates the brand from every other. Most companies employ their strategies regarding a company's demand, competitor analysis, or customer tastes to establish a positive position. An intimate

understanding of customers' wants and market trends must be combined in harmony with the right positioning of a product or service. Let's learn about these strategies.
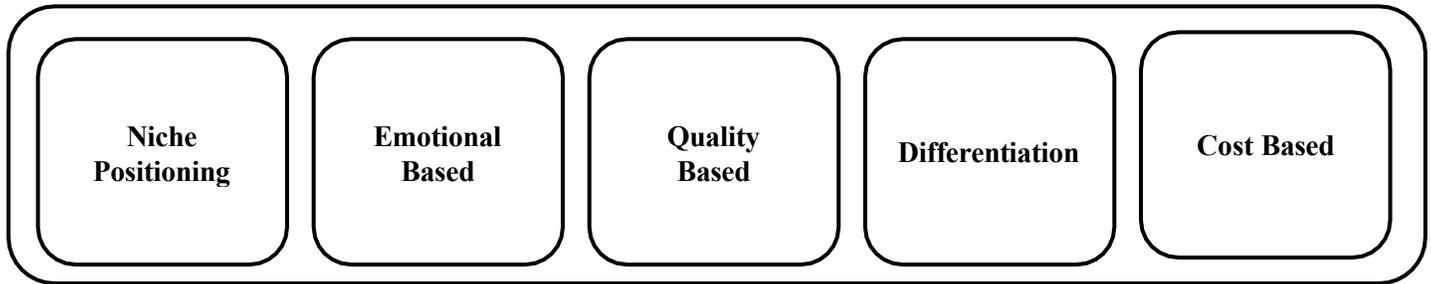

Fig 4.8 Positioning Strategies

1. Cost-Based Positioning: Cost-based positioning places significant emphasis on the need to price a product or service competitively to appeal to target customers looking for value for money. This positioning strategy will have to be followed by the brands without giving up profitability. It typically implies streamlining of operations or value propositions. It encompasses a smooth supply chain and cost control to retain quality in competition

Example: Zappfresh is a meat delivery business that provides services online. They compete on quality, freshness, and price to target cost-efficient solutions for this emerging demand in urban regions. They procure directly from farms and maintain a properly managed supply chain to keep the product fresh at affordable prices.

2. Differentiation-Based Positioning: Differentiation-based positioning is all about providing distinctive features, benefits, or experiences that differentiate the brand from others. This can be achieved through technological innovation, exceptional customer service, or an unparalleled product feature. Brands using this approach are likely to remain innovative by hammering on uniqueness in advertising and customer engagement. It involves offering something difficult for others to replicate, giving a sustainable competitive advantage.

Example: Havells, a leading FMCG company, is one Indian electrical goods brand that offers unique energy-saving home appliances with innovations. Through distinct features like advanced safety features and eco-friendly designs, Havells has taken its place in this highly competitive market of electricals.

3. Quality-Based Positioning: Quality-based positioning emphasizes the whole strategy of superior product quality. Brands use this positioning to tell consumers that their products or services deliver better performance,

durability, and reliability compared to others. Most of the time, it is linked with premium pricing, targeting those clients who are ready to pay a premium for quality rather than price. It's a strategy that caters to quality-choosy customers who care about having only the best products available in the marketplace to perform what is required.

Example: Bajaj Electricals concentrates its product offerings on reliable, long-term electrical appliances such as ceiling fans, geysers, and lighting systems. The commitment to quality and reliability positions the brand as a market leader in India, with the consumer who prefers superior performance.

4. Emotional-Based Positioning: Emotional-based positioning appeals to the emotions of customers, making a connection beyond the product or service. Brands that use this strategy usually create feelings of nostalgia, excitement, happiness, or trust in the minds of consumers, hoping to build long-term relationships with them. This emotional connection can result in brand loyalty and advocacy, turning customers into lifelong supporters.

Example: *Godrej's* brand emphasizes the trust element along with the emotional connection where they talk of family values and care for customers in their ads. Their positioning strategy appeals to a sense of reliability and tradition, which resonates well with the Indian consumer to feel that this is an indispensable part of their household.

5. Niche Positioning: Niche positioning targets an area of a specific market that has not been penetrated or serviced enough by mass brands. Specialized products or services are, therefore, sold to fulfil a specific segment, and because they cater specifically to a specific group of needs, high loyalty from the customer is realized. Niche positioning avoids clutter created by the number of mass-market competitors while enabling brands to dominate a focused and smaller market.

Example: FabIndia is a high-end lifestyle brand that deals with handcrafted garments, home textiles, and organically grown natural products. As a niche-specific brand that attracts the niche, environmentally sensitive segment of customers preferring sustainable and locally crafted goods above mass market.

With these strategies, brands can create a distinctive positioning that draws the appropriate customers and supports long-term business success. When properly implemented, these approaches help brands build their market presence and establish greater customer loyalty.

4.3.6 Developing a Positioning Statement

A positioning statement forms an important part of a brand's strategy by summarizing the unique value of the brand, the target audience, and its differentiators against competitors. It helps in clearly communicating the essence of the brand to both internal and external stakeholders and aligns all efforts toward delivering a single, consistent, and compelling brand experience. A well-crafted positioning statement helps ensure that all marketing messages, product offerings, and customer experiences are aligned with the brand's core identity. It is a guide for forming customer perceptions and creating a solid market presence.

1. Target Market: A target market refers to the target audience that defines the specific consumers a brand wishes to serve. It is defined by demographics, geography, or psychographics. Knowing your target market helps ensure that every marketing strategy addresses the needs and preferences of that target market so that there's a deeper connection and greater relevance.

Example: Pepperfry is an online furniture and home decor retailer serving young professionals and newly wedded couples who are setting up their homes. Pepperfry offers a wide variety of stylish and affordable furniture options to consumers who desire quality products with convenience, making the site the go-to destination for home furnishing needs.

2. Differentiators: Differentiators make a brand unique or different from its competitors. These can be innovations, superior quality of products, customer service, or pricing strategy. The reason for identifying the differentiators is to ensure that the brand has something unique that the competition cannot easily replicate.

Example: Bata stands out for offering a wide variety of affordable, fashionable footwear that appeals to both quality and price-sensitive consumers. It has a strong emphasis on customer satisfaction, offering a reliable and good-value selection compared with other footwear brands.

3. Brand Promise: A brand promise is a clear commitment a brand makes to its customers regarding the unique benefit they will get. It helps to differentiate the brand from competitors through a particular value-driven offering that resonates with the target audience's needs and desires.

Example: Dream11 promises users an engaging fantasy sports experience where they can actively participate and compete The platform positions itself as one where sports enthusiasts will be able to take their love for the game to a higher level.

4. Competitive Context: The positioning also has to consider the competitive landscape and define how the brand fits in this context. This involves knowing what competitors are offering and explaining clearly why the brand is superior or preferred by the target audience.

Example: *VI* positions itself as a top telecom provider in India, highlighting superior network coverage, fast internet services, and strong customer support. Compared to the other telecom companies, VI communicates that it provides the most holistic service catering to the diversified customer segments, from rural users to urban ones.

5. Emotional Connection: The positioning of a brand to evoke strong emotional responses is a very powerful way to deepen customer loyalty and create long-lasting brand relationships. Brands can connect on a deeper level beyond just functional benefits by aligning the brand's messaging with the emotional triggers of its target audience.

Example: Himalaya Herbals positions itself as a brand that delivers natural wellness, emphasizing emotional benefits over safety aspects through its herbal care products. Thus, it relates to the lifestyle of consumers, where they want a holistic and natural lifestyle in personal care.

Each of these elements is fundamental in crafting a comprehensive positioning statement that will resonate with the target audience and thus provide a strong foundation for the brand's marketing strategy.

4.3.7 Repositioning Strategies

Repositioning refers to changes in a brand's market position relative to competitors or the perceived identity of the brand in the eyes of potential customers. Often, it comes about through moving consumer perceptions to a new market or, actually, through attributes the brand's marketing emphasizes as result. Repositioning is used when a brand's position is no longer inline with the market trend, consumer need, or company objectives. To be

successful, repositioning requires a profound understanding of the market trend, customer behaviour, and effective communication strategies.

1. Changing the Target Market: A firm may reposition to target a new consumer group by shifting focus towards a different segment. It may target a different age, income, or geography. This allows the firm to attract new customers while preserving or increasing market share. The firm may alter its marketing, product, or distribution strategy to attract a new target market.

Example: Nescafé repositioned to appeal to a younger crowd in India through trendy coffee experiences and a younger brand personality. Beyond the classic office goers, they were focusing on the college-going student crowd and the young working professional crowd through its 'Nescafé Cold Brew' and other new age offerings as part of the burgeoning coffee culture.

2. Differentiating the Brand: A brand may reposition itself when the objective is to differentiate from competitors. This differentiation is brought out by unique features, values, or benefits that distinguish the brand from the mindset of consumers. The differentiation strategy allows a brand to gain an edge by offering something perceived as superior to competitors.

Example: Ola Electric repositioned itself as a leader in sustainable transportation, emphasizing eco-friendly electric vehicles to appeal to environmentally conscious consumers in India

3. Changes in Perception about the Product: Sometimes, repositioning happens by changing how a product is perceived in the market. This may involve changing consumer perceptions about the quality, price, or usage context of the product. Companies can change how their products are viewed by their target consumers through targeted messaging.

Example: Amul Butter, over the years, Amul repositioned its butter as an essential article in every Indian home, emphasizing health and tradition. Advertising and branding by Amul changed the product's image from a mere dairy item to a symbol of quality and trust.

4. Repositioning Based on External Factors (Market Trends, Economic Shifts): Brands can position themselves again when there is an overall shift within the market or economy. When consumers change tastes, there may be global trend changes and technological shifts, among others. Brands should remain adaptable and shift towards the change that may ensure continued relevance and competition.

Example: Godrej Appliances – With the onset of environmental consciousness in the country, Godrej Appliances restated its products along the lines of energy efficiency and sustainability. The brand leveraged the eco-friendly trend into 'energy-saving' features to feed off the increasing demand for green and sustainable products.

5. Innovative Pricing Strategy: The other way of repositioning can be achieved through changes in the product's pricing. The business can appeal to a different customer segment or reflect new market conditions by adjusting prices up or down. A revised pricing structure can either elevate a brand's prestige or position it as a more affordable option.

Example: Vistara, an Indian full-service airline, repositioned itself by providing budget-friendly economy-class fares along with superior services. Therefore, air travel became affordable to price-sensitive customers while the company maintained its premium positioning through its business-class services.

The strategies of repositioning can help a brand keep its position alive by capitalizing on growing market opportunities and responding effectively to the wants of consumers. Successful repositioning depends on a comprehensive market analysis, changes in the needs of the target audience, and clear communication that reaches the hearts of the consumers. Brands employing effective repositioning strategies strengthen their market presence and drive long-term growth.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
"Bajaj's Advertising Evolution and Brand Positioning"
Exchange4Media. (n.d.). *'Hamara Bajaj' to 'World's Favourite Indian': A peek into Bajaj Auto's advertising journey*

Knowledge Check 3

Choose the correct option:

1. Which of the following is a repositioning strategy that involves targeting a new consumer group?

    A. Differentiating the Brand

    B. Changing the Target Market

    C. Innovative Pricing Strategy

2. How did Ola Electric reposition itself in the market?

    A. By focusing on eco-friendly and sustainable transportation

    B. By reducing prices to attract budget-conscious consumers

    C. By launching a new advertising campaign targeting rural areas

3. What is a key factor for successful brand repositioning?

    A. Copying competitor strategies

    B. Offering frequent discounts

    C. Understanding market trends and customer behavior

4. How did Tata Tea reposition itself in the market?

    A. By introducing a new premium tea range

    B. By associating itself with social awareness and activism

    C. By lowering its prices to attract budget-conscious consumers

4.4 Summary

❖ Market segmentation involves grouping a wide variety of customers based on similar attributes for better targeting.

❖ Effective segmentation optimises resource utilization and enhances competitiveness through addressing diversified consumer needs.

❖ Targeting is the process of choosing profitable market segments that match a company's strategic goals and resources.

❖ Differentiated targeting enables firms to target several distinct products to differently segmented markets using exclusive communication.

- Positioning creates the identity of a brand in consumers' minds that distinguishes the brand from the competition.
- Operational effectiveness satisfies price-sensitive consumers while being profitable with cost-positioning.
- Positioning based on differentiation depends upon distinctive features or benefits to gain a competitive advantage.
- Niche positioning serves neglected segments with focused products and supports brand loyalty and profitability.
- Emotion-positioning links a brand to a consumer at an emotional level to enable the building of loyalty.
- Assessment of segment size, growth, profitability, and fit to business strategy and strategic market choice.
- Ethical targeting focuses on transparency, equity, and respect for consumer rights and data.
- Repositioning repositions a brand's identity to enhance alignment with evolving consumer needs, trends in the marketplace, or business objectives.

4.5 Key Terms

1. **Segmentation:** The activity of breaking a large market into numerous homogeneous segments based on common characteristics so that firms can devise more focused and effective marketing efforts.

2. **Targeting:** The process of selecting certain market segments to target through marketing to match customer requirements and achieve optimal business potential.

3. **Positioning:** A method of establishing a unique brand or product image in customers' minds to differentiate it from others and match customer preferences.

4. **Differentiation:** An advertising strategy of creating unique product features or services that differentiate an enterprise, in most cases bringing a competitive advantage.

5. **Niche Marketing:** Marketing strategy in which firms target marketing to a specialized, often underserved, group to establish strong loyalty and profitable relationships.

6. **Emotional Branding:** Emotional branding is creating a strong emotional bond with consumers through believable and effective messaging, creating long-term loyalty.

7. **Repositioning:** It is a strategy of refining a brand's image, messaging, or strategy to align with shifting consumer needs or market trends, maintaining relevance and competitiveness.

4.6 Descriptive Questions

1. Segmentation helps businesses to enhance customer engagement and improve the efficient allocation of resources.

2. Why is targeting crucial in aligning a company's offerings with the most profitable market segments?

3. What is the role of positioning in creating an identity for a brand in the marketplace that would be unique and lasting?

4. How does differentiation enable businesses to stand out and achieve sustainable competitive advantage?

5. In what ways does niche marketing help brands reach underserved audiences and build strong loyalty?

6. Why are ethical marketing practices important for businesses in the face of heavy competition?

7. What should a firm consider in deciding on the most profitable target markets?

8. How does repositioning help the brand stay trendy or fit into a changing market trend or consumer demand?

4.7 References

1. "Marketing Management" by *Philip Kotler* and *Kevin Lane Keller*

2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by *Philip Kotler*, *Hermawan Kartajaya*, and *Iwan Setiawan*

3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by *Michael Porter*

4. Consumer Behaviour by *Schiffman* 12th Edition

5. Marketing Warfare by *Jack Trout* and *Al Ries*

6. "Consumer Behaviour: Buying, Having, and Being" by *Michael R. Solomon*

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1. c) Undifferentiated Targeting

2. a) Target Concentration (Niche Marketing)

3. a) It customizes products and marketing for individual customers or localized segments

Knowledge Check 2

1. economies of scale

2. customer relationship management

3. subcultures

Knowledge Check 3

1: B) Changing the Target Market

2: A) By focusing on eco-friendly and sustainable transportation

3: C) Understanding market trends and customer behaviour

4: B) By associating itself with social awareness and activism

4.8 Case Study

Crafting Brand Identity through Emotional Advertising

The Case of Bajaj Video Ads

Brand positioning is a basic strategy that helps businesses separate themselves in a saturated marketplace. Advertising, particularly video marketing, is the most important tool in the effective positioning of a brand in the minds of customers. Bajaj, one of the leading automotive brands in India, has based its effective brand positioning on putting confidence into the minds of its customers on emotionally bankable video advertising. This case study will explore how Bajaj used video advertising to slice up its audience, target the right consumer groups, and establish it as a brand synonymous with reliability and innovation.

Background

Bajaj Auto, headquartered in 1945, stands as one of the leading vehicle manufacturers in Indian two-wheelers and three-wheeler businesses. The Company has a sizable presence globally, especially for commuter and performance bikes. Being under increasing attack from Hero MotoCorp, Honda, and the new entrant TVS in the marketplace, Bajaj needed product innovation but impactful advertising across the board and among its targets.

Problem 1. Market Segmentation and Appeal

Bajaj understood that its vast target audience needed to be marketed accordingly. The brand was needed to talk to various sections that ranged from a budget-conscious commuter to performance bike enthusiasts. Earlier advertisements lacked uniform emotional appeal, which makes it hard to create a good emotional relationship with the customer for all those sections.

Solution:

- Conducted extensive consumer research to identify key motivations of different customer segments.
- It has designed differentiated video advertisements for various models. The Pulsar series targeted the youth and performance seekers, whereas the Platina series was for price-conscious, mileage-conscious customers.
- Campaigns such as "Hamara Bajaj" were created that emphasized trust, nostalgia, and the

Problem 2: Competitive Differentiation in Advertising

With Hero MotoCorp and Honda going all guns blazing on mileage and performance-centric campaigns, the onus rested with Bajaj to gain that edge. There was an inherent lack of consistency in storytelling as an emotional trigger for memory recall. Besides, most earlier campaigns were stuck at the point of listing the features of a product rather than becoming a more aspirational brand that could appeal at a more deeply emotional level with its customers.

Solution:

- The focus shifted from advertising products directly to more emotive storytelling.
- Launched impactful campaigns such as "The World's Favourite Indian", which placed Bajaj at the world leader level but reminded it of its Indian origins.
- Used strong stories of freedom, adventure, and aspirational success, especially in Pulsar advertisements, to connect with young riders.

Problem 3: Positioning as an Innovative and Reliable Brand

Bajaj wanted to remind the consumers that it is an innovative, technically advanced, and reliable brand. To meet changing consumer expectations, the brand should strive through its advertisements to project this image. Moreover, with an increasing preference of the consumer toward smart, fuel-efficient, and durable vehicles, Bajaj needed to communicate its technological developments in the market.

Solution:

- Such technological innovation in video ads includes "Dominar – The Night Rider", emphasizing advanced features and power.
- Used real-life testimonials and customer-driven storytelling in Bajaj RE (three-wheeler) ads, thereby further strengthening the brand's reliability in commercial vehicle markets.
- Digital integrated marketing strategies with interactive video ads on YouTube and Instagram to boost engagement.

Reflective Questions

- How did Bajaj use emotional storytelling to enhance its brand positioning?

- What could Bajaj add in the video advertising for maintaining the interest?
- How might Bajaj use new digital platforms - such as short video apps - to effectively target younger audiences?

Conclusion

Bajaj's video advertisement strategy reveals a way that brands could associate with emotional appeal and a storytelling way, strengthening their market positioning. By targeting various consumer groups with campaigns that are seen as personalized and emotionally relevant, Bajaj has truly surpassed the competition by being able to differentiate itself. The case study highlights the importance of continuous innovation in advertising strategy and maintaining brand relevance and customer loyalty.

Unit 5: Marketing Mix: Product & New Product Development

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will comprehend the significance of the marketing mix in attaining business success.
2. Learners will be able to identify and describe the basic components of the marketing mix.
3. Learners will learn how to implement successful marketing mix strategies.
4. Learners will be able to enhance brand positioning and customer satisfaction.
5. Learners will comprehend the Product Life Cycle concept and its contribution to business strategy.
6. Learners will be able to formulate product management strategies at each stage of the lifecycle to attain the maximum possible growth and sustainability.

Content

5.0 Introductory Caselet

"Crafting the Perfect Marketing Mix: The Success Story of Mehta

Raj Mehta, a founder of high-end organic beauty company Mehta Organics, was eager to take his business outside domestic boundaries. His products were of fine quality, yet sales were at a standstill even though the demand for organic beauty products was on the rise. Raj was aware that he needed a well-formulated marketing mix strategy in order to put his brand where it belonged and increase its reach.

Initially, his price strategy was incoherent and therefore it was difficult for his customers to understand the value of the brand. His product line was not clearly differentiated, and he was finding it difficult to choose between being affordable or luxurious. Additionally, his promotions were limited to word of mouth only, whereas others were using social media, influencer collaborations, and online promotions extensively. His distribution channels were similarly confined to a handful of organic food stores, limiting broader access.

Recognizing these gaps, Raj reformulated Mehta Organics' marketing mix by simplifying the 4Ps—Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. He introduced a high-end range of products with new formulations, and set competitive prices, retailed through online platforms and high-end retail chains, and invested in digital marketing and influencer partnerships. As a result, the brand registered a significant growth in sales, improved customer engagement, and solidified its market position.

Critical Thinking Question

How can firms like Mehta Organics continuously realign their marketing mix to stay ahead in an ever-changing market without compromising brand identity and customer loyalty?

5.1 Introduction to Marketing Mix: Why Use Marketing Mix

5.1.1 Introduction

The marketing mix is a fundamental area of marketing practice, made up of tactical techniques and approaches businesses employ to advance their goods or services in the marketplace in a bid to gain sales. The 4Ps of Product, Price, Place and Promotion, or the marketing mix, as they are alternately referred to, are formulas conventionally utilized in the application of the marketing effort to expound the rationale for marketing formulation and implementation. The idea was brought into the business world b*y E. Jerome McCarthy* in 1960 and has since been developed to accommodate different business scenarios.

Definition of Marketing Mix: Marketing mix is a combination of factors that a business utilizes to differentiate its products for customers, fulfil their needs, and maintain a competitive edge. Factors involved include product offerings, pricing strategies, distribution channels, and promotional activities. A well-applied marketing mix guarantees that the right customers receive the company's products or services in the right way and at the right time and price.

Fig 5.1Marketing Mix

5.1.2 Why Use Marketing Mix?

It is extremely crucial to comprehend and strategically utilize Marketing Mix in today's competitive business environment. The marketing mix helps businesses to place their products right, increase the level of satisfaction of customers and lead to long-term success. Applying a marketing mix effectively allows us to match the company's products with market requirements and makes the product unique compared to other competitors, as well as to allocate resources effectively.

The marketing mix is important as it is a complete framework that businesses can use to organize their marketing strategies with those of the business objectives. It gives businesses a framework to evaluate, and if necessary, adjust the constituent parts of their marketing and decide the proportion of investment to expend on each of them such that it is aligned with customer expectations and the market. Differentiation is achieved by various elements of the marketing mix that contribute to shaping consumer experience and brand loyalty. Let's understand why using "marketing strategies with different key aspects of marketing.

Did You Know?

"Some experts argue that the traditional 4Ps framework is becoming obsolete, suggesting that it lacks practical applicability in today's dynamic marketing environment."

5.1.3 Strategic Role of Marketing Mix in Achieving Business Objectives

The marketing mix serves as a key tool for achieving strategic business objectives by aligning offerings with market demands. It allows organisations to align their offerings with requirements in the market, increase the brand value and use resources productively. All the factors making up the marketing mix can strategically be used for an organization to win customers and differentiate itself from other competitors. However, to sustain success in the long, all these four constituent components must work well together. The strategic role of the marketing mix includes the following key aspects.

1. Alignment with Business Vision: The marketing mix needs alignment with a company's mission and business goals to ensure marketing efforts remain cohesive. This helps marketing strategies support long-term growth, brand positioning, adaptation to changing market trends, including digital transformation, as well as addressing environmental concerns. It ensures marketing strategies contribute toward long-term growth, brand positioning, and evolving market trends: for example, digital transformation and environmental concerns.

Example: Tata Motors reflects its vision for sustainability and innovation through its marketing mix. Product offerings such as the Tata Nexon EV in electric vehicles help align with the growing environmental concerns.
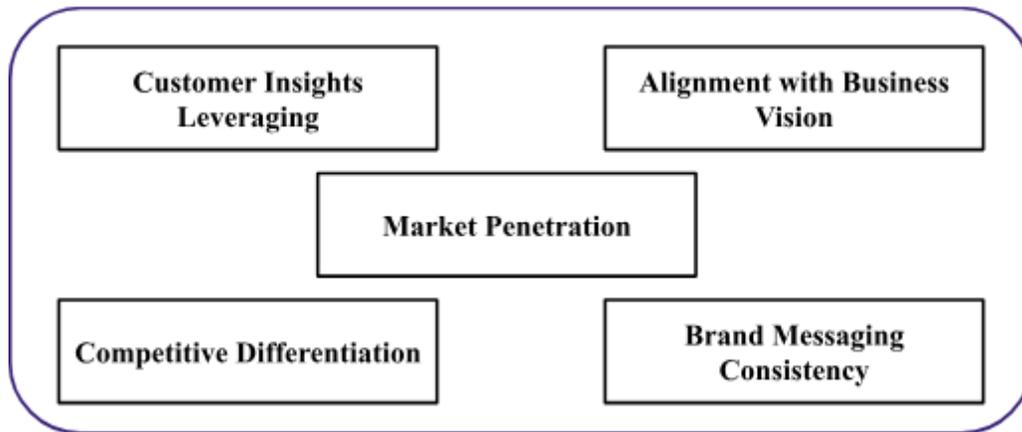

Fig 5.2 Strategic Role of Marketing Mix in Achieving Business Objectives

2. Brand Messaging Consistency: The integration of the marketing mix ensures all its elements are coordinated, ranging from product design, pricing, and distribution, to promotion, that collectively reinforces the brand message. The consistency of the message helps establish powerful brand recognition, trust, and emotional connection with the audience. When the coherence of a brand's message is maintained through its communication, it gives clear value and positioning perceptions to its customers. Regardless of whether it is communicated through packaging, customer interactions, or advertising, a coordinated marketing mix strengthens brand presence in a competitive market.

Example:Royal Enfield, a bike company, has been maintaining marketing themes that depict adventure and brotherhood. Its product has a classic look, pricing ranges of premium quality, distribution through brand outlets only, and its advertisement campaigns contain long road trips, giving it the feel of the choice of passionate riders.

3. Creating Competitive Differentiation through Marketing Mix: A marketing mix primarily attempts to carve out competitive differentiation. Businesses differentiate their products and services in a chaotic market with an effective mix. It allows brands to uniquely place themselves in the minds of customers and create long-term value and loyalty.

Example:HDFC Bank is differentiated, considering the competitive scenario of the banking industry, on the back of a robust digital banking ecosystem, well-personalized financial products, and premium customer

service. Its latest campaigns, like "Bank AapkiMutthi Mein," focus on accessibility and convenience, highlighting its leadership position in digital banking solutions.

4. Achieving Market Penetration: The marketing mix helps organizations increase their market share within an existing market by refining pricing strategies, launching region-specific promotions, and forming local partnerships. Optimizing distribution channels ensures wider product availability, enhancing brand accessibility and customer reach.

Example: Jumbotail (B2B E-commerce Platform) scalesup by making Kirana stores' procurement more digital, hence affordable pricing with local assortments and credit solutions thatmake seamless wholesale grocery shopping for small retailers.

5. Leverage Customer Insight: A deep consumer insight forms the backbone of a good marketing mix. Knowing changing customer preferences can make it possible to adapt the product features and messaging effectively. Analysis of behavioural data makes for sharp targeting and improves marketing ROI. Personalized engagement strategies make for loyalty and brand affinity among customers.

Example:Zepto (a quick commerce startup) adjusted its product line according to changing consumer needs, for ultra-fast grocery delivery, which adjusted inventory and delivery networks accordingly.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
MBASkool. (n.d.). Marketing mix of Coca-Cola - 4Ps | Coca-Cola marketing strategy. Retrieved March 18, 2025,

5.1.4 Integration of Customer-Centric Approach with Marketing Mix

Customer centricity is perhaps the most fundamental part of modern marketing strategy. A firm needs to regularly align the marketing mix to the needs, preferences, and behaviours of a customer. An appropriately aligned marketing mix for customer-centricity keeps all the transactions from designing to after-sales servicing as customer-centric. And thus, an increased level of satisfaction, deep brand loyalty, and sustainable revenues follow.

1. Customized Product Offerings: Today, customers want products that satisfy their specific needs and tastes. Companies use data analytics, AI-driven recommendations, and customer feedback to design tailored/customized offers. This is great for the user experience, as well as for brand loyalty and repeat business. Businesses can differentiate themselves in competitive markets if they focus on personalization.

*Example: Wakefit*is a company that specializes in sleep solutions with mattresses designed to the sleeping habit, body shape, and liking of the customer. According to user reviews and sleep research, the brand suggests recommendations for everyone so that clients can enjoy optimal sleep.

2. Responsive Pricing Strategy: Customer-based pricing makes sure that the price follows closely behind value perceptions, affordability, and market demand. Organizations use strategies like tiered strategies or discounts to attract more customers with certain requirements. Organizations can remain competitive and make their products available to a broader market through a responsive pricing strategy.

*Example: SwiggyDineout*is a dining reservation platform that offers dynamic discounts based on customer dining habits and restaurant occupancy. It scrutinizes customer appetite times and people's choice times to present individuals with bespoke promotions in favour of frequent use and client retention.

3. Customer-Focused Distribution Channels: Easy accessibility of products is the most important thing in customer satisfaction. To do this, businesses need to optimize their supply chain, adopt omnichannel distribution, and cut down on delivery times. Seamless distribution helps brands reach customers easily and provides them with a superior buying experience.

Example: A quick commerce start-up, *Zepto* promised delivery in less than 10 minutes and transformed the face of grocery delivery in India by allowing this possibility, that customers must have almost anything within no more than their very minute's choice time, making convenience their selling core value.

4. Engaging Promotional Campaign: Promotions should be designed to connect emotionally to engage the audience. Companies use storytelling, influencer marketing, and interactive content to create brand affinity. A well-crafted promotional strategy helps a company to stay in the minds of customers and hence remain relevant.

Example: Paperboat, a brand of Indian beverages and food products, uses nostalgia-driven marketing by associating its drinks with your childhood. It connects with the customer through heartwarming digital campaigns and packaging that tells a story, turning its beverages into an emotional experience rather than just a product.

5. After-Sales Service and Experience: The customer experience is not just limited to purchase but ends with after-sales service, support, and engagement. Companies that provide smooth after-sales support, through a good relationship with a customer, retain that customer more effectively. Effective after-sales service increases customer trust and positive word-of-mouth marketing.

Example: boAt, a consumer electronics brand, looks to enhance the post-purchase experience such as hassle-free warranty systems, quick replacements, and engaging customer support via WhatsApp. This proactive approach helps customers feel valued even after purchase and enhances long-term brand loyalty.

Customer-centric marketing mix is critical for any organization that wishes to have long-lasting relationships with the audience. Therefore, personalized products, appropriate pricing, effective distribution, stimulating promotion, and high-quality after-purchase support help organizations maintain sustainable success in an increasingly competitive market.

5.1.5 Adaptation of Marketing Mix for Global and Local Markets

The success of businesses in different markets requires adaptation of the marketing mix: Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. At the same time, they need to preserve their global brand identity. This will help companies reach more people and increase their competitive advantage by adopting strategies that cater to local cultural preferences, economic conditions, and consumer behaviours. This balance is between global consistency and localized customization.
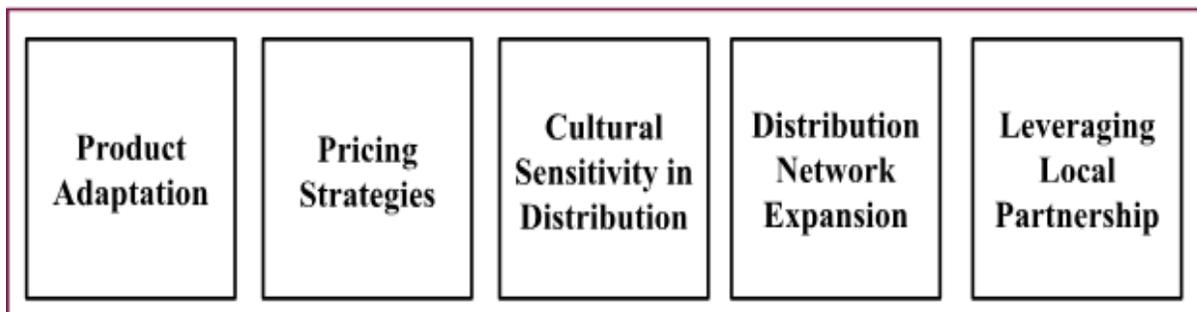

| Product Adaptation | Pricing Strategies | Cultural Sensitivity in Distribution | Distribution Network Expansion | Leveraging Local Partnership |

Fig 5.3 Adaptation of Marketing Mix for Global and Local Markets

1. Product Adaptation: Cultural adaptations of the products to the tastes, traditions, and regulations of those new markets also matter in seeking acceptance for international brands. For product adaptation ingredient, packaging, or feature changes are typically made to conform to regional preferences. This ensures that the resultant product is meaningful to regional consumers and while true to the global identity of the brand.

Example:KFC (Kentucky Fried Chicken) has catered to the Indian market with items such as Paneer Zinger, Chicken Keema Samosas, and Masala Krushers. The brand modifies the spiciness of chicken dishes and eliminates beef and pork to be aligned with the food preferences and religious sentiments of locals, thereby providing relevant and appetizing offerings that are characteristic of KFC, yet fit well within the global brand.

2. Pricing Strategies for Different Markets: Pricing should be changed according to the purchasing power, competition, and consumer expectations in different regions. Competitive pricing, discounts, and tiered models are used by businesses to address the various economic conditions while keeping profitability intact.

Example:IKEA China adopts a market-based pricing strategy. The company sells its products at much lower prices than in Western markets. This is possible because IKEA sources materials locally and optimize production costs, making its products more affordable for Chinese consumers.

3. Cultural Sensitivity in Distribution: Marketing campaigns should be culturally relevant, locally tailored, and linguistically appropriate. Brands that can localize their message are likely to connect with the audience and also help create an emotional bond. Tailoring distribution strategies to regional tastes guarantees greater acceptance and greater brand identification.

Example: Pepsi Thailand in its advertisements uses Thai pop stars and influencers to bring a local flavor to its campaigns. The brand makes sure it is through Thai humour and storytelling that the promotional effort reaches the local audience in a meaningful and engaging manner.

4. Distribution Network Expansion for Rural Areas: A well-structured distribution strategy that ensures the products are available at both urban and rural markets should be developed, considering the level of local infrastructure, consumer-buying patterns, and accessibility as a basis of an efficient supply chain.

Example: Nestle Pakistan has built its rural market by engaging several small local distributors to sell various products in unapproachable, remote areas, thus increasing market reach and allowing the company to support local enterprises.

5. Leveraging Local Partnerships: Local businesses, celebrities, and influencers can provide a platform for global brands to gain credibility and market relevance. Brand visibility will be enhanced along with deeper penetration among local consumers.

Example: H&M South Korea partnered with K-pop artists to create clothing lines that reflected Korean street fashion trends. This alignment of offerings helped H&M strengthen its appeal to young consumers.

In this way, companies can easily expand their market share and build customer loyalty through modification of products, pricing, promotions, distribution, and partnerships according to the preferences of local markets. Achieving long-term success in various markets requires global consistency with local customization.

Knowledge Check 1

Choose the correct option:

1. What of the following would be an instance of product adaptation in international markets?

   A) Having identical versions of all product offerings throughout the world with no changes.

   B) Altering product ingredients, packaging, or features to match local tastes.

   C) Priced consistently across all worldwide markets.

   D) Adopting only electronic media for advertising their products.

2. Why are firms altering price strategies in varying markets?

   A) In order to keep prices at the same level in each region.

   B) To match the local purchasing power, competition, and economic conditions.

   C) To not give discounts or tiered pricing strategies.

   D) To make all customers pay a premium price for exclusivity.

3. How do global brands benefit from working through local partnerships?

   A) It suppresses the necessity for product adaptation.

   B) It diminishes the significance of distribution channels.

   C) It builds brand authenticity and market resonance with local customers.

   D) It enables firms to entirely substitute their international identity with local branding.

5.1.6 Data-Driven Decision-Making in Marketing Mix

Big data and analytics transform the way companieshandle data to boost their marketing Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. Analytics lets a company decide, identify, and optimize the right price, and enhance customer

engagement in the right space. Data-driven marketing allows organizations to be quick and agile in responding to current market trends or consumer needs so that efficiency and profitability are realized.

Fig 5.4Data-Driven Decision-Making in Marketing Mix

1. Personalized Marketing with Big Data Analytics: Data analytics assists in optimizing supply chains, reducing delivery time, and managing inventory more effectively. The company can develop specific marketing campaigns with higher conversion rates and loyalty based on purchase history, browsing behaviour, and engagement patterns. Personalization builds stronger relationships between brands and consumers, making marketing more effective.

Example: Reliance Retail's online fashion and lifestyle brand, *AJIO*, uses big data analytics to give its customers highly personalized shopping experiences. It makes recommendations of clothing and accessories according to the customer's tastes based on their browsing behaviour, purchase history, and preferences. A personalized approach in this manner would increase customer engagement, conversion, and brand loyalty in the highly competitive e-commerce market.

2. Price Optimization using Customer Behavior Analysis: Data enables businesses to refine their pricing models to understand demand shifts, competitor prices, and willingness to pay. Dynamic pricing will maximize

profitability without losing the attractiveness of products for various consumer groups. Businesses can also use predictive analytics to forecast price-sensitive periods and adjust.

Example: MakeMyTrip, an online travel booking platform, uses real-time analytics for hotel and flight price optimization. Having real-time analytics on peak travel periods, customer searches, and booking behaviour, the site dynamically lowers prices in low-demand times and revenue maximises in high-demand periods.

3. Product Quality Enhancement Using Customer Feedback: From customer feedback analysis, companies can improve the quality of their products, enhance customer experience, and refine marketing strategies. With sentiment analysis on online reviews and surveys, companies can pinpoint pain areas to make data-driven changes. Addressing customer complaints proactively builds trust and customer loyalty.

Example: Bajaj Finserv collects customer insights through surveys and reviews to improve its financial products and services. Feedback on loan processing time, interest rates, and other customer service matters through customer comments allows the company to optimize these aspects. Refining products, streamlining processes, and improving overall customer experience will continue to foster trust and loyalty in Bajaj Finserv's financial services.

4. Demographic Targeted Promotions: Segmentation of customers by demographics, behavior, and preferences can be a hyper-targeted promotion for any business. Companies can craft their marketing strategy to specific segments of the audience, which enhances engagement and boosts conversion rates. Data-driven segmentation allows companies to re-allocate more efficiently the marketing budget.

Example: UrbanClap (Urban Company) segments audiences by location, preferences, and demographics utilizing customer information. The service executes targeted promotions providing personalized home services by leveraging metrics such as age and service history, enhancing engagement and conversions and maximizing marketing expenditure.

5. Leveraging Data Insights for Channel Optimization: Data analytics also assists in optimizing supply chains, minimizing delivery time, and optimizing inventory. Demand patterns in a particular region being understood ensure the product is available precisely where it is required, with enhanced customer satisfaction and lower logistics costs.

Example: Flipkart employs data analytics to streamline its supply chain and distribution network. Based on regional patterns of demand, the company ensures that products are made available in the appropriate locations

and minimizes delivery time and logistics costs. Data assists Flipkart in optimizing inventory management and customer satisfaction during peak shopping seasons.

Data-driven decision-making is one of the aspects through which modern businesses can refine their marketing mix and remain competitive. Improved personalization, optimization of pricing, customer feedback, targeted promotion, and distribution efficiency make way for good customer experiences, among other revenue maximization and strength of market position. Integration of the above data insights into one's marketing strategies develops agility and responsiveness toward the ever-changing marketplace.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. How does big data analytics help businesses in personalized marketing?

    A) By increasing product manufacturing speed

    B) By understanding customer preferences and delivering tailored experiences

    C) By reducing the number of available product choices

2. What is the primary benefit of using real-time data analytics for price optimization?

    A) It allows businesses to adjust prices dynamically based on demand and competition

    B) It ensures all products are sold at a fixed price regardless of market conditions

    C) It eliminates the need for competitor price analysis

3. Why is customer feedback analysis important for businesses?

    A) It helps in identifying pain points and improving products/services

    B) It replaces the need for market research

    C) It reduces the number of customer complaints without taking any action

5.2 Understanding Products and Their Classifications

5.2.1 What is a Product?

A product is any good, service, or idea presented to a market to meet consumer wants and needs. It may be tangible (physical products such as electronics, apparel, or food) or intangible (services such as banking, education, or entertainment). Products are the core of marketing since they determine how companies generate

value and distinguish themselves from others. A good product strategy enhances brand awareness, customer loyalty, and long-term market success.

Products also change over time to suit shifting consumer tastes and technological development. Firms invest in product development, brand building, and product quality enhancement to be competitive. Regardless of whether a product is an essential item or a luxury product, its success relies on the extent to which it matches consumer expectations, market conditions, and competition. Firms also have to pay attention to packaging, price, and promotion strategies to increase product attractiveness and encourage sales.

5.2.2 Products, Services, and Experiences

Consumers engage with companies through products, services, and experiences, each providing distinct value. While products are tangible goods, services are centred on intangible benefits, and experiences foster emotional connections. This awareness aids companies in personalizing their marketing and customer interaction strategy.

1. Products: These are tangible items that can be touched, felt, and bought; they satisfy certain needs and wants. Products are divided into durable goods (long-term, such as cars and appliances) and non-durable goods (consumables, such as food and toiletries).
Example: A smartphone is a durable product, while a soda bottle is a non-durable product.

2. Services: Immaterial products that offer value by delivering benefits rather than manufacturing physical goods; they demand immediate contact between consumers and providers. Services can't be kept and are usually customized to suit customers' specifications.
Example: A salon haircut or financial advisory service by a bank.

3. Experiences: These transcend products and services by establishing emotional or memorable interactions with consumers; they drive customer satisfaction and brand loyalty. Firms design differentiated experiences to engage more intensely and stand out.
Example: A visit to a theme park, like Disneyland, provides an engaging entertainment experience.

5.2.3 Levels of Product

A product has several levels that determine its overall value and affect consumer perception. Knowledge of these levels assists companies in planning their product development, marketing, and differentiation accordingly. Each level adds to the overall customer experience and affects purchasing decisions. By providing unique value at each level, companies can develop stronger customer relationships and competitive edges.

1. Core Product: This is the essential need or benefit the product addresses; it's the key reason a customer purchases a product. It doesn't change between brands or across different variations of a product. Unless a product answers a core need, it will not be able to win and retain customers. Companies need to make sure that their core product aligns with what the market requires and consumer expectations.

Example: The core product of a smartphone is communication, allowing individuals to stay connected through calls, messages, and the internet.

2. Actual Product: This encompasses physical characteristics like design, features, quality, branding, and packaging that determine a product's market presence. Here, firms distinguish themselves using product innovation, good looks, and branding policies. An effectively developed actual product signals brand recognition, customer satisfaction, and competitive stance.

Example: The *iPhone* differentiates itself through its minimalist design, sophisticated camera technology, and proprietary iOS ecosystem, which makes it a high-end product in the smartphone market.

3. Augmented Product: This refers to additional value or services that supplement the customer experience and offer more than the product alone. They could be in the form of after-sales support, extended warranty, loyalty programs, or tailored customer service. Good augmentation strategies assist companies in developing brand loyalty and long-term relationships with customers.

Example: Samsung enhances its product offering by providing extended warranties, trade-in programs, and 24/7 customer service, ensuring customer satisfaction and brand reliability.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Clickworker GmbH. (n.d.). Categorization of products – Case study. Clickworker.
.

5.2.4 Product and Service Classifications

Products and services are categorized by their function, target market, and purchasing pattern. This segmentation enables companies to create successful marketing campaigns, formulate pricing strategies, and determine the distribution channels as per the customers' needs. Companies can establish their products unique, reach specific market segments, and increase the satisfaction of consumers by knowing the categories. Suitable classification also benefits inventory management, branding, and promotion planning.

1. Consumer Goods: These are goods purchased by consumers for individual consumption, typically categorized as convenience, shopping, special, and unsought goods. All of these categories vary in purchase frequency, price sensitivity, and consumer decision-making behaviour. Firms must analyze the behaviour of consumers meticulously in order to position such products effectively and increase their demand in the market. Advertising, packaging, and availability play crucial roles in stimulating demand.

Example: Soft beverages like ***Coca-Cola*** are convenience goods that consumers purchase on a regular basis with minimal effort, and ***Rolex*** watches are specialty goods procured on grounds of exclusivity, brand fame, and large perceived value.

2. Industrial Products: These are items bought by businesses for use in manufacturing, operations, or resale. They include raw materials, equipment, machinery, and parts used in manufacturing or service operations. Unlike consumer products, industrial purchasing is based on functionality, efficiency, and return on investment. Purchasers in this category prioritise long-term reliability, supplier relationships, and cost-effectiveness.

*Example: **Intel*** chips are industrial materials utilized by computer and laptop companies to boost computer performance, an indication of how critical good materials are in the technology sector.

3. Services: These are non-physical products that impart value through experience, labor, or expertise. Services cannot be stored or possessed, and they demand direct interaction between the producer and the consumer. Service quality, responsiveness, and individualization play a significant role in influencing customer satisfaction and loyalty. Effective service companies emphasize efficiency, convenience, and trust establishment to establish a competitive advantage.

*Example: **Uber*** provides transportation services on a digital platform that simply links drivers with passengers, offering convenience, cost efficiency, and a substitute for conventional taxis.

Category	Definition	Key Characteristics	Example
Consumer Products	Goods purchased by individuals for personal use.	Includes convenience, shopping, speciality, and unsought products. Purchase frequency and brand perception influence buying behaviour.	Soft drinks like ***Coca-Cola*** (convenience), ***Rolex*** watches (speciality*)*
Industrial Products	Goods purchased by businesses for production, operations, or resale.	Includes raw materials, equipment, and supplies. Decisions are based on functionality, efficiency, and cost-effectiveness.	Intel processors used in laptops and PCs
Services	Intangible offerings that provide value through expertise, labour, or experiences.	Cannot be stored, requires direct customer interaction, and relies on service quality and personalization.	Uber's ride-hailing services connecting drivers and passengers

Activity: Strategic Analysis of Employee Role in Service Marketing

Choose a prominent service-based organization and perform an in-depth analys___ its employees shape customer experience and brand image. Analyze important factors like training initiatives, customer interaction strategies, and service customization. Assess how employee conduct affects customer satisfaction, retention, and brand loyalty. Determine areas of service gaps and suggest strategic recommendations for improving employee performance, e.g., leadership development, reward schemes, or technology for customer interaction. Offer a critical evaluation of how these enhancements can generate competitive edge in the service sector.

5.3 Product Strategy and Development

5.3.1 New Product Development Strategy

A New Product Development (NPD) Strategy is a systematic method through which organizations bring new products to the marketplace. It is concerned with understanding customer requirements, developing innovative solutions, and commercial feasibility. A well-executed NPD strategy enables companies to remain competitive, achieve growth, and remain contemporary in environments with evolving markets. Through trend analysis,

strategic resource allocation, and risk minimization, companies can develop products in sync with the aspirations of consumers and future organizational objectives.

Major Components of New Product Development Strategy

1. Identifying Market Opportunities: Finding market opportunities is the first step to developing a successful new product. Companies conduct extensive market research to identify consumer demand, analyze competitors, and watch industry trends. This enables them to capture niches and offer solutions with genuine demand. Companies that foresee opportunities can capitalize on shifts in customer behaviour and technology.

For example, Netflix moved from DVD rentals to streaming after they noticed the increasing consumer demand for digital content.

2. Alignment to Business Goals: Aligning NPD to business goals ensures that innovation activities are oriented towards the firm's mission. Businesses must determine whether their strategy is cost leadership, differentiation, or market development. By aligning their endeavours this way, they can utilize resources and be consistent with their brand.

For example, Tesla aligns its NPD strategy with sustainability by developing electric vehicles and renewable energy systems, prioritizing innovation over traditional automotive manufacturing

3. Customer-Focused Approach: Creating products that fulfil consumer needs requires a customer-focused approach. Organizations use surveys, focus groups, and social media to gain feedback from consumers in an attempt to discern pain points and trends. Placing the customer first ensures the greatest potential for adoption as well as long-term success.

For example, Procter & Gamble develops its personal care brands with extensive consumer research behind them, and hence these are tied even more intensely to consumers' own lives.

4. Technological Integration and Innovation: Innovation and technological integration are the key drivers of product development success. Firms invest in research and development (R&D), partner with technology firms, and invest in new technologies in a bid to enhance their products. Continuous innovation enables firms to maintain stability and deliver enhanced value to customers.

For example, Apple incorporates features like Face ID and the A-series processors, which enhance the performance and security of the iPhone immensely.

5. Feasibility Study and Risk Management: Risk management and feasibility analysis play a critical role in limiting risks related to new product introductions. Corporations embark on feasibility tests, prototype tests, and planning in scenarios that determine technical risks, financial risks, and risks about market penetration before huge investments in product development. By doing this, they make educated decisions while keeping themselves out of costly-to-redress failure modes.

For example, Pharmaceutical firms conduct large-scale clinical trials before the introduction of new drugs to establish safety, efficacy, and regulatory compliance.

6. Competitive Differentiation: A product must differentiate itself in a competitive market, and for that, competitive differentiation is required. It requires businesses to notice aspects such as design, brand, functionality, or user experience to come up with a different value proposition. Effective differentiation not only gets customers' attention but also maximizes brand loyalty.

For example, Dyson has segmented itself in the home appliances market by designing vacuum cleaners with powerful suction technology and stylish looks that appeal to high-end buyers.

7. Pricing and Positioning Strategies: Developing pricing and positioning strategies is also crucial for the determination of a market image to be communicated by a product. Companies need to formulate pricing strategies—premium, penetration, or competitive pricing—based on demand in the market and customers' willingness to pay. Positioning is selecting a product's unique value proposition and placing it consistently with consumers' image.

For example, Starbucks was able to position itself as a premium coffee company, which fetched a premium price owing to its superior quality, brand strength, and customer experience.

8. Speed-to-Market and Agile Development: Speed-to-market and agile development allow companies to bring new products to market quickly and into early adopter markets before the competition. Organisations can, through the application of agile development methods, constantly improve their products incrementally by successive iterations, feedback, and quick prototyping. High-velocity development methodology allows them to remain connected with competition in competitive industries.

For example*, Microsoft* uses an agile software development methodology, which allows the company to make regular updates and enhancements based on feedback from users.

9. Effective Go-to-Market (GTM) Strategy: An effective go-to-market (GTM) strategy is needed for an effective product launch. This means selecting the proper distribution channels, generating brand awareness, and targeting potential consumers with marketing campaigns. An effective GTM strategy ensures that the product reaches the right audience and gains market traction.

For example, Samsung generates massive excitement around its phone launches by organizing world events, utilizing social media campaigns, and offering pre-order rewards to prompt advance purchases.

10. Continuous Monitoring and Improvement: Continuous monitoring and tweaking allow firms to get their products right after they have been launched. Enables key performance indicators (KPIs), consumer feedback, and market response enabling firms to make the necessary changes. This makes products competitive and keeps customers' needs met.

For example, Google continually rolls out its Pixel phones based on feedback from the users to improve camera functionality and software tuning in order to keep pace with competitors.

A New Product Development Strategy is most important for business firms to drive innovation, stay competitive, and meet evolving customer demands. It involves performing market research, getting to know the customers, technological innovation, and risk management to ensure successful new product launches. Through continuous strategy refinement, matching the pace of industry trends, and customer orientation, business firms can build sustainable growth, strengthen their brand, and boost profitability in a rapidly changing business environment.

Did You Know?

"Coca-Cola, oncerenowned for its soft drinks, diversified its portfolio by creatingmorethan 500 brands, including water, coffee, and plant-based drinks, to addressshifting consumer tastes."

5.3.2 The New Product Development Process

New Product Development (NPD) is a systematic process that companies use to create, design, and market new products. It involves various stages, from idea generation through commercialization, ensuring that companies come up with products that meet the needs of customers and gain market success. The process helps to minimize risks, optimize resources, and achieve a strategic product-market fit. A successful NPD process boosts innovation and provides companies with a competitive edge.

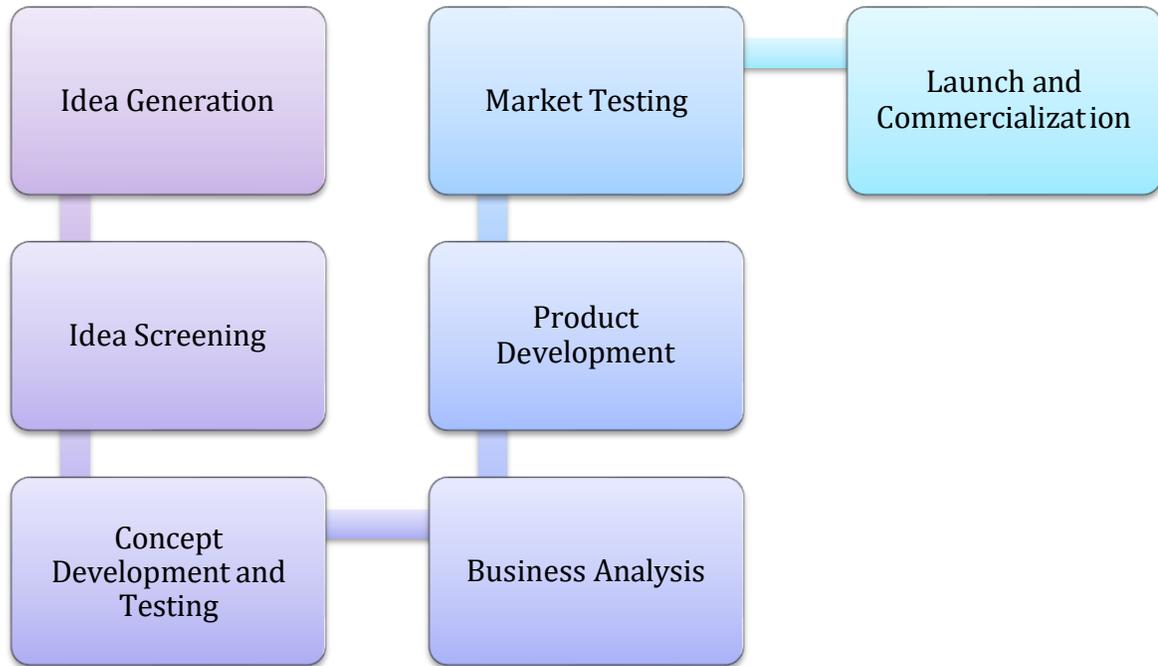**Phases of the New Product Development Process**

Fig 5.5 Stages of the New Product Development Process

1. Idea Generation: Idea generation is the first phase of new product development where firms search for innovative ideas based on market trends, customer needs, technological trends, and competitor analysis. Firms utilize various sources for idea generation, including customer feedback, brainstorming sessions, R&D, and external collaboration, R&D, and external collaborations. A strong idea-generation process will help firms have a list of potential product ideas to work on.

2. Idea Screening: Once ideas are generated, firms conduct idea screening to ascertain their feasibility, potential for profitability and alignment with firm goals. Screening allows firms to eliminate unrealistic or unfeasible ideas and focus on ideas that have the highest chances of success. Screening involves testing technical and financial viability, as well as market demand.

3. Concept Development and Testing: This stage involves the chosen ideas being converted into product concepts that outline their features, benefits, as well as target markets. Businesses come up with concept

statements and pilot-test them with prospective buyers to gather feedback. It helps refine the product idea and ensure that it complies with consumer needs.

4. Business Analysis: The cost and operational feasibility of the product are tested in the business analysis phase. Companies analyze costs, revenue projections, break-even points, and potential return on investment (ROI). This phase saves resources and ensures that the business remains in line with objectives. An effective business analysis prevents costly failure and provides an idea regarding price strategies, production costs, and product demand.

5. Product Development: Once a concept is approved, the process of product development begins. This process involves designing, engineering, prototyping, and testing to create a functional product. Companies invest in R&D and collaborate with suppliers to ensure quality and efficiency. The product goes through various iterations before it is complete.

6. Market Testing: Market testing includes introducing the product on a limited basis to acquire feedback in the real world. Companies launch test markets, pilots, or beta versions to solicit customer reaction, and experiment with price efficiency, and channels of distribution. The technique is beneficial to identify areas where it needs improvement and assist in staging a more successful full-scale rollout.

7. Launch and Commercialization: Commercialization is the final step wherein the product is officially launched in the market. It involves mass production, distribution, promotion campaigns, and sales promotion. Go-to-market strategies are employed by companies, whereby the product reaches the right customers through the most appropriate channel. A successful launch maximizes the visibility of the product and its acceptance by the customer.

The New Product Development Process is a systematic process that guides companies from idea generation through to market introduction. Each step—idea generation, screening, concept testing, business analysis, development, market testing, and commercialization—is critical to the success of a new product. By following a formal NPD process, companies can innovate with efficiency, minimize risks, and bring to market products responsive to customers' needs. This plan not only makes companies more profitable but also allows them to build long-term brand leadership and industry dominance.

5.3.3 Product Life-Cycle Strategies

Strategic planning and execution of a product at different stages of its life cycle will guarantee consistent growth and profitability. The product life cycle has five stages: Introduction, Growth, Maturity, Decline, and Extension. Each stage demands unique marketing, product development, and operations strategies. The company needs to suit its strategy at each stage to achieve robust performance and realize the maximum potential market.
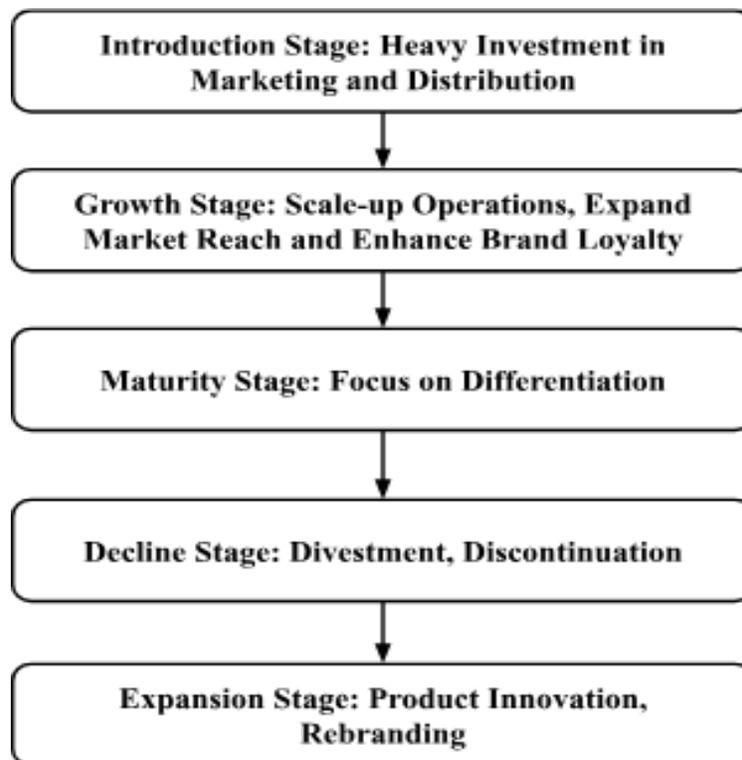

Fig 5.6 Strategies for Managing Each Stage

1. Introduction Stage: Heavy Investment in Marketing and Distribution

In the introduction stage, firms focus on creating product awareness and establishing its presence in the market.. This will require significant investment in marketing, distribution, and promotion to attract early adopters, besides branding, which is intended to establish a sound base for the product to expand and occupy more market space.

Example: Licious, an Indian fresh meat and seafood brand, invested heavily in quality assurance, cold chain logistics, and sharp digital marketing to launch its brand. By offering doorstep delivery of hygienic, farm-sourced meat and strategic online promotions, Licious created demand in a previously unorganized industry.

2. Growth Stage: Scale-up Operations, Expand Market Reach and Enhance Brand Loyalty

In the Growth Stage, the company's focus is shifted to scaling operations and market reach expansion. It also works to win customer loyalty by enhancing the value proposition and improving the customer experience. The investments go into increasing production capacity and distribution channels and strengthening brand presence to derive larger market shares.

Example: Swiggy scaled up its operations effectively during the Growth Stage by increasing its delivery network, and restaurant partnerships, and introducing new features including Swiggy Pop and Swiggy Genie. These innovations assisted in the rapid growth of the company and sustained a happy loyal customer base in India's hyper-competitive food delivery space.

3. Maturity Stage: Focus on Differentiation, Cost Reduction, and Sustaining Market Share

At this stage, known as the Maturity Stage, growth slows while competition heightens as the product gains wide acceptance in the marketplace. To hold onto market share and profitability, companies differentiate products through improvements to the product itself, pricing strategy, and reinforcing the brand image. They cut costs to streamline operations while retaining price competitiveness.

Example:Samsung's Galaxy series has remained in the maturity stage of the smartphone market, continuously innovating with foldable screens and advanced cameras to stay competitive. Innovating features by incorporating fold screens and advanced cameras and pricing has kept Samsung still in the same game as one of the heavy giants, while competing with players like Apple, Xiaomi, or other giants at a time, keeping the pricing competitive.

4. Decline Stage: Divestment, Discontinuation, or Finding Niche Opportunities

"During the decline stage, product sales begin to drop due to market saturation, technological obsolescence, or changing consumer preferences. The firm could consider divestment of the product, it could be stopped, or niches may be sought for continuation. The product can also be repositioned to meet specific market requirements or repurposed for other uses.

Example:Yahoo!'s internet service business declined over time as competitors like Google and Facebook became leading players in that space. Later, Yahoo! sold off its core business to Verizon and transitioned into narrower areas of activities such as digital media and advertisement.

5. Extension Stage: Product Innovation, Rebranding, or Targeting a New Market

In the extension stage, business organizations use a set of strategies like product innovation, rebranding, or discovering new markets to refresh a product's life cycle. These strategies try to get consumer interest once again and increase the product's lifecycle. It could be entering a new geography with the product or introducing it in the marketplace with new features.

Example: PepsiCo reinvented Mountain Dew by creating newer flavors and packaging formats that appeal more to a younger and more adventurous consumer. More importantly, the brand came up with limited-edition variants, and the company generated higher brand engagement by conducting social media contests that eventually rejuvenated the brand and made it stay fresh and relevant in a saturated market.

Each stage of the product life cycle needs a customized approach for long-term success. It is through effective management of each stage that companies will maximize the potential of their products and drive sustainable growth in competitive markets.

> **Knowledge Check 3**
>
> **Fill in the blanks:**
> 1. At the _____ phase, firms spend a lot on marketing and distribution to build product awareness and capture early adopters. [Introduction/Growth]
> 2. At the _____ phase, firms concentrate on expanding operations, increasing market coverage, and building brand loyalty. [Growth/Maturity]
> 3. The _____ phase is characterized by stiff competition, calling for differentiation, cost cutting, and measures to maintain market share. [Maturity/Decline]

5.3.4 Real-Life Contextual Review and Applications

Contextual Review: *Nokia's* Strategic Shifts Across the Product Lifecycle

Introduction

*Nokia*is the best example of how companies handle the Product Life Cycle (PLC). From beinga market leader in the early 2000s to thedrastic decline when the smartphonerevolutionhit, Nokia showshowinnovation, strategic adaptation, and market responsiveness areessentialtomanaging the product life cycle.

Background

"Founded in 1865 as a pulp and paper company, Nokia gradually transitioned into telecommunications. In the late 1990s and early 2000s, it became the world's largest mobile device manufacturer, producing iconic models such as the Nokia 3310 and the N-Series cell phones.Over time, as smartphones like Apple's iPhone and Android devices emerged, Nokia lost its competitive edge and experienced a significant decline.

Main Issues in *Nokia's* Product Lifecycle Management

- **Failure to adapt to the smartphone revolution:** Apple and Samsung went ahead with touch-screen-based smartphones, whereas Nokia continued using the Symbian OS which was outdated and not as user-friendly as iOS and Android.
- **Lack of Strong App Ecosystem:** The new smartphones were heavily dependent on applications, but Nokia's ecosystem lacked developer support, which had been a major attraction for its consumers.
- **Late Entry into the Market:** Nokia's decision to enter the market in 2011 with Microsoft's Windows Phone OS came too late, as Android and iOS had already dominated the industry.
- **Unable to Distinguish:** Unlike its competitors, which utilized either premium innovation (Apple) or affordability (Samsung and Chinese brands) as their particular strong points, Nokia failed to distinguish its competitive edge.

Across the PLC: Strategies and Business Changes

1. **Growth and Maturity Stage: Internationalization & Market Dominance:** While Nokia quickly entered or advanced in all emerging markets, it also provided a variety of feature phones and early smartphones. Their powerful brand, long-lasting designs, and low prices helped the company to penetrate major global market share.
2. **Decline Stage: Strategic Alliance with Microsoft:** To regain its lost position, Nokia formed a partnership with Microsoft in 2011 and started using Windows Phone OS in its Lumia range. However, it could not regain its market position as the adoption of Windows Phones by consumers was low.

3. **Divestment: Sale of Mobile Division:** Nokia sold its mobile division to Microsoft for a sum of $7.2 billion in 2014 and discontinued its handsets business to get back into the telecom infrastructure business and 5G technology.

Outcome and Impact

- Microsoft's buyout did not revive Lumia, and later, Windows Phones were discontinued.
- Nokia successfully re-entered the mobile market in 2017 through HMD Global, and launched Android-based smartphones, while further strengthening 5G as well as networking solutions.
- From a product focus to a technology focus, it was able to gain long-term growth in terms of telecom infrastructure and software solutions.

Conclusion

The Nokia story reflects how even leaders in the marketplace can decline in case they cannot innovate and update. Aside from the declining smartphone business by focusing on the telecommunication aspect, Nokia itself became a sustainable, future-based company. Thus, this is an example where timely decision-making, technological adjustment, and strategic reinvention come into play regarding the management of a product life cycle.

5.4 Summary

- ❖ The marketing mix is crucial in ensuring that products are aligned with market needs, competitive differentiation, and customer satisfaction.
- ❖ A good product life cycle strategy assists firms in handling various phases efficiently, ranging from introduction to decline and potential extension.
- ❖ New product development is systematic, involving idea generation, screening, testing, and commercialization for success.
- ❖ Long-term business objectives are served by strategic marketing mix decisions, which maximize pricing, promotion, distribution, and product placement.
- ❖ Customer-driven marketing emphasizes responsiveness, personalization, and engagement to drive customer loyalty and retention.

- Analytics-driven strategies improve decision-making through the use of data, allowing businesses to maximize pricing, promotions, and distribution efficiency.

- To be successful at adapting in the marketplace, firms must walk the line between worldwide uniformity and local customizing of products and brandings.

- Companies should continuously innovate and improve their plans to remain relevant in dynamic and competitive markets.

- The blending of technology-based insights and digital marketing is significant in optimizing consumer experiences and involvement.

- Those companies that do not change to meet evolving consumer tastes and technological trends stand to lose business and their competitive edge.

5.5 Key Terms

1. **Marketing Mix (Strategy):** An entrepreneurial strategy that integrates product, price, place, and promotion to effectively attract and retain customers. It provides a well-balanced strategy to address market needs and induce sales

2. **Product Life Cycle (Concept):** A concept that explains the various phases a product passes through: introduction, growth, maturity, decline, and potential extension. It assists businesses in planning marketing, pricing, and distribution strategies accordingly.

3. **New Product Development (Process):** A methodical process of idea generation, screening, testing, and commercialization to get new products to market. It reduces risks and maximizes the likelihood of product success.

4. **Customer-Centric Marketing (Strategy):** A marketing strategy that revolves around knowing and satisfying customer needs through customized interaction and product propositions. It drives customer satisfaction, loyalty, and sustainable business growth.

5. **Data-Driven Strategies (Approach):** Business actions and marketing decisions are made based on analytics, customer insights, and market trends. It optimizes pricing, promotions, and resource utilization for improved performance.

6. **Market Adaptation (Strategy):** A Process of adjusting marketing strategies, product characteristics, and branding to fit various cultural, economic, and regional environments. It provides relevance and acceptability in varied markets.

7. **Competitive Advantage (Concept):** A distinct advantage or ability that enables an organization to surpass competitors. It can be secured with innovation, cost leadership, better quality, or rich brand positioning.

5.6 Descriptive Questions

1. What are the most significant components of the marketing mix and how do they affect consumer response under various market situations?
2. How does the life cycle of the product affect the marketing and price strategies of a company, and what are the challenges at every stage?
3. What are the fundamental phases of new product development and why is every phase important to guarantee product success in the market?
4. Why is customer-focused marketing critical to brand loyalty and business success, and how can businesses use it effectively?
5. How do data-driven marketing efforts assist companies in making effective marketing decisions, and which tools are most frequently used for analysis?
6. Why is market adaptation crucial to businesses entering new markets, and which factors need to be taken into account when localizing?
7. How can firms build and maintain a competitive edge in a saturated market, and what is the role of innovation in doing so?

5.7 References

1. "Marketing Management" by Philip Kotler and Kevin Lane Keller
2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by Philip Kotler, HermawanKartajaya, and Iwan Setiawan
3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by Michael Porter
4. Consumer Behaviour by Schiffman 12th Edition
5. Marketing Warfare by Jack Trout and Al Ries
6. "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by Michael R. Solomon
7. https://www.forbes.com/sites/forbescontentmarketing/2024/01/18/whats-in-and-whats-out-in-marketing-2024/?utm_source

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1. B) Adjusting product ingredients, packaging, or features to meet regional preferences.

2. B) To align with local purchasing power, competition, and economic conditions.

3. C) It enhances brand credibility and market relevance among local consumers.

Knowledge Check 2

1: B) By understanding customer preferences and delivering tailored experiences

2: A) It allows businesses to adjust prices dynamically based on demand and competition

3: A) It helps in identifying pain points and improving products/services

Knowledge Check 3

1. Introduction

2. Growth

3. Maturity

5.8 Case Study

Leveraging the Marketing Mix for Market Leadership

A well-formulated marketing mix strategy gives companies an edge in competition as the product, price, place, and promotion elements are all properly aligned. The four elements combined allow a company to fulfil different customer needs and ensure sustainable growth. Amul, India's largest dairy brand, has understood the 4Ps of marketing and is now dominating the dairy market. This case study discusses how Amul strategically implements the marketing mix to maintain leadership in its industry, expand product offerings, and enhance market positions.

Background

Amul, the brand name of Anand Milk Union Limited, was launched in 1946 and by initiating the White Revolution worked miracles for India, making India the world's largest milk producer. As a cooperative brand, Amul promises to provide products with quality and affordability. The brands Mother Dairy, Nestlé, and Britannia are its direct competitors. Hence, the company needs to carry out innovative activities in product offerings, pricing models, distribution models, and marketing strategies to be ahead of others.

Problem 1: Product Strategy and Innovation

Amul functions in a competitive FMCG and dairy sector that has evolved consumer preferences, where innovation in product offerings and quality differentiation are expected. Competitors launched flavored milk, premium cheese, and organic dairy, while Amul needed to expand its portfolio to sustain its market leadership.

Solution:

- Expanded beyond basic products of dairy into cheese, chocolates, ice creams, and probiotic drinks to cater to new consumer demands.
- Amul Kool (flavored milk) and Amul Ice Cream products were launched targeting the growing need for ready-to-consume dairy beverages.
- Emphasized the organic and healthy segments with the introduction of lactose-free milk and protein-enriched dairy products.

Problem 2: Pricing Strategy for Mass Appeal

Pricing plays an important role in Amul's marketing mix since it has to be both competitive enough and affordable for consumers and profitable for the farmers. Competitors, Nestlé and Britannia, set the price of premium dairy at much higher price levels, which was going to be a challenge for Amul.

Solution:

- Used the value-based price strategy, producing high-quality products at reasonable prices to remain attractive to all walks of life in society.
- They utilized economies of scale and the cooperative model to maintain low procurement costs and pass the cost benefits to the consumers.
- Introduced the concept of differential pricing to high-value products such as Amul Gold (high-fat milk) and Amul Dark Chocolate for niche markets.

Problem 3: Challenges in Distribution and Supply Chain

Amul's distribution network has been a significant factor in the delivery of fresh dairy products to urban and rural markets. As demand increased, competitors like Mother Dairy expanded their supply chain efficiency, making it crucial for Amul to strengthen its distribution strategy.

Solution:

- Developed a strong cold chain logistics system which ensured the dairy products were delivered on time without much spoilage.
- Expanded retail touchpoints through 50+ sales offices, 10,000+ distributors, and over a million retailers, making Amul products widely available.
- Strengthened its presence in tier-2 and tier-3 cities through small vendors, cooperative societies, and rural distribution channels.

Problem 4: Promotional and Branding Strategies

Amul's promotional strategy has been one of the key success factors for its iconic brand presence. When the competitors began launching aggressive advertisement campaigns, Amul had to maintain consistent and impactful marketing.

Solution:

- Introduced the Amul Girl mascot with its witty and topical advertisements that would ensure high brand recall.
- Focused on mass media advertising across television, print, and digital media while using social media campaigns.
- Promoted "The Taste of India" as a nationalistic and emotionally appealing brand slogan that promoted consumer trust.

Reflective Questions

1. How does Amul's marketing mix contribute to its dominance in the dairy sector?
2. What other marketing initiatives could Amul offer for the premium and organic dairy lines?
3. How can the organisation further strengthen its whole distribution network, combating newer dairy startups?

Conclusion

The result of these successes is the demonstration of the power of the effective marketing mix strategy in developing the market leader brand. The brand has adhered to all the above points which establishes diversification in catering to different segments of consumers. Also, Amul's brand can adapt towards changing market trends, ensuring the affordability and quality it offers in dairy products. Amul needs to continue innovating, enter into premium segments, and leverage digital marketing for its future expansion so that it continues to grow

Unit 6: Pricing Strategies

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will Identify the strategic role of pricing in profitability and positioning in the market.
2. Learners will identify different price strategies and how they influence buyer behaviour.
3. Learners will analyze the effect of environmental pressures like competition, technology, and regulation on price determination choices.
4. Learners will evaluate how businesses can simplify pricing structures to foster long-term growth and sustainability.

Content

6.0   Introductory Caselet

6.1   Understanding Price and Factors Influencing Pricing Decisions

6.2   Major Pricing Strategies

6.3   Additional Pricing Strategies

6.4 Summary

6.5 Key Terms

6.6 Descriptive Questions

6.7 References

6.8 Case Study

6.0 Introductory Caselet

Pricing Strategy Challenges in a Competitive Market

Ananya Kapoor, owner of NutriBites, a high-end organic snack company, was finding it difficult to come up with a competitive price policy. She was offering good-quality, preservative-free snacks but her sales plateaued. Her consumers viewed her goods either as too pricey relative to mass-market offerings or too cheap to be worth the premium label.

At first, Ananya was following a cost-based pricing strategy, which gave her a decent markup on costs. But this strategy did not place NutriBites as well as she could in the marketplace. And her product mix pricing was not that well executed—there were no distinct differentiations between levels of products, and bundling was not much.

She understood that an effective pricing strategy was the key to market penetration and expansion. Therefore, she re-strategize by adopting customer value-based pricing, where prices were segmented on the basis of perceived value. She adopted product bundle pricing to motivate bulk buying and promotional pricing in the way of limited period offers. Also, she expanded her distribution from specialty organic shops to leading e-commerce portals, making her products ubiquitous.

These strategic shifts brought about higher customer demand, enhanced market position, and enhanced profitability. NutriBites effectively addressed its pricing issue by matching price, product range, and distribution with the needs of the customers.

Critical Thinking Question

How can companies like NutriBites balance competitive prices with a strong brand image within an oversaturated market?

6.1 Introduction to Marketing Mix: Why Use Marketing Mix

6.1.1 Introduction

Price is the most crucial element of the marketing mix as it has a tangible impact on the profitability and turnover of a company. Price is the amount that the customer pays for a product or a service and is one of the key determinants of consumer attitude, competitive success, and business success. Effective pricing allows a company to aim for the right customer base, maximize sales, and establish its brand reputation.

Pricing decisions are complex and subject to numerous internal and external influences. Businesses need to balance customer needs, market conditions, and competitors to determine the optimal price. Setting the right price not only affects short-term revenues but also determines long-term brand survival and market share.

Definition of Price

Price is what a buyer pays for a good or service for possession or use. It is most significant in establishing demand, profitability, and competitiveness.

6.1.2 Price in the Marketing Mix

Price is the most important component of the Marketing Mix (4Ps). This is because it has a direct effect on a company's revenues, profitability, and market position. Price can be defined as the sacrifice customers are willing to bear for a product or service. Among the elements of the marketing mix, price is unique as it directly generates revenue rather than incurring costs. Pricing decisions are tough, as they have to balance both customer perception and competitive dynamics with cost structures and wider business objectives. A good pricing strategy determines not only how demand is influenced but also how a brand is positioned in the market—whether as premium, value for money, or budget.

A company's pricing strategy must, therefore, be carefully crafted considering the brand value, market conditions, and long-term profitability. It must be flexible enough to adapt to changing consumer behavior, competitive pressure, and shifts in the economy.

 For example, while *Maruti Suzuki* competes with aggressive prices in its mass market, Tanishq will position its brand and set premium prices to make a luxury jewellery statement.

Fig 6.1 Price in Marketing Mix

(2) Pricing Objectives

Pricing is a significant part of the marketing mix as it has a direct influence on revenue, profitability, and market position. A business can set a pricing strategy that would either help it to gain the highest profits, gain maximum market share, or achieve long-term sustainability. The pricing objective will also influence the way a brand is perceived by its customers and its products. There are many considerations, including production costs, competitor prices, consumer demand, and the conditions in the market, in deciding pricing strategies.

1. Profit Maximization: Companies set prices strategically to maximize margins while ensuring sustained demand. The strategy is used more in sectors where brand loyalty and product differentiation are major aspects. By having a premium pricing model, the business ensures that high returns can be generated while at the same time maintaining exclusivity and quality perception.

Example:Tanishq by Titan continues to command premium prices for its gold jewellery lines based on the exclusivity of designs, superior quality, and trust in purity. As a result, it can maintain high margins.

2. Market Penetration: This is a strategy where the low price attracts many customers, which in turn will help quickly gain market share, especially for competitive industries or launching new products. It is a common practice for new brands or businesses to enter an established market gaining visibility quickly and winning customer loyalty.

Example:Boat, India's fastest-growing audio & wearables brand, was pricing its smartwatches and earphones lower than competitors like *Samsung* and *JBL* to get a head start in India's wearables market faster.

3. Maximizing Sales Volume: Some business enterprises target a large sales volume and not the profit per unit. This makes their strategy work properly for FMCGs and necessity products. Businesses can reach a large audience by ensuring low prices and can sustain their profitability through economies of scale.

Example: The wide availability of affordable ayurvedic and personal care products by *Dabur*, including Dabur Honey and Chyawanprash, helps achieve widespread reach in urban and rural markets for driving large-scale sales.

4. Status Quo Pricing: This strategy is price parity with competition to stabilize market prices and not engage in a price war. It is a common strategy when there are significant players in an industry, as price volatility might destabilize or lose customers. Companies using this strategy focus more on retaining their customers and the sustainability of the brand over aggressive price strategies.

Example: Zomato and *Swiggy* maintain similar commission rates for restaurants and delivery fees for customers to ensure competitive equilibrium.

(3) Price Elasticity of Demand

Price Elasticity of Demand (PED) measures how sensitive consumer demand is to price changes. Elastic demand products are those whose sales change significantly when prices change, while inelastic demand products have minimal changes in sales when prices change.

For example, luxury products and non-essential goods are usually price elastic. A small increase in price may lead to a drastic fall in demand. If the price of a high-end smartphone or a holiday package increases, consumers may delay or avoid buying it.

Conversely, goods such as food, medicines, and fuel display low price elasticity of demand. Even if the prices of petrol, electricity, or essential groceries rise, demand remains somewhat stable due to a lack of realistic alternatives for consumers.

Companies apply elasticity analysis for rational price structuring decisions. FMCG brands like Nestle and Hindustan Unilever make sure to price exactly so as not to see significant demand fall. Premium brands such as Mercedes-Benz or Rolex rely on inelastic demand from high-net-worth customers who are less sensitive to pricing. It also enables businesses to formulate effective discounting strategies.

For Example, when a product is highly elastic, the company can offer infrequent discounts that could significantly increase its sales volume. Amazon and Flipkart exploit this price elasticity while offering festive sales, maximizing their short-term revenue through deep discounts.

6.1.3 Significance of Price in Marketing

Pricing is more than just putting a price sticker on a product; it is a strategic choice that affects brand position, competition within the market, and customer trust. An effective pricing strategy enables a business to achieve sustainable returns on investment while ensuring value for the customer. Appropriate pricing also defines purchasing behaviours as well as long-term customer relationships. Price choices should be tied to overall marketing objectives, target market expectancies, and industry character. Companies that do not establish optimal prices can suffer from lower sales, declining profitability, or loss of market share.

1. Revenue Generation: Price is always associated with revenue and profit in a company and hence is an extremely significant business decision. A good price means that the company achieves its cost but maintains a fair profit margin. Altering prices significantly impacts aggregate earnings and company viability.

Example: A prestige brand such as *Rolex* keeps its prices high to uphold exclusivity and obtain high revenues, whereas budget-friendly brands such as Casio compete on the pricing front with mass customers.
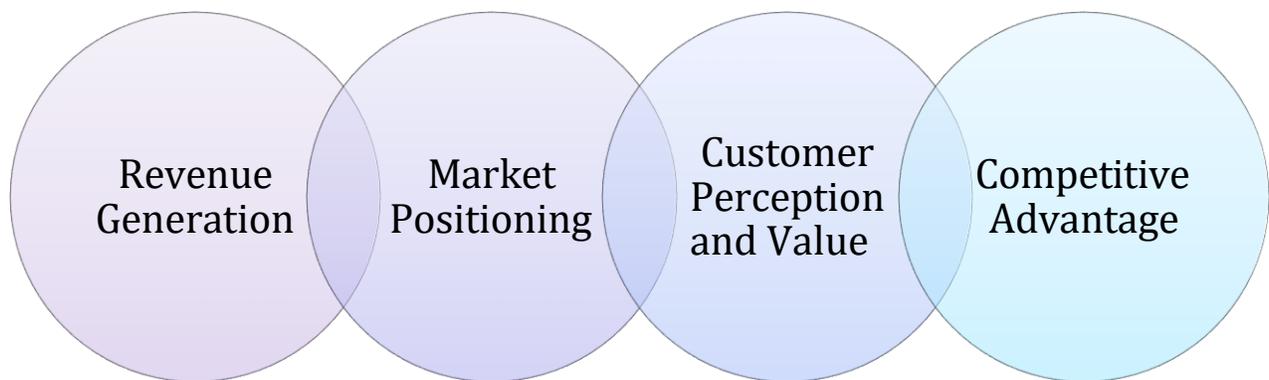

Fig 6.2 Significance of Price in Marketing

2. Market Positioning: Price determines the way a brand is viewed in the marketplace—whether as premium, mid-range, or low-cost. A premium price can establish a perception of uniqueness, whereas prices that are low can suggest affordability. Companies have to match pricing with brand identity to appeal to the desired market.

Example: Tesla is positioned as a high-end electric car brand with premium pricing, while Tata Motors aims for affordability with its low-cost car models.

3. Customer Perception and Value: The product price determines customer perception of quality and value. Customers tend to equate high prices with quality and low prices with standard or low-quality products. An ideal price balances the product's value and satisfies customers.

Example: Apple's premium pricing supports its image of high-quality, innovative technology, while Xiaomi gains ground by providing cheap smartphones with competitive specifications.

4. Competitive Advantage: Pricing the product appropriately can make companies more competitive. A company can use penetration pricing to attract new customers or premium pricing to establish exclusivity. The ability to adjust prices based on market trends makes the company sustainable.

Example: Amazon practices dynamic pricing in offering competitive rates on products while brands like Gucci practice price skimming in charging premium rates to create prestige brands.

6.1.4 Factors Influencing Pricing Decisions

Price decisions are based on the alliance of external as well as internal components. These internal components can be the cost of production, organizational goals, and organizational strategies. Externally, they include competition, market situations, and macroeconomic factors. Through achieving them, organizations develop a pricing strategy that is beneficial to them economically as well as by market parameters. Companies must continue to monitor these variables so that their prices are up to date. A rigid pricing policy may limit opportunities, whereas a flexible approach enables companies to adjust to market trends and customer demands.

nternal Factors Influencing Pricing Decisions

1. Production Cost: Labour, raw material, and manufacturing costs influence the price of a product directly. Companies must price in such a manner that all costs are covered and there is a gain. Reducing production cost can give greater flexibility in pricing.

Example: A fashion brand employing locally available materials at cheaper rates can afford to sell its products competitively, whereas a brand employing costly imported materials must price its products at a premium.

2. Company Objectives: Firms determine prices depending on their long-term objectives, i.e., maximum profits, market share growth, or expansion into new markets. Pricing strategies must be aligned with these objectives to allow business expansion.

Example: A new software startup can employ penetration pricing to win customers, but a well-established technology company like Microsoft can employ value-based pricing for its high-end products.

3. Product Differentiation: Brand image, design, and differentiation all influence how a firm sets its prices. Highly differentiated products can command higher prices, but generic products have to base themselves on competitive pricing.

Example: Nike sells its new sports shoes with unique designs at a high price, whereas a domestic shoe factory is able to sell similar products at a lower price.

4. Distribution and Advertising Costs: Advertising, packaging, and logistical costs also influence pricing. Businesses with a high cost of advertising or extensive distribution networks may price their goods higher to recover costs.

Example: A luxurious perfume company with heavy advertisement and costly packaging will be pricier than a home-produced fragrance with minimal advertisement.

External Factors Influencing Pricing Decisions

1. Market Demand: The demand for a product determines its price. The companies can afford high prices when there is high demand, whereas with low demand, reductions or offers must be offered. The companies need to decide customers' willingness to pay before they can set the prices.

Example: Concert tickets for a popular artist on tour are more expensive since there is strong demand, while those of less popular artists can be sold at a low price or discounted.

2. Competitor Pricing: Firms need to consider competitor pricing when setting their own. Competitive pricing ensures that a company is attractive to customers but still profitable. Underpricing or overpricing relative to competitors will impact sales.

Example: Samsung and Apple adjust their smartphone prices based on each other's releases to stay competitive in the premium segment.

3. Economic Conditions: Recession, inflation, and general economic stability affect consumers' spending power and inclination to spend. Firms may need to adjust prices to sustain sales and compete under different economic conditions.

Example: The airlines reduce ticket prices during an economic slump to induce travellers, while during a booming economy, they can increase prices since demand is higher.

4. Taxes and Regulations of Government: Price, taxes, and import fees establish the final price of an item. Firms must comply with price regulation and factor in tax variations, and prices in order to be profitable but remain competitive.

Example: Luxury imported cars have high taxes imposed on them, making them significantly more expensive than locally manufactured cars.

Pricing is a key marketing strategy element that affects profitability, customer sentiment, and competitive position. Internal and external factors must be considered by firms to structure an effective pricing strategy appropriate to market conditions as well as business goals. The most suitable pricing strategy is accountable for profitability, market stability, as well as long-term consumer confidence.

Did You Know?

"Research by McKinsey indicates that a 1% increase in price, if demand remains constant, can lead to an 8-10% increase in operating profits for many companies."

6.2 Major Pricing Strategies

Pricing strategies identify the way companies fix the price of their product or service to make it attractive to customers without affecting profitability. A suitable pricing strategy is founded on a range of factors, including market demand, costs, and competition. Companies need to reflect on their pricing strategy carefully to position their brand, satisfy customer needs, and drive business objectives. Customer Value-Based Pricing, Cost-Based Pricing, and Competition-Based Pricing are three primary pricing strategies. Each strategy approaches pricing differently, and firms often use a combination of these strategies to remain competitive in the marketplace.

1. Customer Value-Based Pricing: Customer value-based pricing is a mechanism whereby the price is established based on the value that customers place on the product. Firms conduct research related to consumer

preference, brand image, and willingness to pay before establishing a price. Products that have been perceived to be of higher value are given premium prices, and those perceived to be of lower value are given competitive prices to stimulate purchases.

Example: Luxury hotels like **The Ritz-Carlton** charge premium prices on the basis of improved customer experience, customized services, and brand equity, even though similar accommodations are available at lower prices.

2. Cost-Based Pricing: This approach determines the price by adding a markup to the total cost of production. It guarantees that all materials, labour, and overheads are covered and a profit margin is guaranteed. While simple to implement, it may not always be aligned with customer demand or competition prices.

Example: A table manufacturing business estimates the production cost of a wooden table at $100 and adds a 30% markup, selling the table for $130 to be profitable and cover the cost.

3. Competition-Based Pricing: Here, firms price their products according to what competitors offer for equivalent products. Businesses will price their products lower than, higher than, or the same as competitors based on brand positioning, features, and market goals. This strategy assists companies in remaining competitive in intense markets.

Example: Fast-food restaurants such as **McDonald's** and **Burger King** frequently match their burger prices against one another, providing discounts or value meals to entice price-conscious consumers.

> **Activity: Evaluating Pricing Strategies in Competitive Markets**
>
> Choose a high-profile company that effectively uses a pricing strategy (e.g., Apple, Walmart, or Tesla). Identify how the company decides its pricing strategy—whether it's customer value-based, cost-based, or competition-based. Discuss brand positioning, market demand, cost structure, and competitor prices. Assess the success of the selected strategy in generating sales, customer loyalty, and profitability. Determine possible areas of difficulty in their pricing strategy and recommend strategic solutions, including dynamic pricing, bundling options, or price segmentation. Lastly, determine how these enhancements can contribute to the company's market share and long-term viability.

6.3 Product Mix Pricing Strategies

Product mix pricing strategies enable companies to increase revenue and marketability by pricing several related products in their product portfolio. Companies often sell complementary products, enabling them to

develop pricing schemes that encourage consumers to buy multiple items. These strategies achieve profitability, competition, and customer demand balances while making each product within the mix contribute to total revenue.

Five key product mix pricing strategies are Product Line Pricing, Optional-Product Pricing, Captive-Product Pricing, By-Product Pricing, and Product Bundle Pricing. All of these strategies suit various business models and customer behaviours, driving buying decisions and increasing market competitiveness.

1. Product Line Pricing: This is a strategy whereby various price levels within a product line are determined by features, quality, or performance. Companies differentiate prices across various models to attract various customer groups while maintaining evident value distinctions. The price differences must be justified to persuade customers to move up to more advanced versions instead of looking for alternatives.

Example: Samsung retails its Galaxy phones in various price segments—low (Galaxy A series), mid (Galaxy S series), and high-end (Galaxy Z Fold series)—with different features to appeal to different segments of buyers.
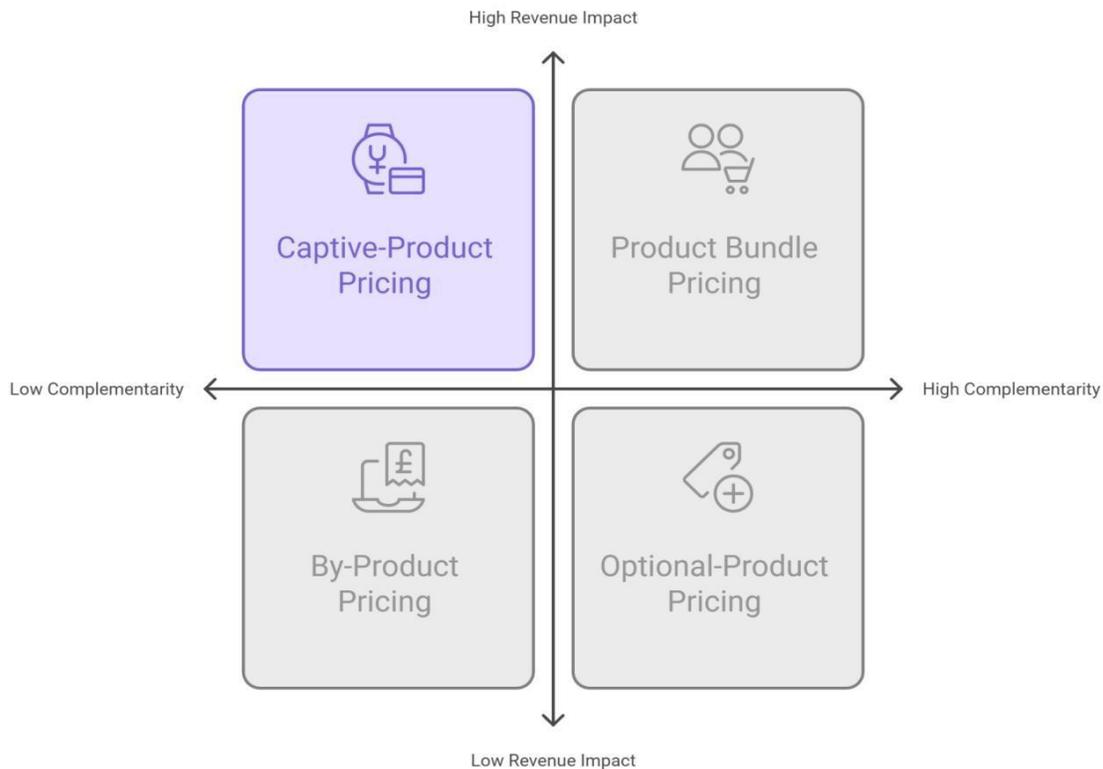

Fig 6.3 Product Mix Pricing Strategies

2. Optional-Product Pricing: Companies use this method to price add-on features or accessories separately from the base product such that purchasers can customize their orders. This creates additional revenue as

purchasers pay for additional features while keeping a low price on the base product. Companies must price optional products with caution so that they offer perceived value without discouraging sales.

Example: Manufacturers sell basic models at a standard price but offer optional features such as leather upholstery, premium sound systems, and sunroofs so that clients can upgrade their vehicles at additional expense.

3. Captive-Product Pricing: This is a pricing strategy where a central product is priced competitively while higher prices are charged for necessary complementary products. The customers have to purchase complementary items in order to use the main product, with assured revenue stream. Companies should price the main product affordably while setting competitive yet profitable prices for complementary accessories.

Example: Razor companies sell the product handle for a lower price or even for free and make up for it by charging extra for replacement blades, encouraging customers to return for refills and driving long-term profitability.

4. By-Product Pricing: It is a process where by-products of the manufacturing process are sold to minimize waste and add extra revenue. Firms are able to lower disposal expenses while exploring profitable applications for secondary outputs, thus optimizing production as well as sustainability. Appropriate pricing makes such by-products appealing to niche markets.

*Example:*Coffee producers re -introduced the coffee cherry pulp, once creating a new revenue stream by reducing the waste in the garbage tea.

5. Product Bundle Pricing: Companies bundle several complementary products and sell them at a lower price than buying each one individually. This tactic enhances perceived value, stimulates bulk buying, and eliminates slower-selling inventory while maximizing total sales. Successful bundling helps consumers feel that they are receiving good value rather than being forced to buy unwanted products.

Example: Fast-food restaurants charge less for meal packages involving a burger, fries, and a drink than they would for the items separately, so customers are inclined to buy the whole package rather than individual parts.

Pricing strategies of product mix enable firms to maximize their pricing mechanisms and accommodate varied customer needs. Product line pricing allows differentiation between products within a line, optional-product pricing allows higher customization and captive-product pricing guarantees repeat business. By-product pricing

generates revenue from waste, and product bundle pricing generates a higher volume of sales through desirable offers. Successful implementation of a pricing strategy supports market stance, increases profitability, and leads to greater customer satisfaction.

6.3.1 Challenges in Implementing Product Mix Pricing Strategies

While product mix price strategies are very profitable, companies have to contend with several challenges when they use them. These challenges are caused by customer attitude, pricing problems, and competitive scenarios. Unless they are contained, these challenges have the potential to initiate reduced sales, customer complaints, or even brand dilution. Businesses must undertake selective trade-offs among their price structures such that they remain profitable but do not erode consumer trust as well as competitive distinction.

1. Customer Perception Problems: Consumers are likely to feel that certain pricing strategies, like optional products or captive-product pricing, are exploitative. In the case of add-ons or compulsory elements being priced way too high, customers will perceive the brand to be unjust and feel dissatisfied. Companies should set prices that enhance perceived value rather than being seen as an added cost.

Example: Console game firms typically sell consoles at a low cost but charge exorbitantly for additional controllers or online services, irritating customers.

2. Pricing Sophistication: It is difficult to have more than one price plan in a product line, particularly for big companies. It takes careful market research and strategic tweaking to determine the correct price for various levels of products, add-ons, or packages. Pricing differentiation mistakes can result in loss of revenue or weak sales performance.

Example: A computer firm with various models that are all slightly different can sometimes not have clear price differences, which can cause clients to seek alternatives at lower prices or postpone buying.

3. Market Reaction and Competitive Pressure: Competitor pricing strategies can haveadirectinfluenceon a company's product mix pricing success. If competitors are offering similar products at a lower price or using deep discounting, firms may be forced to shift their strategy. If they fail to react to changes in the market, they will lose sales and market share.

Example: A high-end skincare company employing premium pricing might suffer if a rival company introduces a quality organic version at a lower price, attracting budget-conscious consumers.

4. Profit Margin Management: While product mix pricing maximizes total profitability, excessively low prices for certain products (e.g., basic products under captive pricing) can result in losses if users do not buy complementary items. Organizations should carefully balance low entry costs with long-term viable margins.

Example: A low-cost printer seller that does not create enough ink cartridge demand might have profit problems if third-party ink sources gain popularity.

5. Market Trends and Consumer Adaptation: Buying habits and consumer tastes change, and keeping fixed pricing methods can be hard. Unless businesses review and alter their pricing method constantly in terms of new trends, technology upgrades, or consumers' expectations, their strategy is bound to go obsolete.

Example: Subscription-based services that offer bundled streaming content might be unpopular if consumers want à la carte rather than pay for a full package they don't utilize completely.

Did You Know?

"A 2023 survey showed that 56% of shoppers will pay more for a premium version of a product if the pricing strategy explicitly conveys more value." – Highlighting the significance of clearly established product line pricing strategies."

6.3.2 Strategic Approaches for Optimizing Product Mix Pricing

In order to effectively execute product mix pricing strategies, companies need to embrace strategic practices that maximize optimal price decisions. The strategies entail utilizing data, enhancing communication, and constantly modifying pricing models. An efficient approach increases customer satisfaction, sustains competitive edge, and optimizes profitability.

1. Data-Driven Pricing Decisions: Businesses need to apply data analytics, customer knowledge, and AI-based tools to decide the best pricing models. Real-time data enables business organizations to grasp consumer behaviour, demand volatility, and price sensitivity, providing more effective pricing models.

Example: Online retail websites employ AI-based dynamic pricing to dynamically price products depending on demand, prices of competitors, and the shopping history of the consumers.

2. Value Communication: Value communication through pricing strategies has to be communicated effectively to maintain customer trust. Firms have to highlight the benefits of different pricing mechanisms and justify price differences in their product line. Being transparent means customers will see premium-priced items as quality buys.

Example: A maker of smartwatches clarifies why more expensive models are worth it by referencing distinct features such as increased health monitoring, increased battery life, and high-end materials.

3. Testing and Adaptation: Continuous experiments of different pricing methods through A/B testing and market tests allow businesses to determine the optimal method. Businesses can see how customers respond to different prices and make appropriate changes.

Example: An IT software company offers trial pricing to early subscription plans and tests user retention before changing prices in the long run.

4. Cross-Selling and Bundling Optimization: Firms must strategize cross-selling and bundling appropriately so that they contribute to perceived customer value but are profitable. Clever bundling persuades customers to buy more products without compelling them to do so.

Example: A camera company has lower-cost sets of lenses, and customers buy complementary accessories instead of third-party accessories.

5. Keeping Ahead of Marketplace Trends and Consumer Behaviors: Pricing frameworks need to keep in line with fluctuating consumer needs and marketplace trends. Businesses have to be agile, monitoring changing purchasing power, competitive pricing, and consumer preferences in order to stay connected.

Example: A travel company overhauls its pricing model with the application of flexible payment terms and dynamic airfares tied to travel demand trends.

Resolution of product mix price challenges calls for a strategic data-driven approach to keeping customer perception, competitive landscape, and economic sustainability in sight. Use analysis, transparent communications, and continuous experimentation to refine their pricing mechanisms to achieve maximum profitability and sales. Following upcoming market forces brings long-term success, which allows companies to enjoy a healthy survival under the pressures of competitive arenas.

Knowledge Check 1

Choose the correct option:

1. What is the main purpose of product line pricing?

    A) To establish an equal price across all products within a firm's line

    B) To vary prices within a product category according to features and value

    C) To make all customers pay the same price independent of product variations

2. In what ways does captive-product pricing advantage companies?

    A) It makes customers buy more complementary products and, therefore, bring in more revenue

    B) It minimizes the necessity for product differentiation within a brand's portfolio

    C) It avoids the need for core products to be sold at a competitive price

3. Why is product bundle pricing effective?

    A) It compels customers to purchase unnecessary products together with their wanted products

    B) It provides perceived value through selling several products at a joint price benefit

    C) It makes all separate products have an equal price irrespective of demand

6.4 Additional Pricing Strategies

Pricing strategies go beyond basic techniques to adapt to diversified market conditions, customer behaviour, and business needs. Additional price strategies help firms achieve maximum revenues, attract specific sets of customers, and respond effectively to external forces. Discounting, segmentation, psychological stimuli, promotion techniques, location pricing, dynamic changes, and international considerations are all such techniques. Each technique has a specific role in enhancing competitiveness and profitability and addressing market-specific challenges.

1. Discount and Allowance Pricing: This is a pricing strategy that provides short-term discounts to stimulate purchasing, reduce surplus stock, or reward customer loyalty. Discounts are seasonal, quantity-based, or

induced by loyalty, whereas allowances are most often offered on trade-ins or promotional support. Firms use this to increase short-term volume sales and loyalty. Regular discounts, however, affect perceived brand value if not properly managed.

Example: Adidas launches a "Trade-In for Sustainability" program, under which customers can return used sneakers and get a discount on the purchase of new ones, reducing wastage while generating sales.

2. Segmented Pricing: Segmented pricing, in which consumers of the same goods are charged varied prices as per customer profile, time of purchase, or geolocation, is a ploy employed by enterprises to try to capture the greatest margin through reaching distinct consumer classes at varying degrees of willingness to pay. Differential pricing is justified by relative perceived values, transport charges, or demand characteristics.

Example: Emirates Airlines chargesvariousclassesof airfares, with economy travellers paying normalfares while first-class passengers pay a premium toenjoy private suites and gourmet food.

3. Psychological Pricing: This approach uses consumer psychology to drive purchases by making prices more appealing. Techniques involve pricing below whole dollars (e.g., $9.99 instead of $10), perceived value creation, or premium pricing to signal greater quality. The idea is to shape consumer perception indirectly and stimulate expenditure.

Example: Rolex prices its high-end watches at $9,995 ratherthan $10,000, creating the perception of a bargain while enhancing its upscale image.

4. Promotional Pricing: Promotional pricing entails the provision of short-term discounts, time-limited offers, or special promotions to stimulate demand, induce urgency, and acquire new customers. This is often practisedduring product introductions, festive seasons, or clearance sales. Although it stimulates short-term sales, companies should be careful not to compromise profitability and over-depend on discounts.

Example: Domino's Pizza launches a "Midweek Madness"promotion, offering a 50% discount on all pizzas every Wednesday to boost midweek sales.

5. Geographical Pricing: This policy applies varied prices depending on geographic variables like the cost of production, fluctuations in demand, and local economic conditions. Firms modify prices according to the cost of transport, local taxation, and competition in various regions. This maintains the prices according to the affordability in local markets and firm sustainability.

Example: CCD charges for its coffee differently based on where it is, charging more in Tokyo and London because it has higher operational costs there than in small towns.

6. Dynamic and Online Pricing: Dynamic pricing, prevalent in e-commerce and travel industries, is the practice of changing prices in real-time based on supply, demand, competitor price, and consumer behavior. Travel websites and online stores use algorithms to dynamically price optimize and maximize revenue. The practice keeps companies competitive and enables them to act quickly to a changing market.

Example: Uber dynamically adjusts ride prices based on demand, higher during high-demand times and lower during off-peak hours.

7. International Pricing: International pricing is the fluctuation in prices of products from one region to another across the globe based on economic conditions, exchange rates, import duty, and local competition. Affordability, purchasing power, and regulatory problems should be considered by the companies in fixing prices for regions. International pricing assists with profitability and making entry into various economies.

Example: Samsung sells its latest smartphones cheaper in Southeast Asia than in Western Europe due to differences in purchasing power and regional competition

Other pricing mechanisms enable companies to manage fluctuating market conditions, access desired consumers, and increase profitability. With discounting, segmentation, psychological effect, or geography price alterations, such mechanisms enable companies to maximize prices in competitive scenarios. A balanced pricing mechanism ensures sustainable growth while maintaining customer trust.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Wall Street Journal. (2025, March 13). Apple's iPhone 16e pricing strategy explained. Wall Street Journal.

6.4.1 Strategic Implications of Pricing Strategies

Pricing is not merely assigning a number; it is a strategic choice that has an impact on consumer perception, competitive differentiation, and profitability. Various factors must be taken into consideration by companies when deciding their pricing strategy so that it would be aligned with market forces, brand positioning, and long-term viability. The following are the strategic implications for successful pricing.

1. Competitive Positioning: Firms need to position their prices under their overall market position, either premium, mid, or economy brand. Prices should also be aligned with the brand's overall value proposition to uphold customer confidence and competitive differentiation.

Example: Rolex is a high-end brand, keeping prices high to show scarcity and higher quality workmanship, whereas mass market watch brands such as Timex employ an economy price strategy in order to appeal to more people.

2. Brand Equity and Customer Perception: Price directly influences customer perception of a brand. Charging premium price conveys high quality, while heavy discounting dilutes the exclusiveness of a brand. Companies need to make sure that prices are appropriate for the brand image.

Example: Tesla rarely discounts or promotes its cars, maintaining its image as a high-tech, premium car maker, whereas Chevrolet offers regular dealer incentives to bring in price-conscious consumers.

3. Penetration vs. Profitability: The companies must decide whether to maximize short-run profits or market share. Penetration pricing uses a lower introductory price for gaining the customers and acquiring market share, while price skimming charges early buyers higher introductory prices and lowers them over time.

Example: Disney+ entered the streaming market using a penetrative pricing strategy to gain market share aggressively by providing affordable subscriptions, whereas Apple initially launched the iPhone at a premium to sell to first-movers who were ready to pay extra.

4. Technology and AI in Pricing Decisions: With growing advancements in artificial intelligence, companies apply real-time data analysis to adjust prices dynamically. AI models learn market trends, competitor prices, and customer preferences and compute optimal prices.

Example: Uber dynamic pricing varies fares with time of day, weather, and demand to optimize earnings and balance supply and demand.

5. Cost Structures and Margins: Companies need to track their costs, for example, production, marketing, and distribution costs and hold prices high enough to meet these costs and offer an adequate profit margin. An effective pricing mechanism should make the company profitable while keeping the products at competitive levels in the market.

Example: Boeing aircraft prices come with huge R&D expenditures, the production costs, and regulations by the government to ensure that they are profitable in the future but with a high initial cost.

6. Psychological Pricing and Behavioral Economics: The psychology of consumers influences purchases. Strategies like charm pricing (e.g., $9.99 instead of $10.00), anchoring (quoting an initial price that's higher), and bundling manipulate buying behavior.

Example: Starbucks charges a medium coffee close to its price for a large coffee to make customers purchase the larger size, using the decoy effect to drive higher sales.

7. Economic Conditions and Inflation: Macroeconomic conditions of inflation, recession, and variability of purchasing power affect price choices. Firms have to respond flexibly by varying prices so as not to compromise profitability or erode buyers' bases. Arise in the price of raw materials and labour typically triggers companies to reprice. Companiesuse hedging strategies to manage risks causedby inflation.

Example: Premium watch brands like *Tag Heuer* establish prices around the globe based on fluctuations in currencies and inflation rates to maintain margins while remaining affordable in high-marketplaces.

8. Legal & Ethical Considerations: Pricing flexibility is affected by regulation constraints, such as anti-price gouging statutes and consumer protection policies. The firms need to comply with the pricing legislation and maintain fair practice. Ethical factors such as transparency and fair trade prices affectpricing decisions. The companiesmustweigh profitability againstcorporate social responsibility.

Example: Nestlé applies fair trade certification for its coffee products, which it prices to reward sustainable sourcing by international labour and price regulations.

9. Global Pricing and Market Variations: Companieswithoperationsacrossseveralcountriesneed to price under the local economic scenario, cultural preferences, and local market competition. Tariffs, taxation, and purchasing power parity influence global pricing strategies. Tiered pricing is a commonphenomenon to targetvarious income classes.

Example: Netflix offers lower-priced plans in Southeast Asia than in North America, tailoring its pricing strategy to suit regional purchasing power and competition.

10. Supply Chain and Distribution Costs: Pricing models need to consider supplier, warehousing, and logistic costs, especially in industries where supply chains are complex. Price determination is influenced by transport expenditures, supply chain disruptions, as well as import duties. Business organizations must achieve maximum efficiency when distributing in order to keep expenses under control.

Example: Apple offers higher prices for iPhones in markets with higher import costs and delivery expenses, such as Brazil, compared to countries with lower delivery prices.

An effective pricing strategy involves juggling several factors such as competition, customer image, cost, and market forces. Companies need to be data-driven while factoring in legal, technological, and worldwide influences. A dynamic pricing strategy leads to consistent profitability, competitiveness in the market, and satisfaction of customers in the fast-changing business environment.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:
1. Which pricing strategy focuses on setting low introductory values to attract customers and achieve market share?
   a. Price skimming
   b. Penetration pricing
   c. premium pricing
2. What factors help in maintaining brand equity by preventing excessive discounts?
   a. competitive pricing
   b. Brand positioning
   c. cost leadership
3. Which pricing strategy based on market demand and competitive analysis dynamically adjusts product prices?
   a. AI-based pricing
   b. Fixed pricing
   c. Seasonal pricing

Activity: Implications of Pricing Strategies

Choose a high-profile company that effectively uses a pricing strategy (e.g., Apple, Walmart, or Tesla). Identify how the company decides its pricing strategy—whether it's customer value-based, cost-based, or competition-based. Discuss brand positioning, market demand, cost structure, and competitor prices. Assess the success of the selected strategy in generating sales, customer loyalty, and profitability. Determine possible areas of difficulty in their pricing strategy and recommend strategic solutions, including dynamic pricing, bundling options, or price segmentation. Lastly, determine how these enhancements can contribute to the company's market share and long-term viability.

6.4 Summary

❖ Pricing is an essential business tactic that drives brand positioning, consumer perception, and profitability. Firms have to match prices to their value proposition and the prevailing market for their success.

❖ Different pricing techniques include cost-based, value-based, and competition-based pricing, all for various business objectives and customer needs.

❖ Businesses apply psychological pricing strategies such as charm pricing and anchoring to guide the purchasing decisions of consumers and gain maximum perceived value.

❖ Market penetration pricing captures market share by offering products at lower prices initially, and price skimming charges innovators a higher price.

❖ Dynamic pricing, made possible by AI and real-time market monitoring, allows businesses to dynamically adjust prices in response to demand, competitors' prices, and economic factors.

❖ Bundling and captive-product pricing brings in revenue by compelling buyers to buy ancillary products, increasing long-term profitability.

❖ Global pricing strategies take inflation, exchange rates, and taxes into account to maximize prices in various international markets.

❖ Distribution and supply chain expenses directly affect pricing strategies, necessitating companies to strike a balance between competitive pricing and operational efficiency.

❖ Legal and ethical imperatives guide the pricing to allow for compliance with consumer protection statutes and uphold corporate social responsibility.

❖ Firms are required to constantly update and realign pricing models to maintain competitiveness, profitability, and customer satisfaction within fluctuating markets.

6.5 Key Terms

1. **Market Positioning:** The process of creating a brand's identity in the consumer's mind using pricing, quality, and promotion strategies. It decides whether a company is premium, mid-range, or value.

2. **Dynamic Pricing:** A strategy in which prices are set in real-time according to demand, competitor pricing, and market conditions. It enables businesses to optimize revenue through dynamic price adjustment.

3. **Value-Based Pricing:** A pricing method whereby the perceived value to the customer of a product defines how much should be charged, as opposed to the cost of production. It is regularly applied by luxury and high-technology brands.

4. **Psychological Pricing:** A method of manipulating the buying behaviour of people to make prices seem more desirable, e.g., $9.99 rather than $10. It helps to encourage impulse purchasing and value for money.

5. **Profitability:** The capacity of a firm to generate more than costs, by which it becomes financially viable. A proper pricing strategy has an immediate effect on the profitability of a business.

6. **Competition-Based Pricing:** A pricing strategy where companies price their goods according to competitor prices and not cost or value. It guarantees a competitive edge while staying marketable.

7. **Consumer Perception:** How customers perceive a brand's value, quality, and price compared to its competitors. Good perception generates stronger brand loyalty and more sales.

6.6 Descriptive Questions

1. What determines a firm's choice while establishing a price strategy? Elaborate on how internal and external elements mouldprice decisions.

2. How does psychological pricing influence buyer purchasing behaviour Give an example of a firm employing this method successfully.

3. Why do firms apply penetration pricing, and what benefits does it bring? Describe an actual case when penetration pricing aided market growth.

4. What is the role of AI in contemporary pricing strategy? Describe how AI assists companies in optimizing pricing in the -e-commerce and travel sectors.

5. How do supply chain costs influence pricing decisions? Explain how transportation and logistics costs influence final product prices.

6. Why is legal compliance crucial in formulating priicing strategy? Provide an example of a regulation that influences business pricing policies.

7. What are the advantages of price bundling to both consumers and firms? Describe how it generates value and boosts total sales.

6.7 References

1. "Marketing Management" by Philip Kotler and Kevin Lane Keller
2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by Philip Kotler, HermawanKartajaya, and Iwan Setiawan
3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by Michael Porter
4. Consumer Behaviour by Schiffman 12th Edition
5. Marketing Warfare by Jack Trout and Al Ries
6. "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by Michael R. Solomon

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1: B) To vary prices within a product category according to features and value

2: A) It makes customers buy more complementary products and, therefore, bring in more revenue

3: B) It provides perceived value through selling several products at a joint price benefit

Knowledge Check 2

1: b) Penetration Pricing

2: b) Brand Positioning

3: a) AI-Based Pricing

6.8 Case Study

GreenBite's Pricing Strategy for Market Growth

Introduction

A well-crafted pricing strategy enables businesses to create a competitive advantage by linking product value and customer expectation. Profitability, market growth, and brand perception are affected by effective pricing. GreenBite, a high-end organic snack company, was able to modify its pricing strategy to improve its market positioning and boost sales. This case study discusses the way GreenBite improved its pricing strategy to enhance business growth and deepen loyalty among its customers.

Background

GreenBite, an organic snack company started by Anisha Mehta, was looking to offer preservative-free, high-quality snacks to health-oriented consumers. The company, though, found it difficult to price its products appropriately, with customers either finding the products too costly in relation to mass-market brands or too cheap to be premium. Initially, GreenBite used cost-based pricing. It soon came to understand that a more strategic pricing strategy was required to attain long-term market penetration and brand credibility.

Problem 1: Inefficient Product Pricing Strategy

GreenBite's cost-based pricing strategy did not properly position the brand in the competitive organic snack industry. Lacking a defined pricing strategy, certain products were overpriced while others were too low-cost to reflect premium value. The absence of product differentiation and bundling strategies resulted in flat sales and consumer confusion.

Solution:

- Executed a customer value-based pricing strategy, positioning price levels with consumer perception and product quality.
- Implemented product bundle pricing to promote bulk buying and higher average order value.
- Realigned pricing levels to build distinct differentiation between standard and premium product offerings, reinforcing brand premium-ness.

Problem 2: Limited Market Reach and Accessibility

GreenBite first faced limited market coverage, with its products being sold in specialty organic stores only, limiting customer access. Without wider distribution, prospective customers were not aware of the brand, resulting in sluggish growth in sales and low brand awareness.

Solution:

- Increased distribution channels to top e-commerce sites, making the product more visible and accessible.
- Launched promotional pricing in the periods of importance to get new clients and boost brand popularity.
- Collaborated with health-oriented retailers to enhance brand credibility and expand its consumer base.

Problem 3: Poor Brand Positioning and Customer Retention

GreenBite's pricing strategy didn't entirely represent its premium brand, creating confusion among potential consumers about its value and quality. Customer retention was also low as there were no loyalty rewards, which made it challenging to develop long-term brand interaction.

Solution:

- More advanced brand storytelling via digital marketing with a focus on the organic, high-quality ingredients that go into its products.
- Applied psychological pricing techniques, including pricing at ₹199 rather than ₹200, to increase perceived affordability.
- Implemented loyalty discount schemes and membership plans to facilitate repeat buying and build customer loyalty.

Reflective Questions

a. In what ways did GreenBite's pricing strategy affect its brand positioning and market penetration?

b. What was the role of promotional pricing in drawing new customers to GreenBite?

c. How can GreenBite better fine-tune its pricing strategy to stay competitive in the organic snacks market?

Conclusion

GreenBite was able to overcome its pricing issues by adopting a value-based pricing strategy, increasing distribution, and enhancing its brand positioning. The adoption of bundle pricing, promotions, and online marketing helped boost sales and enhance customer perception. In the future, GreenBite needs to keep innovating its pricing and promotion strategies to maintain growth, build brand equity, and stay competitive in the organic food industry.

Unit 7: Marketing Channels: Place

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will be able to state the features and significance of marketing channels in encouraging product distribution and enhancing customer satisfaction.
2. Learners will study different marketing channels and determine if and why they are suitable for different business models and market conditions.
3. Learners will learn the key aspects of supply chain management and marketing logistics, including storage, transportation, and inventory control.
4. Learners will evaluate how effective marketing channels and logistics strategies play a role in business success, cost savings, and advancing customer service.

Content

7.0 Introductory Caselet

"Scaling Reach: PureHarvest Distribution Strategy"

Riya Malhotra, PureHarvest owner of a young organic snack food firm, struggled to expand her firm past health food specialty stores. Even though her preservative-free products were a hit with health-aware consumers, she couldn't get her brand beyond its potential by only having her website and a few organic specialty stores to sell through. With only these to rely on, she could not match mainstream snack foods' market coverage.

To resolve this problem, Riya changed how she sold her products. She created a subscription service, so customers would get special snack boxes every month, which kept them coming back. She also worked with corporate wellness programs and upscale airline catering businesses to get new customers. To boost online sales, she collaborated with fitness influencers and healthy meal delivery services to get her products in front of the target audience. Finally, she tried smart vending machines in gyms and coworking spaces, so individuals could simply grab her snacks on the move.

These smart steps significantly amplified PureHarvest visibility in the market, which boosted sales and brand recognition. By synchronizing distribution with the demand from customers and the latest trends, Riya efficiently turned her brand into a leader in the organic snacking category.

Critical Thinking Question

How do emerging brands such as PureHarvest employ innovative means of selling their products to differentiate in a saturated market?

7.1 The Nature and Importance of Marketing Channels

Marketing channels are very important in helping distribute goods and services to the end consumers at a cost-effective rate. Marketing channels offer the connection between producers and final consumers, transferring products and delivering value at various points. An effective marketing channels increasing customers' satisfaction, lowers transaction costs, and helps firms to extend their market coverage. Firms carefully plan their distribution systems to ensure maximum cost-effectiveness, customer satisfaction, and competitiveness.

A marketing channel is a group of intermediaries, such as agents, wholesalers, retailers, and distributors, which bring products from the manufacturer to the ultimate user. It involves all the factors required for the successful distribution of goods and services so that they are distributed at the correct place and time. The structure and composition of a marketing channel are decided based on business requirements, target market, and product categories, and they play an important role in global sales performance and customer satisfaction levels.

7.1.1 The Marketing Channels' Role

Marketing channels play a vital role in bringing together producers and consumers through the free flow of goods and services. Marketing channels aid in market coverage, increase the convenience of customers, and induce distribution efficiencies. Marketing channels make the product highly available, reduce costs, and allow value at multiple stages, thus fostering business growth and enhancing customer satisfaction.

Key Roles of Marketing Channels:

1. Market Coverage Expansion: Marketing channels allow companies to increase their coverage in new geographies as well as to new consumers. Through the assistance of distributors, wholesalers, and websites, companies can enter previously unserved markets without having to spend money on setting up storefronts. Companies can expand over time.

Example: FreshHarvest, an organic farm-to-table brand, expanded nationally by partnering with supermarket chains like Whole Foods and online stores like BigBasket, taking its products to health-conscious consumers in different places.

2. Product Availability and Convenience: Distribution channels make products available in places where customers are most apt to buy them, making them more accessible. Through retail outlets, online retailers, or vending machines, the appropriate channel strategy makes customers more convenient and leads to repeat buying.

Example: Zephyr Electronics, a connected home appliances brand, expanded its reach by selling products on online platforms such as Amazon while also establishing exclusive brand stores to serve online and offline consumers.

3. Reduction of Transaction Costs: Through the utilization of intermediaries like wholesalers and retailers, firms reduce the cost of direct selling. These intermediaries take care of bulk buying, storage, and distribution, minimizing logistical difficulties and financial loads for manufacturers while facilitating effective market supply.

Example: Nimbus Sporting Goods, a sporting equipment specialist, allied itself with regional wholesalers who distributed products effectively to several sporting goods retailers, decreasing its warehousing and direct distribution expense.

4. Customer Service and Post-Sales Service: Distributors and retailers play key roles in handling product questions, warranty, and service to reaffirm brand trustworthiness. Local service points and qualified dealers provide easy and fast access to service, further increasing customers' trust and loyalty.

Example: SonicWave, a high-end audio accessories company, opened a string of approved service centres in major cities for prompt repairs and replacement, thereby increasing customer satisfaction as well as corporate reputation.

5. Ensuring Effective Product Movement: Marketing channels facilitate products to move smoothly from producers to consumers by maintaining inventories, transportation, and timely restocking. The movement makes products available but does not create either a stock shortage or a surplus, thus improving operations efficiency as a whole.

Example: EcoStyle Apparel, a clothing firm that designs environmentally friendly fashion products, collaborated with third-party logistics companies to facilitate efficient warehouse management and distribution to ensure that its green clothing products are always in stock and never in surplus.

Did You Know?

"As per a Deloitte report, companies with efficiently optimized "marketing channels are able to realize up to 20% growth in revenue over companies with ineffective distribution networks, since effective channels drive market coverage and customer accessibility."

7.1.2 Functions of Marketing Channels in Value Creation

Marketing channels play a crucial role in contributing value to products and services by facilitating efficient distribution, enhancing customers' accessibility, and offering auxiliary services. Marketing channels aid not just in the movement of products but also in branding, prices, and customer satisfaction. Enhanced functions facilitate companies to solidify their position in the marketplace and establish long-term customer relationships.
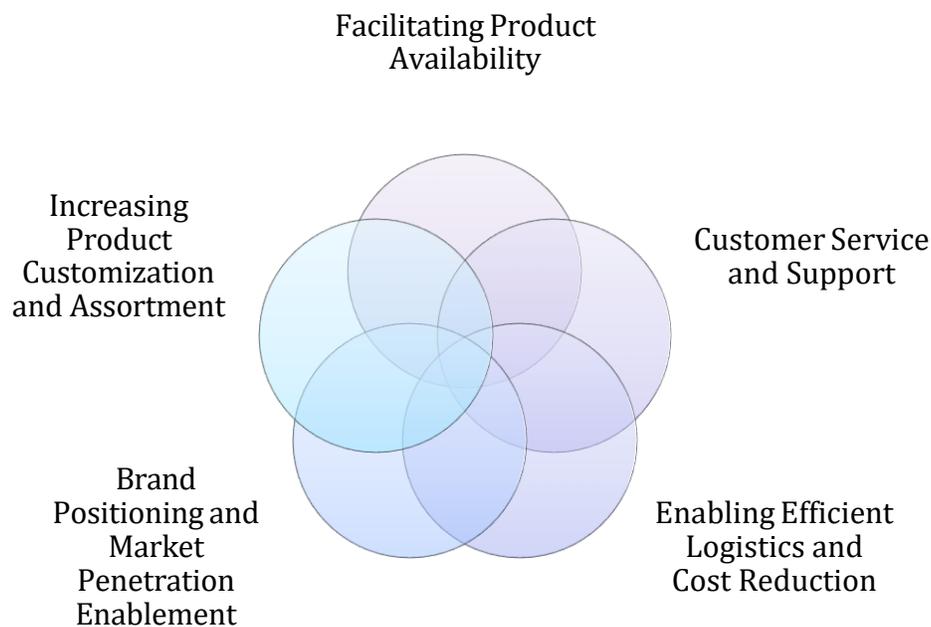
Facilitating Product
Availability

Increasing
Product
Customization
and Assortment

Customer Service
and Support

Brand
Positioning and
Market
Penetration
Enablement

Enabling Efficient
Logistics and
Cost Reduction

Fig 7.1 Functions of Marketing Channels

Major Functions of Marketing Channels in Value Creation:

1. Facilitating Product Availability: Marketing functions are tasked with making products readily available in appropriate places and at appropriate times. Through effective management of inventory and robust distribution systems, organizations can avoid stockouts and meet customer needs properly without causing undue delay.

Example: GreenSprout Organics, an organic food brand, collaborated with hyperlocal grocery delivery platforms such as Blinkit and Instacart to offer its customers its fresh organic produce on a daily basis, increasing its reliability and reach in the market.

2. Increasing Product Customization and Assortment: Channels enable businesses to present a rich product assortment that caters to distinct customer requirements. Product segmentation between various channels enables businesses to court various consumer wants while driving sales opportunities to their full limit.

Example: UrbanBrew Coffee, a premium coffee brand, split its product to sell by offering gourmet varieties in upscale restaurants, regular ones in grocery stores, and single-serve packets on the web to reach every customer segment.

3. Customer Service and Support: Marketing channels, including customer satisfaction and brand loyalty, deliver after-sales services, technical support, and warranty processing. Weak support mechanisms guarantee smooth customer interaction, fostering brand confidence.

Example: NovaTech Gadgets, a consumer electronics firm, set up service kiosks in leading malls and collaborated with doorstep repair providers, providing fast and easy technical assistance to consumers.

4. Enabling Efficient Logistics and Cost Reduction: Supply channels enable efficient supply chain processes, transportation costs, and inventory management by companies. Advanced logistics systems enable faster delivery, less overhead cost, and overall efficiency.

Example: Clothing company *SwiftWear* collaborated with local fulfilment centres and robotics-driven warehouses to reduce web order shipping time and reduce logistics expenses.

5. Brand Positioning and Market Penetration Enablement: Distribution channels also play a crucial role in developing the image of a brand by aligning distribution with market positioning. Strategic alliances and concentrated retail placement facilitate establishing credibility and proper target audience attraction.

Example: Luxury fragrance house *LuxeScents* secured its high-end positioning by only distributing its perfumes through high-end department stores such as Harrods and Saks Fifth Avenue, solidifying its prestige brand reputation.

7.1.3 Importance of Marketing Channels in Business Strategy

Distribution channels are a core component of a company's strategic plan as they impact sales volumes, customer engagement, and reinforce brand positioning through accessibility and exclusivity. Efficient distribution channels allow companies to increase market coverage, boost customer satisfaction, and improve operations. A successful marketing channel is responsive to a company's long-term objectives and improves ongoing progress in a competitive environment.

Prime Reasons Why Marketing Channels Are Crucial in Business Strategy:

1. Maximizing Market Reach and Customer Access: A strong channel network enables companies to reach further out from home markets and penetrate customers in other geographic regions. The wider the market coverage, the higher the likelihood of revenue growth.

Example: VitalBlend, a plant-based nutrition company, went global by collaborating with international supermarket chains such as Carrefour and entering cross-border e-commerce sites like iHerb, making its products available to a global customer base.

2. Driving Competitive Advantage: The efficiency of marketing channels can make a brand stand out from the competition by providing better availability, quicker delivery, and improved customer service. Businesses that maximize their distribution achieve a competitive advantage in the market.

Example: SpeedCharge, a battery maker that provides fast-charging batteries, led the competition with special express delivery alliances with technology retailers and same-day delivery via courier companies, making the product the top priority for buyers in a hurry.

3. Increasing Customer Convenience and Experience: Channels of marketing offer smooth buying experiences through the availability of products from preferred consumer touchpoints. Merging online and offline channels generates an integrated shopping experience that increases customer loyalty.

Example: ModishWear, a fashion clothing brand, introduced an omnichannel strategy through which consumers were able to explore products on the web, try them at offline stores, and finalize the transactions via mobile applications, with convenience and flexibility.

4. Maximizing Profitability and Cost Effectiveness: Companies minimize operational expenses and maximize profit margins through the use of the lowest-cost distribution channels. Efficient logistics and inventory management account for minimum wastage, low storage cost, and maximum efficiency in sales.

Example: FarmFresh Dairy, a dairy and milk company, cut out middlemen using a subscription program that provided direct-to-consumer delivery of fresh goods to reduce costs of distribution and improve profit margins.

5. Building Brand Control and Image: The choice of channel has a direct influence on brand perception. Up-market brands choose selective outlets, while mass brands choose broad availability to finance their positioning strategy.

Example: Zenith Luxe Watches sustained its luxury ambience by reserving sales in select flagship outlets and high-end boutiques only, thus upholding the brand presence and singularity that anchored its luxury ambience under tight wraps.

Distribution channels are the determinants of a company's strategic success, determining customer accessibility, product positioning, and price. An effective network of distribution is crucial in distributing products to the target market at the right time, ensuring harmonious coordination between consumers and companies. Companies that continuously adjust their marketing channels based on market demands and consumer preferences have a competitive advantage over others, which results in long-term profitability and growth.

Activity: Evaluating the Role of Marketing Channels in Business Success

Select a successful business leader who optimizes the marketing channels used to achieve business success (e.g., Starbucks, Unilever, or Tesla). Select how the company organizes the distribution strategy—either direct selling, wholesalers, or e-commerce. Analyze how such channels impact brand positioning, customer access, and operating efficiency. Evaluate how successful the strategy is in expanding markets, lowering costs, and improving customer satisfaction. Evaluate prospective problems, like channel conflict, supply chain disruption, or overreliance on specific intermediaries. Recommend strategic remedies, like omnichannel unification, localized distribution centers, or partnerships with new retail platforms. Lastly, evaluate how much these reforms can propel the company toward long-term leadership in the market, customer loyalty, and profitability.

7.2 Types of Marketing Channels

Marketing channels are paths through which products and services move from manufacturers to buyers. Various marketing channel types are designed to accommodate several business models, customer preferences, and market demands. Companies choose and customize channels strategically to increase availability, place brands, and optimize sales effectiveness.
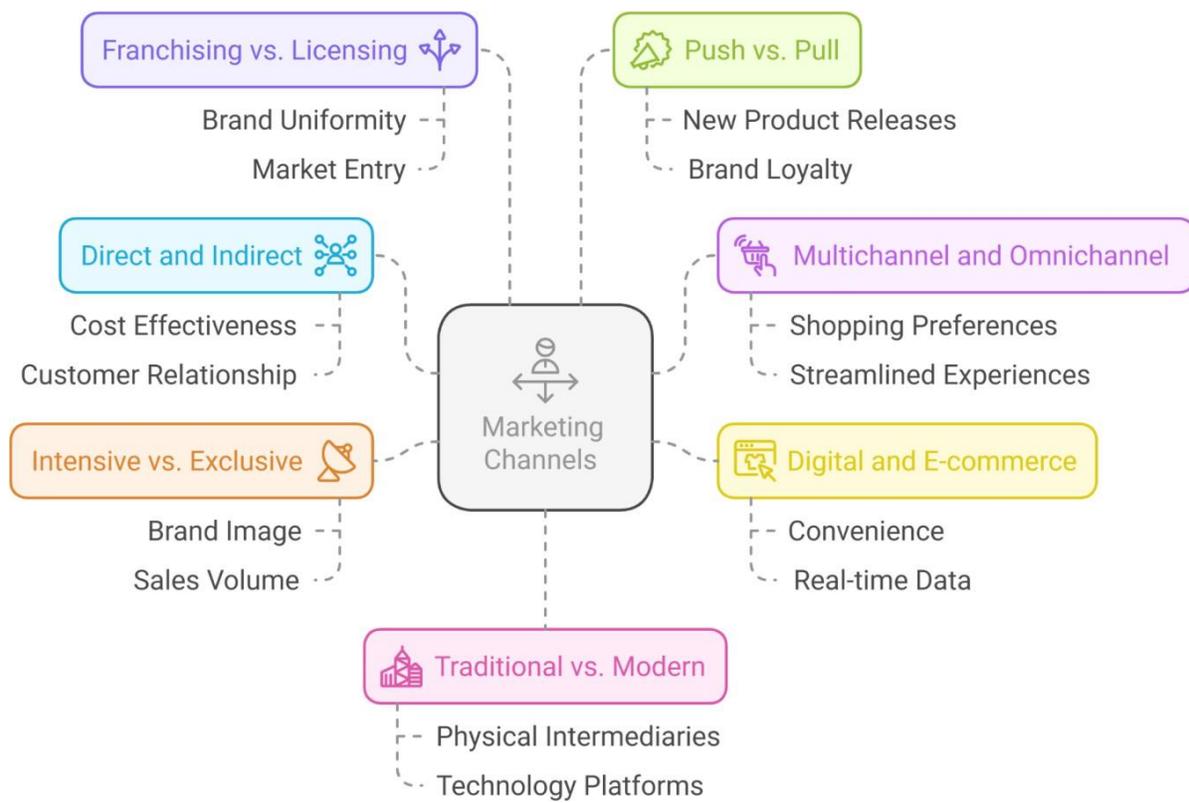
Fig 7.2 Marketing Channels

1. Direct and Indirect Marketing Channels

Marketing channels are generally classified as direct or indirect based on the number of intermediaries involved in the distribution process. The decision between them relies on factors like cost-effectiveness, customer relationship management, and market coverage.

Direct Marketing Channels: Under this strategy, companies sell the products directly to the customers without intermediaries and provide them with more control over the price, brand, and customer experience. It is suitable for companies that require strong customer relationships and higher margins.

Example: Warby Parker, an eyewear company, uses a direct-to-consumer (DTC) channel through its web page and stand-alone stores without third-party retailers and provides bespoke virtual try-ons to improve the customer experience.

Indirect Marketing Channels – These include the use of middlemen like wholesalers, retailers, or agents in distributing products to consumers. As much as it widens the market coverage, it also creates higher costs and reduced control over pricing and branding.

Example: Nestlé sells its food and beverage products through a wide network of supermarkets, convenience stores, and third-party online retailers, achieving wide market coverage while depending on intermediaries for logistics and retailing.

2. Multichannel and Omnichannel Strategies

With changing consumer behaviour, companies implement more sophisticated distribution models that engage multiple touchpoints to facilitate greater accessibility and convenience for customers. Multichannel and omnichannel approaches enable brands to respond to various shopping preferences and offer streamlined experiences.

Multichannel Marketing Strategy – Multichannel marketing involves selling products through multiple channels, such as physical stores, websites, and third-party platforms, though these channels may not be fully integrated While customers may shop as they please, the channel experience continues to be discrete.

Example: Adidas is retailed by the company on its official website, premium brand stores, sports shops such as Decathlon, and third-party online platforms such as Amazon, and so on so that customers can buy through several platforms without any integration of channels.

Omnichannel Marketing Strategy – Omnichannel marketing ensures a seamless and integrated shopping experience across all sales channels, allowing customers to switch between online and offline touchpoints effortlessly. Customers may easily move between online and offline channels without losing the same personalized experience.

Example: Sephora's omnichannel approach makes it possible for customers to navigate products online, verify availability at stores, and utilize a smartphone app for suggestions, all delivered in a harmonized shopping experience across platforms.

Did You Know?

"A Nielsen study discovered that more than 60% of shoppers prefer brands with a seamless omnichannel experience, which demonstrates the increasing relevance of combining push and pull approaches in a unified manner to ensure maximum customer engagement and sales."

3. Emerging Digital and E-commerce Platforms

With technological developments, digital and e-commerce platforms have transformed marketing channels, presenting businesses with new means of interacting with customers and simplifying distribution. These channels offer convenience, customization, and real-time data analysis to maximize sales performance.

Social Commerce and Influencer Marketing – Brands use social media sites such as Instagram, TikTok, and Facebook to sell directly through in-app shopping capabilities and influencer partnerships. This approach sparks engagement and impulse purchases.

Example: Kylie Cosmetics utilizes Instagram Shopping and TikTok influencers to market and sell beauty products directly via social media, dramatically growing online sales and brand awareness.

Subscription-Based E-commerce – Businesses take on subscription strategies to deliver recurring products to customers, driving customer retention and loyalty. These are particularly prevalent in the food, beauty, and personal care sectors.

Example: Dollar Shave Club has a subscription-based business for grooming products where customers receive customized razor and shaving kits at fixed intervals for ease and constant sales.

Direct-to-Consumer (DTC) E-commerce – Many brands cut out traditional retail channels and sell directly to customers through their websites, reducing reliance on third-party platforms while strengthening customer relationships.

Example: Tesla uses a direct-to-consumer model by selling vehicles solely through its website and company-owned stores, eliminating dealership markups and which offers a streamlined purchasing process.

4. Intensive vs. Exclusive Distribution

Exclusive Distribution – A practice where companies restrict the sale of their products to chosen retailers or company-owned stores, fostering the perception of exclusivity and brand elitism. Exclusive distribution facilitates control over brand image, pricing, and customer experience.

Example: Rolex distributes its high-end watches exclusively through approved dealers and brand stores, upholding its premium image and prestige while guaranteeing a superior customer experience.

Intensive Distribution – A distribution strategy in which products are made widely available in various retailers and selling points to achieve maximum reach and volume of sales. This is a popular approach for fast-moving consumer goods (FMCG) to guarantee maximum availability.

Example: Coca-Cola adopts an aggressive distribution strategy by making its drinks accessible in supermarkets, vending machines, restaurants, and convenience stores across the globe, solidifying its market leadership.

5. Franchising vs. Licensing

Franchising – A business model whereby firms permit groups or individuals to run branded stores under strict operational instructions while gaining continuous support and marketing help. This approach helps in quick expansion while ensuring quality and brand uniformity.

Example: McDonald's is internationalized via franchising, where independent operators operate units under company brand and service standards, providing the same customer experience in all locations.

Licensing – A channel of distribution wherein a firm extends rights to another party to produce or distribute its product under its brand name with minimal operational control. Licensing is usually utilized for brand extensions and entering new markets with minimal capital investment.

Example: Disney licenses its brand and characters for merchandise manufacturing, where third-party makers can produce and sell Disney-themed clothing and toys, growing its influence on the brand while decreasing production risk.

6. Push vs. Pull Marketing Channels

Push Strategy – A push strategy involves businesses actively promoting products to intermediaries (retailers, wholesalers) through trade promotions, direct sales, and in-store marketing to encourage stocking and sales. It works best for new product releases and companies in niches like retail, auto, and grocery where brand awareness must be established.

Example: Pfizer applies push strategies by providing incentives to physicians and pharmacists to prescribe their drugs to patients, making prescriptions skew toward their products instead of competitors.

Pull Strategy –A pull strategy focuses on creating consumer demand through advertising, brand reputation, and product differentiation, encouraging customers to seek out products from retailers or online stores. This strategy performs optimally when brand loyalty and product differentiation are significant influences.

Example: Apple adopts a pull strategy by creating brand awareness and product hype with highly publicized launch events, prompting customers to look for its newest products, resulting in long lines and pre-orders globally.

7. Traditional vs. Modern Distribution Channels

Traditional Distribution Channels – These involve physical intermediaries such as wholesalers, distributors, and retailers to deliver products from manufacturers to customers. They are best for mature industries with well-developed supply chains.

Example: Procter & Gamble (P&G) sells household and personal care products globally through traditional chain stores like Walmart and Target to make them widely accessible.

New Distribution Channels – These employ technology-driven platforms like e-commerce, online marketplaces, and direct-to-consumer sales to simplify supply chains and increase efficiency.

Example: Casper, the mattress firm, disrupted distribution by selling to consumers through its website, bypassing middleman furniture retailers and reducing costs.

Marketing channel selection is a critical factor in the success of a company by influencing accessibility, customer interaction, and profitability. Firms must consider market trends, customer behaviour, and technological advancements with care to leverage distribution channels to the fullest. Through direct, indirect, multichannel, or emerging digital channels, firms that align marketing channels with customer requirements gain a competitive advantage, ensuring long-term growth and sustainability.

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Weinberg, L. (2023, September 12). Peloton's comeback marketing plan: Less bike, fewer promotions, more men. The Wall Street Journal

Choose the correct option:

1. Which of the following is a key difference between direct and indirect marketing channels?

   A) Direct channels involve intermediaries, while indirect channels do not

   B) Direct channels provide businesses with more control over pricing and customer experience

   C) Indirect channels allow businesses to eliminate distribution costs

2. What is a key characteristic of an omnichannel marketing strategy?

   A) Selling through multiple channels without integration

   B) Providing a seamless shopping experience across all channels

   C) Using only digital platforms for sales

3. How does intensive distribution differ from exclusive distribution?

   A) Intensive distribution focuses on making products available widely, while exclusive distribution limits availability to select retailers

   B) Exclusive distribution is used for FMCG products, whereas intensive distribution is for luxury goods

   C) Intensive distribution involves higher pricing control compared to exclusive distribution

7.3 Marketing Logistics and Supply Chain Management

7.3.1 Place (Distribution) and its Role in Marketing Mix

The "Place" component of the marketing mix is concerned with the effectiveness with which products and services come into contact with consumers. It involves the selection of proper channels, handling by logistics, and guarantee of availability wherever there is demand. Firms must find a balance between cost, speed, and accessibility to better meet customers' needs. A channel of distribution may be described as the backbone of the supply chain within a firm. Distribution channels enable products to reach customers effectively, grow businesses, and streamline logistics to achieve customer satisfaction.
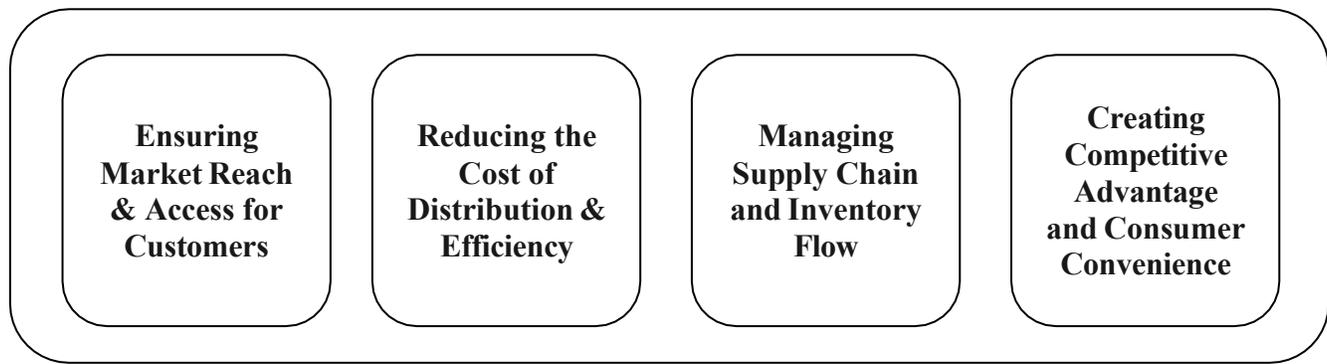
Ensuring Market Reach & Access for Customers	Reducing the Cost of Distribution & Efficiency	Managing Supply Chain and Inventory Flow	Creating Competitive Advantage and Consumer Convenience

Fig 7.3 Place in Marketing Mix

Role of Distribution Channels

a. Ensuring Market Reach & Access for Customers: Distribution channels help businesses expand their market reach, including remote and less affluent regions. With wholesalers, retailers, and online platforms, companies ensure customers can access the products at whatever time and wherever they need them. An effective distribution network, therefore, enhances market coverage and enhances brand visibility.

Example: Dabur, FMCG leader, has a multi-level distribution setup that covers not just urban retail supermarkets but even rural Kirana shops. Social commerce platform Meesho connects small sellers and buyers through a platform, thereby enabling easier availability of products.

b. Lowering Distribution Cost & Efficiency: Companies utilize middlemen like wholesalers and distributors to reduce the total cost of storage and logistics. Firms can devote more time to core activities such as marketing and research and development than to intermediate activities such as distribution and inventory management. Furthermore, efficient distribution minimizes costs in general and maintains prices competitive.

Example: Country Delight is a new dairy and grocery delivery brand with no middlemen; it delivers directly from farms to consumers through an app-based subscription model, cost-saving and freshness. Udaan is a B2B e-commerce platform that links retailers and small businesses with manufacturers, eliminating traditional distribution costs.

c. Managing Supply Chain and Inventory Flow: A proper distribution system ensures a smooth flow of inventory so that there are no shortages or unnecessary stock building. Companies focus on precise logistics through technology as well as warehouse management to ensure adequate stocks and timely delivery. Effective supply chain management is associated with greater reliability and operational efficiency.

Example: Zudio, Tata's value fashion brand, has an agile supply chain that enables the stores to restock trendy collections as frequently as possible. Logistics startup Shadowfax offers last-mile delivery solutions to enhance delivery speed and efficiency for e-commerce businesses.

d. Creating Competitive Advantage and Consumer Convenience: A strategic distribution model offers more purchase options for customers, including retail stores, e-commerce, and home delivery. The smooth shopping experience from businesses creates an edge and further strengthens customer relationships.

*Example:*D2C coffee brand **Sleepy Owl** differentiates itself by selling through online platforms and quick-commerce apps like Zepto, thereby ensuring that fresh coffee reaches the customers at their convenience.

> **Did You Know?**
>
> "Research by PwC indicates that 65% of consumers consider fast and reliable delivery as a key factor in their purchasing decisions, making efficient distribution channels a crucial element of a company's competitive

7.3.2 Marketing Logistics and Supply Chain Management

Marketing logistics and supply chain management are essential in streamlining products from producers to customers in an efficient and cost-friendly manner while ensuring customer satisfaction. Logistics management requires synchronizing transportation, storage, inventory management, and order processing to streamline business operations. In the competitive environment of today, businesses need to achieve speed, reliability, and sustainability in their supply chain initiatives to satisfy changing consumer demands and compliance rules.

(I) Nature of Marketing Logistics

Marketing logistics is the process of planning, executing, and controlling the flow of goods from production to consumption at optimal cost. It ensures that the products reach the customer's destination at the right time, place, and condition at an optimum cost and with optimum resources. An efficient logistics system is highly important for business profitability and customer satisfaction.

1. Smooth Delivery and Transportation: Logistics marketing provides uninterrupted movement of goods from production centres to warehouses, hubs, and final consumers. One must make the optimal choices of

conveyances like road, railway, air, or water transport so that it makes the journey fastest while cost-effective enough. Route navigation in real-time and optimizing pathways also improves efficiency by reducing delays

Example: Flipkart, a market leader in e-commerce, leverages sophisticated logistics infrastructure with standalone fulfilment centres and last-mile delivery partners to facilitate on-time deliveries pan-India, enhance customer satisfaction and minimize order cancellations.

2. Inventory Management and Warehousing: Precise inventory management avoids stockouts and overstocking, providing a consistent supply of products while keeping holding costs to a minimum. Warehouses also contribute by strategically holding goods to minimize transit time and maximize the efficiency of distribution. Automation and artificial intelligence-based forecasting have further enhanced the accuracy of inventory.

Example: IKEA maintains a just-in-time inventory system that equates supply to demand, cutting storage costs and allowing customers to access the correct products provided at their local store.

3. Technology-Led Logistics Operations: The role of technology within logistics, i.e., the use of technology like AI, IoT, and blockchain, has improved supply chain visibility, productivity, and safety. Intelligent management of warehouses and predictive analytics increase order fulfillment optimally and strengthen logistics operations. Analytics also aid companies with rational logistics decision-making.

Example: DHL employs AI-based logistics software to forecast fluctuations in demand, delivery routes, and enhance operating efficiency throughout its worldwide supply chain.

4. Global Supply Chain Integration: Cross-border companies need a proper logistics network to organize cross-border transportation, compliance with trade regulations, and customs clearance. International logistics networks enable the hassle-free delivery of products across multiple regions with continuous supply chains.

Example: Fast fashion retailer *Zara* operates a responsive global supply chain with central nodes of distribution and real-time inventory monitoring so that it can replenish stores all over the globe within no time.

5. Green Logistics and Sustainability: Green logistics has gained a lot of attention in recent years, with organizations embracing green packaging, fuel-efficient transport, and carbon reduction initiatives. Green logistics not only maintains business in compliance with the law but also boosts brand image and attracts ecologically aware customers.

Example: *FedEx* has set a goal of carbon-neutral operations by 2040, investing in electric delivery trucks and alternative fuel technologies to minimize environmental footprint.

(II) Significance of Marketing Logistics

Marketing logistics is a key process that allows businesses to satisfy customers' needs at competitive prices. An efficient logistics strategy reinforces operational efficiency, facilitates business growth, and fosters long-term success.

1. Improving Customer Satisfaction: Quick, efficient, and economical delivery services directly contribute to customer satisfaction and brand loyalty. Companies that can optimize logistics can offer next-day or same-day delivery, keeping consumer expectations for speed and convenience satisfied. Tailor-made delivery solutions also enhance the shopping experience.

Example: The one-day delivery by *Amazon Prime* has grown significantly the customers' retention and satisfaction and reinforced the latter as the leader in e-commerce logistics.

2. Decreasing Expenses and Enhancing Margins of Profit: Well-designed logistics assist companies in reducing transportation, warehousing, and inventory expenses while increasing efficiency. Logistics cost savings are reflected in improved pricing and increased profit margins. Advanced supply chain analytics also play a role in cost optimization.

Example: *Walmart* employs a sophisticated supply chain management system with data analytics and automation for optimizing inventories, minimizing waste, and decreasing operating expenses.

3. Supporting Business Expansion and Market Reach: Effective logistics enable companies to open up more operations and tap new markets with minimal disruption of the supply chain. Through an effective distribution system, companies can widen their customer base and deliver goods on time within different regions.

Example: *Tesla* has expanded its market by opening strategically positioned Gigafactories and direct selling distribution centres to facilitate seamless shipping of electric vehicles globally.

4. Creating Competitive Advantage: A firm with an effective logistics strategy can outperform rivals by providing quicker, more efficient, and lower-cost product delivery. Effective logistics create differentiation in the market and develop a positive brand image.

Example: Domino's Pizza employs a high-tech GPS-tracked delivery monitoring system that provides customers with real-time delivery status updates so they can experience seamless order execution as well as have a competitive edge over neighborhood pizza stores.

5. Ensuring Business Continuity and Risk Management: Logistics planning assists organizations in being able to forecast supply chain interruption, demand fluctuations, and unexpected risks like natural disasters or geopolitical factors. An adaptive logistics system guarantees business continuity through supply source diversification and contingency planning.

Example: Unilever has a robust multi-supplier policy to limit risk in the supply chain so that output and availability of goods do not happen to be caught up in international crises.

Logistics marketing is pivotal in ensuring the free movement of goods, keeping costs in check, and making customers happy. Well-structured logistics enable supply chain functions, enhance market coverage, and establish competitive advantage. Innovative formation of logistics plans drives long-term business prosperity and success.

7.3.3 Sustainable Supply Chains

Green supply chains emphasize incorporating of environmental and social responsibility measures in distribution and logistics. Business enterprises are implementing environmentally friendly practices for reducing carbon emissions, and waste reduction, and enhancing long-term efficiency. Logistics optimization, ethical use of materials, and green warehousing are all practices through which businesses improve profitability and guarantee environmental safety.
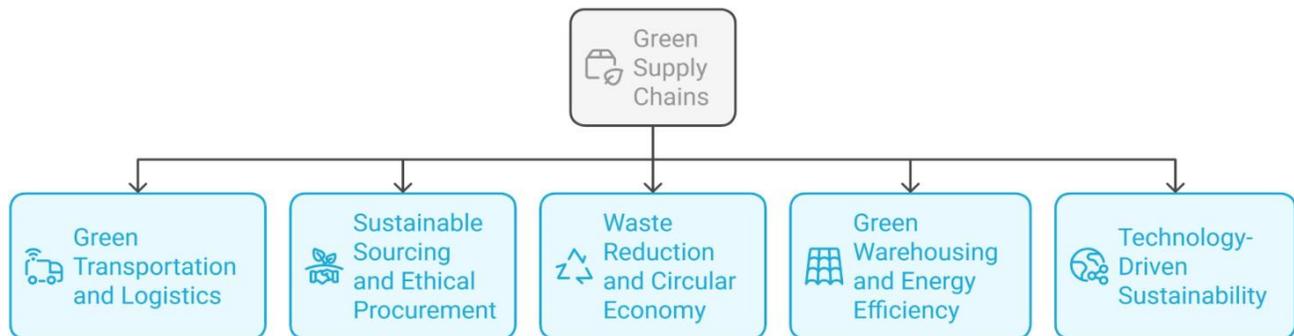

Fig 7.4 Key Aspects of Sustainable Supply Chains

Key Aspects of Sustainable Supply Chains

1. Green Transportation and Logistics: Companies are shifting to low-emissions forms of transportation such as electric freight vans, route planning, and freight consolidation to reduce fuel consumption and environmental impact. More sustainable investments in logistics can reduce carbon footprint and improve efficiency while reducing them for companies.

Example: Zomato launched an all-electric food delivery fleet in some cities to lower its carbon footprint and make urban logistics sustainable.

2. Sustainable Sourcing and Ethical Procurement: Sustainable supply chains put greater stress on sustainable sourcing of raw materials, decent work, and non-renewable material use minimum. Organisations deal with suppliers who are involved in ethical production and sustainable material acquisition.

Example: FabIndia, a fashion company, sources green materials such as organic cotton and recycled polyester with good labour practices in its supply chain.

3. Waste Reduction and Circular Economy Practices: Companies are embracing a circular economy strategy by minimizing packaging waste, facilitating recyclability, and reusing products to maximize product life cycles. Waste reduction plans save costs and support international sustainability agendas.

Example: The Body Shop has a packaging return scheme, inviting customers to bring back used containers to be recycled and minimize plastic waste in its value chain.

4. Green Warehousing and Energy Efficiency: Businesses maximize their storage warehouses using energy-efficient lights, solar panels, and automated inventory management systems to minimize wastage and energy bills. They aid in sustainability and warehouse optimization.

Example: Flipkart installed solar-powered fulfilment centres and energy-saving cooling solutions to minimize the operational energy load.

5. Sustainable Packaging Solutions: Companies are substituting single-use plastics with biodegradable, compostable, and reusable packaging alternatives. Sustainable packaging minimizes environmental pollution and promotes brand image.

Example: Lush Cosmetics employs compostable and naked packaging, avoiding plastic waste and supporting sustainable consumption.

6. Technology-Driven Sustainability in Supply Chains: The use of AI, blockchain, and IoT in logistics allows for carbon footprint monitoring, route optimization, and traceability in green sourcing. All these technologies increase efficiency and induce eco-friendly practices.

Example: Maersk uses blockchain to track and optimize cargo shipping routes, minimizing unnecessary fuel use and increasing the transparency of supply chains.

Green supply chains are essential in reducing environmental impact, improving operational efficiency, and increasing corporate responsibility. Companies adopting green logistics, ethical procurement, and technology-based innovation-based sustainability attain sustainable competitive advantages. Through iterative supply chain practice improvements, companies contribute to building a sustainable and resilient global economy.

7.3.4 Major Logistics Functions

Logistics operations are the cornerstones of efficient supply chain management, ensuring the unimpeded flow of goods from production to consumption. Firms have to coordinate various logistical aspects, such as transportation, warehousing, inventory management, and order fulfilment, to maximize efficiency and customer satisfaction. Proper logistics management reduces costs, minimizes delays, and improves overall supply chain performance.

1. Transportation Management: Effective transportation systems promote timely and cost-effective delivery of goods with minimal impact on the environment. Companies opt for different transport mediums—road, rail, air, and sea-based on cost, speed, and the type of goods. Contemporary logistics provides real-time tracking and route optimization to enhance delivery effectiveness.

Example: DTDC, one of India's premier courier services, leverages AI-powered route planning to optimize last-mile delivery, decreasing transit time for e-commerce and B2B shipments and increasing customer satisfaction.

2. Storage and Warehousing: Warehouses are a critical element of goods storage prior to distribution, ensuring demand meets supply. Businesses use strategically located warehouses to save on transport costs and to reduce delivery time. Automated warehouse management systems (WMS) assist in streamlining the tracking of inventory, handling orders, and space utilization.

Example: Reliance Retail has established regional distribution centres in India to stock and ship products at an efficient rate so that stores and e-commerce orders are replenished promptly.

3. Inventory Management: Effective inventory management avoids overstocking and stockouts by achieving a demand-supply balance. Organizations apply just-in-time (JIT) practices, demand forecasting, and automated replenishment systems to keep inventory efficiently.

Example: India's largest beauty retailer,*Nykaa,* employs AI-powered inventory management to forecast demand for products and regulate stock levels so that shortfalls are avoided at times of peak sales such as festive seasons.

4. Order Fulfillment and Processing: Order fulfilment is the activity of selecting, packing, and shipping customers' orders timely. Companies integrate automation, robots, and cloud technology to boost order fulfilment to enable faster deliveries.

*Example: Lenskart*has mechanized order processing in its warehouses and factories, allowing for quick dispatch of customized eyewear products with less error and lead time.

5. Reverse Logistics and Returns Handling: Returns, repair, and recycling handling is of utmost significance for satisfaction and sustainability. Industry relies on effective return policies and refurbishment processes to reduce losses and enhance customer confidence.

Example: India's electronics retail chain, *Croma*, has a smooth reverse logistics process in warranty-based repair and returns, which effectively addresses customer complaints while retaining resale value.

Major logistics operations provide seamless product movement across the supply chain, reducing costs and enhancing service quality. Companies that incorporate advanced technologies and logistics practices possess a competitive edge in efficiency and customer satisfaction.

> **Activity: Evaluating a High-Profile Company's Supply Chain Strategy**
>
> Choose a well-known, reliable company with excellent supply chain management, such as Nike, Reliance Retail, or Maersk. Assess how the company structures its supply chain, i.e., supplier networks, logistics operations, and inventory management. Reflect on the adoption of technology, automation, and data analysis to increase efficiency and reduce costs. Assess how the company optimizes cost control over speed and sustainability with the level of product availability. Recognize key issues such as volatile demand, global supply disruption, or environmental concerns. Suggest strategic measures such as blockchain for transparency, AI-driven demand forecasting, or local warehousing to boost efficiency. Finally, evaluate how these improvements contribute to the company's market position, customer satisfaction, and long-term growth.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. What is one of the primary goals of transportation management in logistics?
    A) To make transportation more expensive for premium product placement
    B) To transport goods in a timely and economical manner through supply chains
    C) To restrict product distribution to only a few markets

2. How does effective inventory management help businesses?
    A) By raising inventories to provide maximum product availability at all times
    B) By matching demand and supply so that there are no overstocks or stockouts
    C) By doing away with warehousing requirements by way of direct shipments alone

3. What is the function of reverse logistics in supply chain management?
    A) Managing product returns, repairs, and recycling for customer happiness and sustainability
    B) Avoiding customers' return of faulty products to cut costs
    C) Simply concentrating on reducing outbound shipping expenses for new products

7.4 Summary

❖ Effective marketing channels create timely availability of products, making them more accessible and covered by the market via optimized distribution networks.

❖ Organizations employ direct, indirect, multichannel, and omnichannel approaches to provide frictionless purchasing experiences from different consumer touchpoints.

❖ Logistics optimization speeds up the movement of inventory, warehousing, and transport at lower costs and delays through AI-driven monitoring and automated measures.

❖ Strategic alliances with distributors, retailers, and carriers fortify supply chains, providing efficient product placement and market access.

❖ Supply chain sustainability includes ethical sourcing, green logistics, and carbon reduction, enhancing brand reputation and regulatory compliance.

❖ Distribution influences price strategies through margins and cost savings at the channels, with firms adopting dynamic pricing and bundling to profit.

❖ Digitalization of distribution utilizes AI, blockchain, and IoT to enhance visibility in supply chains, predict demand, and automate logistics.

7.5 Key Terms

1. **Market Accessibility:** Efficient distribution networks provide assurance that products get to the intended customers at the right time, increasing availability and stretching buyers' access to different geographical areas. Businesses optimize distribution systems in order to achieve efficiency, cost, and responsiveness to demand.

2. **Channel Integration:** Direct, indirect, multichannel, and omnichannel channels are used by businesses to provide easy purchasing experiences. Channel architecture integration maximizes customer convenience and imposes brand presence on digital and physical touchpoints.

3. **Logistics Optimization:** Effective marketing logistics target the shipping of inventories, warehouses, and transport to avoid delays and reduce expenses. These future-proof AI-tracking and automated warehouse technologies are supply chain-efficient.

4. **Strategic Partnerships:** Realignment among distributor, retailer, and third-party logistics provider strengthens supply chains. Efficient partnerships put products in lead-selling positions and achieve maximum market coverage.

5. **Sustainability Initiatives:** Modern supply chains embrace green practices in the context of sustainable sourcing, ethical procurement, and carbon reduction. These measures improve brand reputation and regulatory and consumer compliance.

6. **Cost and Pricing Strategies:** Distribution decisions drive product price by means of cost reduction and channel margin. Companies utilize strategies like dynamic pricing, bundling, and captive pricing to maintain profitability while serving different market segments.

7. **Technology-Driven Distribution:** Digital transformation in distribution channels makes use of AI, blockchain, and IoT to improve transparency, forecast demand, and simplify logistics. Digital marketplaces and e-commerce also reconfigure the classical distribution frameworks.

7.6 Descriptive Questions

1. How do marketing channels help a company reach customers, and what is the role of distribution in growing market presence?

2. Compare direct and indirect marketing channels, and explain their strengths and weaknesses in various business models.

3. Describe how omnichannel strategies improve customer experience and outline the challenges facing businesses when integrating several sales channels.

4. How does supply chain management affect marketing logistics, and how do firms maximize efficiency in the distribution of products?

5. Discuss the importance of strategic alliances in supply chains, and give examples of how collaboration enhances market penetration.

6. What is the role of sustainability in contemporary supply chains, and how do firms adopt environmentally friendly logistics solutions?

7. How are pricing strategies coordinated with distribution decisions, and why is it necessary to balance cost-effectiveness with competitive positioning?

8. Assess how digitalization and new technologies redefine traditional marketing channels and supply chain operations.

7.7 References

1. "Marketing Management" by Philip Kotler and Kevin Lane Keller

2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by Philip Kotler, HermawanKartajaya, and Iwan Setiawan

3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by Michael Porter

4. Consumer Behaviour by Schiffman 12th Edition

5. Marketing Warfare by Jack Trout and Al Ries

6. "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by Michael R. Solomon

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1. 1B) To ensure timely and cost-effective movement of goods across supply chains
2. By balancing demand and supply to avoid overstocking or stockouts
3. To manage product returns, repairs, and recycling for customer satisfaction and sustainability

Knowledge Check 2

1: B) Direct channels provide businesses with more control over pricing and customer experience

2: B) Providing a seamless shopping experience across all channels

3: distribution limits availability to select retailers

7.8 Case Study

Optimizing Distribution Strategies for Market Growth

Introduction

An effective distribution strategy ensures that products are delivered to the target customers cost-effectively. Effective channel management increases market penetration, enhances brand coverage, and deepens customer relationships. Amul, India's number one dairy brand, needed to optimize its distribution network to cater to increasing consumer demand, especially in urban and rural India. This case study examines how Amul enhanced its supply chain and distribution strategy to improve accessibility, simplify logistics, and increase profitability.

Background

Amul, being a dairy products company, has a large supply chain model with milk being sourced from millions of farmers and delivered to every nook and corner of India. Although the brand had a strong foothold in urban markets, its penetration in semi-urban and rural areas was patchy. Also, inefficiencies in last-mile delivery and unavailability of stocks at retail outlets impacted customer satisfaction and sales.

Problem 1: Unstable Market Coverage and Supply Chain Constraints

Amul's wide distribution network struggled with consistent product availability in urban, semi-urban, and rural markets. Inadequate cold storage facilities and poor supply chain coordination resulted in regular stockouts in some areas. This caused customer demand to be unstable, and sales became irregular due to inconsistent product availability. The company had to optimize its distribution model to increase reach and provide consistent supply of dairy products.

Solution:

- Deepened rural penetration by joining forces with local suppliers and cooperative organizations for ensuring stock coverage.
- Increased cold storage warehouses and efficient logistics to preserve freshness and prevent wastage.
- Deployed digital tracking systems to track supply chain performance and maximize inventory optimization.

Problem 2: Excessive Logistics Costs and Inefficiencies

The use of several intermediaries and inefficient supply routes greatly added to Amul's cost of operations. Perishable dairy items needed specialized cold chain logistics, but transportation delays caused product wastage and spoilage. Moreover, increased logistical costs also meant higher product prices, which made affordability a problem for certain customer segments. Amul required an affordable distribution system to enhance efficiency and eliminate unnecessary costs.

Solution:

- Instituted a hub-and-spoke distribution system to minimize transportation and lower delivery time.
- Increased investment in company-owned refrigerated trucks to enhance efficiency and reduce reliance on third-party logistics.
- Negotiated bulk freight deals to minimize cost of freight and enhance cost savings.

Problem 3: Meager E-commerce and Direct-to-Consumer Outreach

As online shopping gained popularity, consumer behavior turned towards online grocery shopping, but Amul did not have a robust e-commerce presence. The lack of a direct-to-consumer (D2C) model limited access to tech-savvy urban consumers who opted for home delivery. This hindered the brand from leveraging the rapidly expanding online grocery market, limiting potential revenue streams. Amul had to make its digital distribution strategy more robust to remain competitive and increase its reach.

Solution:

- Partnered with online shopping sites such as BigBasket and Amazon Fresh to increase online sales.
- Introduced its own Amul Dairy app to provide direct-to-consumer delivery in certain cities.
- Started subscription-based milk delivery services for recurrent customers to establish brand loyalty and consistent revenue.

Reflective Questions

1. How did Amul enhance its rural distribution system to expand market coverage?

2. What were Amul's most significant inefficiencies in logistics and how were they corrected?

3. How has Amul's entry into e-commerce platforms affected its sales and customer base?

Conclusion

Amul effectively optimized its distribution strategy through the consolidation of rural supply chains, elimination of logistical inefficiencies, and strengthening of digital channels. Technology-enabled logistics, strategic alliances, and direct-to-consumer strategies helped the brand penetrate markets more intensely and improve customer satisfaction. Amul needs to keep innovating in its distribution strategy in the future to be at the top of the dairy industry and adapt to changing

Unit 8: Promotion Mix

Learning Objectives

1. Learners will learn about the promotion mix concept and its importance, delving into its application in contemporary marketing practices.
2. Learners will compare various promotional means, such as advertising, public relations, personal selling, and sales promotion, to determine their effectiveness.
3. Learners will assess how consumer interactions and company success have been shaped by direct marketing and online marketing and consider prominent advantages to sellers and customers.
4. Learners will examinereal-life applications of certain promotional techniques and observe how businessesuse them to achieve marketing objectives.

Content

8.0 Introductory Caselet

Expanding Market Reach through the Promotion Mix

Amit Khanna, the owner of Khanna Handicrafts, was a master in high-quality, handmade home furnishing products. Although his brand was well-liked locally, national and international sales were dismal even with growing demand for handcrafted products. Amit was confident about the quality of his products, but his promotion strategies were not creating a strong brand image.

One of the greatest problems was that he did not have a structured promotion mix. His promotion was word-of-mouth and print media advertising alone, whereas others made use of digital marketing, influencer marketing, and sales promotions via e-commerce. Public relations were minimal, and personal selling was via exhibitions. Additionally, price promotion via discounts was not available, thus inducing first-time buying was impossible. Amit also struggled with direct and internet marketing efforts, since his website was not very visible and there was minimal customer engagement on social media.

In response to all these challenges, Amit overhauled his promotional mix strategy. He spent resources on social media advertising, collaborated with design influencers, and used email marketing to make targeted offers. Seasonal offers and one-benefit online offers were utilized to attract new customers. Public relations involved creating media publicity within home design magazines, while personal selling was bolstered through the establishment of special pop-up shops. All of these collectively generated brand visibility, increased online sales, and helped build customer trust.

Critical Thinking Question

How are firms such as Khanna Handicrafts able to optimize a strategic promotion mix to attain widespread coverage without diluting the high-end positioning of their brand?

8.1 The Promotion Mix

The promotion mix is a strategic combination of selling instruments used to reach potential customers and influence their purchasing behaviour. It plays a vital role in creating brand recognition, shaping customer attitudes, and driving sales. Companies use an ideally balanced mix to gain a formidable market presence and a competitive edge. A well-structured promotion mix helps businesses reach the intended target through different media, ensuring maximum interaction and conversion.

8.1.1 Definition and Key Elements

Promotion mix is the combination of specific marketing tools that businesses employ in order to speak effectively to customers, presenting the correct message at the correct time to create impact on buying behaviors. An appropriate mix of promotion is what ensures a company's well-placed brands, effective contacts with the customers, and an enduring relationship. Even well-designed products will not gain attention or attract buyers without an effective promotion mix

For example, a start-up releasing a new energy beverage may utilize a combination of influencer advertising, point-of-purchase sampling, and online adverts to generate attention and build brand awareness.
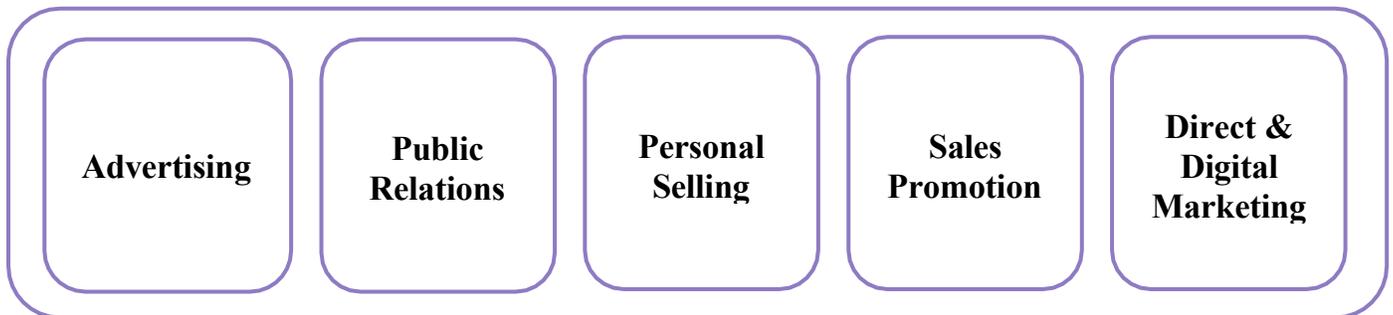

| Advertising | Public Relations | Personal Selling | Sales Promotion | Direct & Digital Marketing |

Fig 8.1 Major Elements of the Promotion Mix

Major Elements of the Promotion Mix

1. Advertising: A paid promotional tool that reaches a mass audience using channels such as television, online media, newspapers, and billboards. It facilitates brand recall, shaping customer perception, and generating mass-market appeal. Companies need to choose the appropriate channels depending on their target audiences to maximize reach and influence.

Example: A luxury perfume brand launches an emotional storytelling advertising campaign on YouTube and magazines to create an aspirational brand identity.

2. Public Relations: The act of shaping a firm's reputation and instilling trust using unpaid media coverage, press announcements, sponsorships, and corporate social responsibility programs. PR builds credibility and helps build favorable relations with customers, investors, and the public. Unlike advertising, it relies on earned media, making it more cost-effective but harder to control.

Example: A plant-based nutrition startup is featured in a health magazine, gaining credibility and appealing to health-focused consumers.

3. Personal Selling: A face-to-face, direct sales method that enables companies to clarify product benefits, respond to customer queries, and foster relationships. It works best with high-involvement products where face-to-face interaction enhances customer assurance. While expensive and time-consuming, personal selling enhances conversion rates through tailored solutions.

Example: An upscale jewellery company employs trained consultants at its main stores to navigate customers through design options and buying decisions.

4. Sales Promotion: Temporary inducements that drive short-term sales and lure new buyers. Promotional methods like discounts, coupons, free samples, and buy-one-get-one-free offer inducement create a sense of urgency, driving demand. However, excessive reliance on promotions can reduce perceived brand value and erode profit margins over time.

Example: A coffeehouse chain has special "Happy Hour" price promotions for a limited time to increase traffic during off-peak periods and stimulate repeat purchases.

5. Direct and Digital Marketing: Targeted and data-fueled marketing strategies that communicate with customers by way of email, social networks, search engine advertising, and mobile applications. In contrast to conventional methods, direct and digital marketing enables pinpoint targeting, real-time response, and low-cost campaign delivery. It allows businesses to build long-term relationships by using compelling and personalized messages.

Example: A gym membership program uses AI-driven email marketing to suggest exercise programs for a user's desired level of fitness, driving retention and participation.

8.1.2 Importance of the Promotion Mix

The promotion mix is a critical element in shaping consumers' attitudes, inducing sales, and creating business success. The promotion mix helps organizations effectively convey their value proposition, differentiate themselves from rivals, and reflect a good brand image in the market. The promotion mix raises customers' engagement, trust, and buying intent. Without a promotion strategy, even the best products are likely to struggle to get off the ground and reach their full potential in the market.

Did You Know?

" Brands using an integrated promotion mix see 23% higher revenue than those relying on a single method, proving the impact of a well-coordinated strategy."

Significance of the Promotion Mix

1. Increases Brand Awareness: Effective planning of a promotion mix ensures that the message of a brand reaches the desired market through various mediums, increasing recognition. Effective promotions ensure that companies create a personal identity in the market where their products are remembered.

Example: An electric vehicle company markets itself by sponsoring environmental events and conducting online campaigns in a bid to brand itself as a green option to traditional vehicles.

2. Influences Consumer Choice: Promotional activities alert consumers to the benefits of the product, and this makes them buy. An effectively designed mix communicates customer requirements, builds trust, andreduces hesitation hesitation, leading to higher conversion rates.

Example: A computer firm performs in-store demonstrations and social media video advertisements explaining product features to assist consumers in making an informed decision.

3. Fosters Customer Relationships: Promotion techniques like personal selling, public relations, and social media interaction allow businesses to establish long-term relationships with consumers. Businesses establish firm relationships that lead to repeat purchasing through continued interaction.

Example: A clothing brand reaches current customers via loyalty schemes and email marketing directly to retain their business and generate repeat purchases.

4. Drives Sales and Revenue Growth: Promotion techniques like personal selling, public relations, and social media interaction allow businesses to establish long-term relationships with consumers. Businesses establish firm relationships that lead to repeat purchasing through continued interaction.

Example: A clothing brand reaches current customers via loyalty schemes and email marketing directly to retain their business and generate repeat purchases.

Promotion mix is a significant marketing strategy element that assists companies in communicating effectively with customers. By utilizing advertising, public relations, personal selling, sales promotion, and direct & digital marketing together, companies can promote brand awareness, influence customer decisions, and boost sales growth. A successful promotion mix not only enhances the bond with customers but also assists companies in reacting to market trends and maintaining competitive edge. The application of effective promotional tactics enables brands to gain maximum exposure and succeed in the long term.

> **Activity: Analyzing Employee Impact on Promotion Mix**
>
> Select a prominent service-driven organization and extensively discuss the role its employees play in brand reputation and customer experience. Examine significant points of concern, such as training methodologies, customer interaction techniques, and service personalization. Examine how employee behavior adds to customer satisfaction, customer loyalty, and brand reputation. Identify service gap areas and strategically suggest methods of enhancing employees' performances, for example, leadership training, incentives, or customer contact technology. Provide a critical analysis on how the improvement can lead to competitive advantage in the

8.2 Advertising and Public Relations

8.2.1 Advertising

Advertising is a key component of the promotion mix, and its function is to deliver the message of a brand to a wide number of audiences through paid media channels. Advertising helps firms create awareness, influence buying behaviour, and build a competitive market position. A good advertising strategy ensures a company reaches desired target buyers effectively, enhancing brand reputation and driving sales. Furthermore, Advertising facilitates customer retention by keeping the brand consistently visible, thereby encouraging long-term engagemen. Businesses tactically modify advertising practices to shift consumer behaviour, technological advances, and competitive forces to remain competitive.

Definition and Role of Advertising

Definition: Advertising is paid, non-personal communication used to promote services, products, or concepts through media outlets such as television, print, internet, and outdoor advertising. Advertising addresses the mass market and communicates a compelling message in support of business goals. Great advertising demands creativity, strong media selection, and repetition of messages to make a lasting impression on customers.

The function of Advertising:

1. Establishes Brand Awareness: Advertising establishes and strengthens a brand's presence within the market and makes it well-known to customers. Repeated exposure assists firms in gaining people's trust and confidence, with consumers remembering the brand when it is time for them to buy. Awareness campaigns further assist with rebranding since companies are in a position to reposition in the marketplace.

Example: Innovative TV commercials of *Fevicol* have popularized its brand as an all-strong adhesive solution in India with high recall value among people.

2. Impacts Consumer Behavior: A strategic advertising strategy convinces consumers to think about and choose a specific brand over others by emphasizing product advantages. Through emotional appeals, narratives, and compelling value propositions, brands can shape consumer attitudes and drive purchasing decisions. This impact is especially important in competitive markets where differentiation is essential to be noticed.

Example: Parle-G's retro advertisements highlight its sentimental value to Indian families, and hence it is the choice of generations of consumers.

3. Supports Sales Growth: Strategically placed ads create product interest, stimulating sales and growing customer base. Companies use festival and season-based ads to enhance revenue, applying promotional strategies to stimulate purchase intention. Seasonal advertising campaigns also assist companies in clearing stock and generating maximum revenue.

Example: Flipkart's "Big Billion Days" web campaigns drive phenomenal online sales by establishing urgency and hype among buyers.

4. Facilitates Market Growth: Advertising allows businesses to enter new geographic and demographic markets by messaging particular consumer bases with particularised messages. Companies invest in multi-

language commercials and culturally resonant content to motivate various consumers at maximum efficiency. This versatility maintains energy and awareness in varied places.

Example: Amul's regional ad campaigns across various Indian languages assist the brand in reaching out to different customer bases and increasing brand affinity.

8.2.2 Types of Advertising

Various forms of advertising are used to address different marketing needs, from educating the consumer to convincing consumers to change brands. The appropriate type depends on business objectives, product lifecycle stage, and target audience. Advertisers tend to combine several of these forms to achieve maximum reach and impact. A balanced mix of informative, persuasive, reminder, and comparative advertising enhances consumer engagement and brand loyalty.
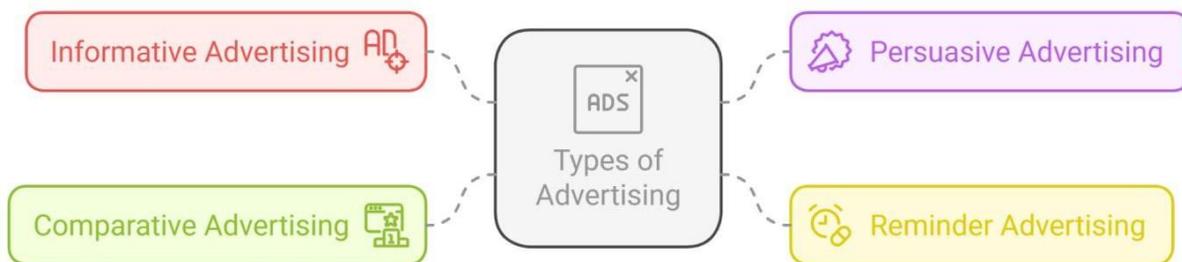

Fig 8.2 Types of Advertising

1. Informative Advertising: This is aimed at informing consumers about a product, its attributes, and advantages, and is usually applied to new product introductions or new and innovative products. It establishes product credibility by presenting factual information that enables customers to make informed choices. Informative advertising is vital in industries such as healthcare, technology, and finance, where trust from consumers is paramount.

Example: Tata Motors' electric vehicle ads emphasize sustainability and cost-effectiveness to educate prospective customers, facilitating them to shift to environmentally friendly modes of transport.

2. Persuasive Advertising: Designed to influence consumers to choose one brand over others by highlighting its excellence, distinguishing features, or emotional value. Persuasive advertising employs the use of narratives,

word-of-mouth endorsements, and wish-granting appeals to instil powerful brand images. Companies apply it to distinguish their brands in overcrowded markets and consolidate customer loyalty.

Example: Surf Excel's "Daag Acche Hain" campaign convinces consumers by associating stains with good childhood memories, reinforcing the notion that stains are a sign of learning and enjoyment.

3. Reminder Advertising: Increases recall of the brand by reminding the customer of the product, most frequently employed by established brands. It still reminds customers to continue buying the item by linking it to lifestyle tendencies or emotional affinities. Highly competitive brands with high repeat purchases gain heavily from this type of advertising.

Example: Cadbury Dairy Milk's holiday ads invite people to position chocolates at the centre of celebrations, making the brand a symbol of happiness and friendship.

4. Comparative Advertising: Invokes a brand's characteristics by comparing it either indirectly or directly with rival brands, suggesting superior quality or worth. This is an effective strategy to influence customers looking for better-quality products in purchasing decisions. Comparisons should be factual to maintain credibility.

Example: Horlicks ads comparing its nutrition with other health beverages highlight its strength in the provision of core vitamins and minerals.

8.2.3 Merits and Demerits of Advertising

Advertising plays a significant role in shaping consumer attitudes, initiating sales, and building brand recognition. It allows businesses to access a large population, communicate product values, and differentiate themselves from others. Advertising, however, comes with various risks such as high costs and consumer skepticism. Understanding both the benefits and limitations allows businesses to optimize their advertising campaigns effectively.

A. Merits of Advertising

1. Mass Reach and Brand Awareness: Advertising enables companies to reach many individuals within diverse demographics and geographies, increasing brand engagement. Through the utilization of repetitive messages, business companies can facilitate brand recall as well as trust among customers, thus promoting long-term interaction.

Example: Britannia's mass media TV and web advertisements have made its biscuits a brand name in India.

2. Aids Customer Persuasion: Persuasive advertising influences consumers' choices by emphasizing product worth, creating aspirational wants, and fixing consumer concerns. It helps companies distinguish themselves in congested markets and establish firm emotional connections with buyers.

Example: Maggi's advertisements emphasize its speedy preparation time, encouraging busy customers to pick it above the rest.

3. Facilitates Market Penetration: Firms can use advertising to bring new products to new markets, informing consumers and creating demand. By making content specific and selecting appropriate channels of media, brands effectively enter unpenetrated markets and customer bases.

Example: Patanjali extended its reach throughout India by regional advertising with a focus on Ayurveda-based wellness.

Example: Patanjali extended its reach throughout India by placing region-specific advertisements with a focus on Ayurveda-based well-being.

4. Facilitates Sales Expansion and Profitability: Effective advertising provokes demand, encourages repeat purchasing, and drives revenues up by encouraging action from the buyer. Campaigns timed appropriately can drive seasonally high sales, effectively launch new products, and trigger limited-time promotions.

Example: Amazon India's "Great Indian Festival" ad campaigns build anticipation and hugely enhance festive-season sales.

B. Demerits of Advertising

1. High Costs and Budget Restraints: Advertising is costly, particularly for TV, print, and online ads, which makes it difficult for small firms. High costs do not necessarily translate into high returns, which is why ROI measurement becomes essential.

Example: Startups lack the huge advertising budgets of the likes of HUL and P&G, impacting their competitive coverage.

2. Consumer Skepticism and Misinformation: Consumers are sceptical about advertising messages, viewing them as exaggerated or misleading. If advertisements promise too much and deliver less, customer trust is lost, resulting in adverse brand perception.

Example: Fairness cream brands such as **Glow & Lovely** were criticized for portraying unrealistic beauty ideals in their commercials.

3. Saturation and Advertising Overload: Consumers see a large number of ads every day, which results in ad fatigue and less engagement. Jammed ad spaces hinder brands from effectively grabbing consumer attention.

Example: Too many online ads tend to make users skip *YouTube* commercials or employ ad blocking to prevent interferences.

4. No Personalization and Interaction: Unlike direct marketing, conventional marketing tends to be one-way communication without personalised customer engagement. Mass marketing cannot necessarily meet unique customer requirements and thus may deliver lower conversion rates.

Example: Generic real estate listings do not capture buyers who seek certain property attributes, so there is a better option in targeted internet marketing.

Did You Know?

"The first television advertisement in India was aired on Doordarshan in 1976 for Gwalior Suitings, marking the beginning of commercial TV advertising in the country."

8.2.4 Public Relations (PR)

Public Relations (PR) is about managing and promoting a brand image through strategic communications. PR differs from advertising as it focuses on earned media, where the public, media, and stakeholders build relationships with companies through events, sponsorships, press releases, and crisis management. Strong PR improves a company's reputation, builds goodwill, and supports reputation management. Yet, because PR is based on third-party validation, it presents problems like a lack of control over messaging and an inability to measure its effects.
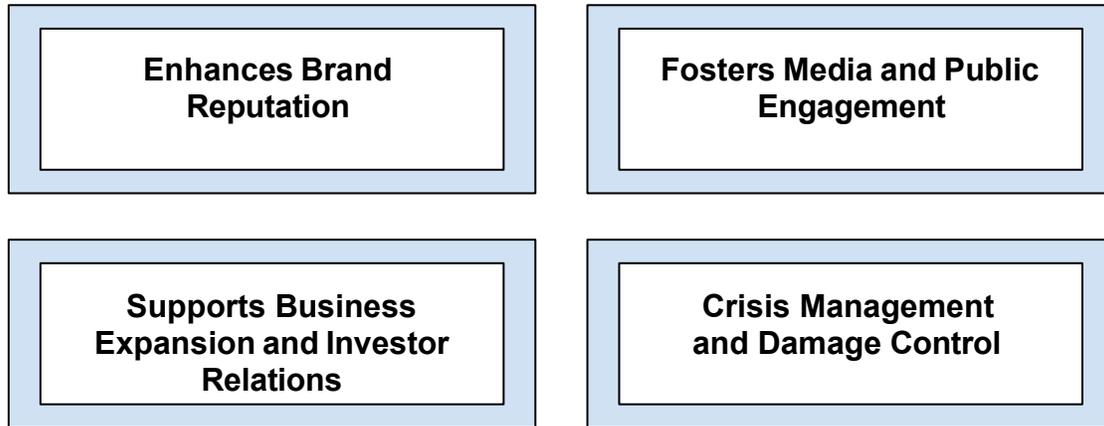
| Enhances Brand Reputation | Fosters Media and Public Engagement |
| Supports Business Expansion and Investor Relations | Crisis Management and Damage Control |

Fig 8.3 Role of Public Relations

Role of Public Relations (PR)

1. Improves Brand Reputation: PR enables companies to build and sustain a good public reputation through media relations, crisis management, and CSR. A solid PR strategy guarantees that the brand is viewed as trustworthy and socially responsible.

Example: Tata Group's PR initiatives aimed at CSR, including educational and healthcare programs, have enhanced its image as a socially responsible organization.

2. Encourages Media and Public Interaction: PR establishes media and public rapport by engaging journalists, influencers, and stakeholders in order to attain favourable media publicity. Through press releases, interviews, and editorial coverage, companies can engage their audience without direct advertising.

Example: Zomato's PR-based viral campaigns, like its humorous Twitter exchanges, have boosted customer engagement and media coverage.

3. Crisis Management and Damage Control: PR is instrumental in managing brand crises by countering negative publicity with strategically designed messaging. An effective PR response can help contain damage and restore customer confidence.

Example: Amul's quick dismissal of misinformation about its goods through official releases and social media explanations helped maintain customer trust.

4. Enables Business Expansion and Investor Relations: PR efforts like thought leadership blog articles, interviews, and corporate news releases aid businesses in winning over investors, partners, and new customers in emerging markets.

Example: Infosys' ongoing PR efforts, including global leadership interviews and business summits, have assisted in solidifying its image in international markets.

8.2.5 Merits and Demerits of Public Relations (PR)

Public Relations (PR) is also crucial in building the public image of a brand, gaining credibility, and communicating with stakeholders. While advertisement relies on paid media and deliberate communication to create a positive image, PR uses earned media and strategic communication to create a positive image. While PR is inexpensive and organic brand positioning, it is limited in terms of message control and direct measurement of its impact. Understanding its advantages and disadvantages allows businesses to use PR effectively to create brand awareness with fewer risks.

A. Merits of Public Relations (PR)

1. Establishes Credibility and Trust: Third-party approvals like media, experts, and industry awards in PR allow the brand message to become more credible. Consumers rely more on editorial content compared to direct advertisement, establishing long-term brand credibility.

Example: HDFC Bank's PR campaigns on financial literacy have made it a credible banking organization by offering expert-supported financial guidance in top publications.

2. Inexpensive Brand Promotion: In contrast to advertising, PR campaigns are inexpensive while generating huge brand awareness. Press releases, influencer mentions, and event sponsorships generate word-of-mouth publicity without direct promotional costs.

Example: Nykaa's PR-driven influencer partnerships gave it huge exposure without investing large sums in conventional advertising.

3. Strengthening Brand Image: A successful PR campaign aligns a business with social causes, leadership in an industry, or green initiatives, enhancing a good image. Thought leadership and CSR activities further improve the public image.

Example: Tata Steel's PR campaigns for sustainability and responsible mining have positioned it as an eco-friendly brand.

4. Long-Term Impact and Market Influence: PR works leave a lasting impact, keeping brands relevant even after a campaign is over. Media relations managed well to ensure sustained positive media coverage, enhancing brand credibility.

Example: Asian Paints' PR-backed brand positioning as a home décor leader through professional interviews and design trends reports has consolidated its market leadership.

B. Demerits of Public Relations (PR)

1. Limited Messaging Control: Because PR is based on third-party media reports, businesses cannot control the presentation of their message. Misconceptions, negative spin, or biased reporting can damage a brand's reputation.

Example: Ola's PR fiasco following driver grievances and service problems harmed customer trust regardless of official clarifications.

2. ROI and Effectiveness Difficult to Measure: As opposed to online marketing, with analytics measuring performance, PR is measured through qualitative factors such as brand perception, media coverage, and word-of-mouth power, which makes measuring impact more challenging.

Example: Kerala Tourism's international PR campaigns received widespread media coverage, but it was difficult to correctly attribute them to tourism earnings.

3. Long-Term Impact and Market Influence: PR works leave a lasting impact, keeping brands relevant even after a campaign is over. Media relations managed well to ensure sustained positive media coverage, enhancing brand credibility.

Example: Mahindra & Mahindra's consistent rankingamongtheworld's best sustainability players has cemented its position as a pioneerof eco-friendly auto innovation.

\

Digital Read

Scan the QR Code to Read!
Smith Brothers Media. (n.d.). Case study: Coca-Cola's "Share a Coke" campaign. Smith Brothers Media.

Knowledge Check 1

Choose the correct option:

1. Which of the following is a key role of Public Relations (PR) in brand management?

    A) Running paid advertisements

    B) Building and sustaining a good public reputation

    C) Replacing customer service operations

2. What is a major advantage of PR over traditional advertising?

    A) PR guarantees complete control over the message

    B) PR is a cost-effective way to build credibility and trust

    C) PR ensures instant measurable results

3. What is a major challenge of Public Relations (PR)?

    A) PR campaigns have no long-term impact

    B) PR messaging is difficult to control due to third-party media involvement

    C) PR is more expensive than paid media campaigns

8.2.6 Publicity

Publicity is defined as the unplanned dissemination of news about a company, product, or service via press coverage, word of mouth, or internet forums. Unlike advertising, which is highly managed and sponsored by organizations, publicity is generated by media, consumer reviews, and influencer endorsements. This type of communication is significant in shaping public opinion and building brand credibility, as people are more likely to accept news articles and unbiased reviews than promotional messages. One positive mention in a prominent publication or widely read online update has the potential to significantly raise a brand's profile. However, despite its potential to raise enormous awareness, publicity is by nature unreliable and at times may have detrimental effects, and hence it is a double-edged sword in the marketing space.

Role of Publicity

1. Boosts Credibility and Trust: Since publicity is propelled by independent media such as news articles, expert opinions, or social media word-of-mouth, it is viewed as objective and more credible than advertising.

Buyers trust third-party endorsements to legitimize their buying decisions, so positive publicity is highly effective.

*Example:*The positive acceptance of *Maruti Suzuki's* hybrid technology in an auto review magazine helpsto increase consumer confidence and increases the demand for fuel-efficient vehicles.

2. Reaches Further Without Direct Costs: Publicity propagates via mass media, blogs, and the internet, enabling businesses to reach more people without incurring direct marketing costs. This enables companies to attain organic brand awareness in highly competitive industries.

Example: Swiggy's innovative customer interactions on social media tend to go viral, attracting large-scale attention without the use of paid promotion, and enhancing user engagement.

3. Creates a Strong Brand Image: Positive publicity consistently positions a company as a leader in its industry, shaping the customer's perception in the long run. It emphasizes a firm's strengths, innovation, or social responsibility initiatives, differentiating it from the competition.

*Example: Wipro's*acknowledgement by global technology forums ofitsleadership in cybersecurity solutions furtherstrengthens its reputation as a dependable IT services firm and attracts the attention of enterprise buyers.

4. Creates Mass Awareness: Advertising in prime media channels, social media waves, or endorsements from influencers serves a brand well in reaching masses at a high pace. Broadscale media attention can also remarkably increase visibility of the product as well as customers' participation.

Example: Free data services launched by *Reliance Jio* achieving broad news media attention resulted in gigantic customer subscription as well as company-wide market turmoil.

8.2.7 Merits and Demerits of Publicity

Publicity can be a great vehicle for promoting a brand, but both pros and cons come with it. Because the company has no direct control over it, it can establish brand credibility and reach the masses at little to no cost. At the same time, since the company does not control it, a company's image can also get hurt through bad publicity. Identifying the pros and cons sides of publicity guides businesses on how to effectively utilize their public face.
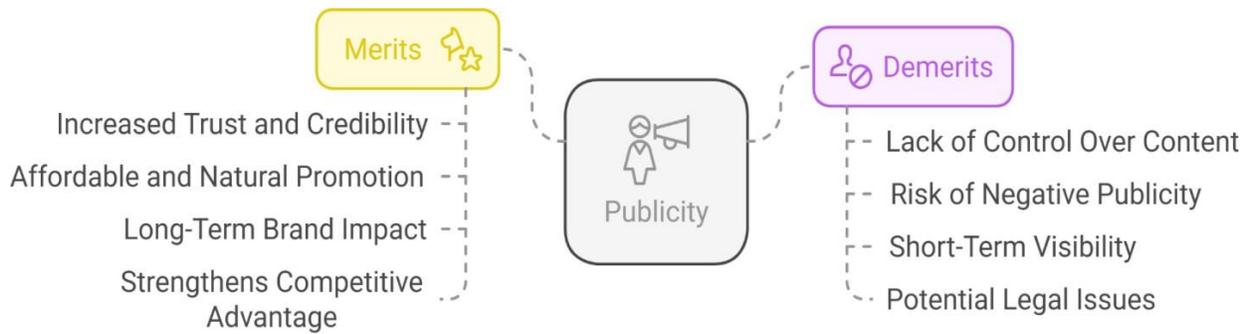
Fig 8.4 Merits and Demerits of Publicity

A. Merits of Publicity

1. Increased Trust and Credibility: Consumers find information from news outlets, influencers, and reviewers more credible than straight ads, which is why publicity is a strong method of brand authority. A positive news headline at the right time can greatly enhance a business's reputation.

Example: When *Patanjali's* herbal products are praised by health experts on TV, customers are more inclined to trust and try them, leading to higher sales.

2. Affordable and Natural Promotion: Because companies do not directly pay for publicity, it provides free exposure to their brands, minimizing the costs of pricey advertisement campaigns and maximizing visibility. It is therefore particularly beneficial to small businesses and start-ups.

Example: When *Amul's* popular social media posts are featured by popular news channels, the brand enjoys a free publicity boost and increased brand recall.

3. Long-Term Brand Impact: An effectively managed publicity campaign has the potential to create long-term brand value, with good news stories remaining in minds longer than short advertisements. Organizations that consistently receive positive media coverage have long-term goodwill.

Example: When *Dabur* becomes recognized for its environmental sustainability efforts in environmental publications, it strengthens its green brand reputation and solidifies consumer loyalty.

4. Strengthens Competitive Advantage: Positive publicity can set a brand apart from the competition, making it a leading option for consumers. Publicity about innovation, customer service, or industry leadership can make companies industry leaders.

Example: If *Titan* smartwatches are featured in technology journals as a stiff competitor to foreign brands, there is an upsurge in sales and market share.

B. Demerits of Publicity

1. Lack of Control Over Content: Unlike advertising, where companies can manage the message, publicity is open to media interpretation, which sometimes blows things out of proportion or creates negative impressions. Companies have to carefully watch and control their public image.

Example: A small supply chain controversy for *Nestlé* can be blown out of proportion by the media, thereby influencing consumer minds and necessitating an urgent clarification.

2. Risk of Negative Publicity: Negative word of mouth, customer complaints, or bad publicity can be virtualized, harming a brand's reputation and necessitating crisis management intervention. Bad news travels faster than good news, and reputation management is therefore important.

Example: When *Flipkart* receives criticism over festive sale delivery issues, it impacts customer confidence and causes low orders and low ratings.

3. Short-Term Visibility: While publicity acts fast, media coverage also fades if not supported by consistent efforts, thus being less effective for long-term marketing. Brands must be involved in consistent media interactions to remain engaged by the public.

Example: Paytm's viral promotional gimmick will be trending headlines for two days but require backup plans like influencer collaboration to keep working.

4. Potential Legal Issues: If a false or inaccurate piece of information is included in media reports, companies are compelled to fight cases legally to justify their reputation. This results in financial loss and tarnished public image.

Example: When there was a false rumour about the quality of *Britannia's* products, the company had to issue explanations and go to courts of law to regain trust.

Publicity is a strong but volatile marketing weapon with the potential to greatly influence a brand's image. Positive publicity reinforces credibility, extends reach, and enhances brand positioning at zero direct cost. Yet

companies need to take an active role in managing their public reputation to avoid the pitfalls of bad or inaccurate coverage.

> **Activity: Evaluating Publicity and Its Business Impact**
>
> Objective: Examine the influence of publicity on brand image, customer trust, and business success.
>
> Task: Choose an Indian brand popular enough that there has been immense media attention of late, negative or positive. Assess how publicity impacted consumer image, customer loyalty, and business sales. Focus on most notable factors such as media, people's reaction to it, company reactions. Describe risks and opportunities associated with publicity. Recommend effective ways by which brands can leverage publicity before things get out of hand using crisis communication, working with media, and image enhancement techniques for becoming more competitive.

8.3 Personal Selling and Sales Promotion

8.3.1 Personal Selling

Definition and Importance:

Personal selling is a face-to-face, direct interaction between a salesperson and a prospect to influence purchase decisions. It is crucial in sectors where trust of the customer, product knowledge, and interpersonal contact are required for conversions. Direct communication enables companies to handle customer issues, clarify product benefits, and build a strong brand affinity.

This method is particularly effective for high-involvement products that need explanation, customization, or negotiation. Unlike mass advertising, personal selling allows for real-time interaction, personalized pitches, and direct customer engagement, making it particularly effective for complex purchase decisions. It is applied widely across industries like insurance, automobiles, and luxury products, where the purchase decision is complex and requires personalized attention.

8.3.2 Merits and Demerits of Personal Selling

Personal selling offers companies an instant and face-to-face way of contacting consumers, establishing confidence, and making a purchase. Personal selling is most appropriate for high-involvement products that require detailed explanations and customization. However, personal selling has some drawbacks, such as high

operational costs and dependence on salesperson skills. Understanding both its advantages and disadvantages helps companies make the optimal choice about when and how to use this strategy.

Merits of Personal Selling:

Personal selling has multiple advantages that improve customer experience and the efficiency of sales. By extending tailored solutions, personal interaction, and immediate support, organizations can establish strong customer relationships and gain higher conversions.

1. Tailored Sales Strategy: The salesperson analyzes customer needs, solves individual problems, and tailors product recommendations, making the sales pitch more meaningful and persuasive. This targeted strategy increases the likelihood of conversions and improves customer satisfaction.

Example: HDFC Bank's financial planners assess a customer's income, goals, and risk appetite before suggesting investment products most appropriate for their needs so that they receive a tailored financial plan.

2. Feedback and Query Solution in Real Time: Personal selling facilitates real-time two-way communication, making it possible for customers to seek clarification of doubts instantly and make confident buying decisions. This instantaneous interaction builds trust and reduces hesitation.

Example: A *Titan Eye+* sales associate describing lens choices, warranty information, and customization features on the spot assists consumers in making educated eyewear purchases with confidence.

3. Greater Customer Relationships: Ongoing direct interaction creates sustained relationships between clients and companies that promote loyalty and repeat business. A healthy relationship also increases good word-of-mouth recommendations.

Example: A *VLCC* beauty consultant who remains in contact with customers after purchase guarantees continued product usage guidance, fortifying customer retention and brand loyalty.

4. Most appropriate for High-Involvement Products: Complex, high-cost, or technology-oriented products need extensive descriptions, and personal selling delivers that quite easily. It helps customers grasp the advantages and make knowledgeable decisions.

Example: A *Tata Power Solar* executive educating customers on installation, cost reduction, and government incentives for solar panels enhances the uptake of clean energy solutions.

5. Boosts Brand Image and Trust: Personal selling builds a brand as customer-centric and service-oriented by offering one-to-one care and credible information. This customized experience sets the brand apart from others. *Example:* A *FabIndia* salesperson describing the handwoven workmanship of their clothing increases the credibility of the brand and supports premium pricing.

Demerits of Personal Selling:

Personal selling, although beneficial, has some drawbacks that companies need to keep in mind. High expense, time factor, and dependency on salesperson knowledge can affect its efficiency, and hence it is not suitable for every business.

1. High Cost per Customer: Recruiting, training, and keeping good salespeople requires a great deal of financial expenditure, so personal selling is less suitable for businesses dealing with low-margin or mass-market products. Salaries, commissions, travel, and training add to the expense, which makes it a costly selling method. *Example: Britannia* prioritizes mass-level promotion over personal selling because the low price and high volume of biscuit sales make direct selling inefficient and costly.

2. Time-Consuming Process: Personal selling involves longer interactions per customer, thereby extending the process of sales. It is inappropriate for organizations to call for quick, bulk-level purchases. As customers need to discuss their issues with salespeople and get elaborate clarifications, the process becomes lengthy and decreases the overall efficiency. *Example:* A *Jaguar* dealership executive spending several hours showing car features and financing options to one prospect limits the number of daily transactions to fewer than for online appointments.

3. Dependence on Salesperson's Skill: The performance of personal selling is critically dependent on the salesperson's ability to convince, their knowledge and communication ability. Poor selling skills can result in losing potential customers. Lack of adequate training or motivation can lead to irregular sales performance, impacting business growth. *Example:* An inadequately trained *Croma* store manager who is unable to highlight salient attributes of a costly laptop can encourage the customer to select a similar company's product instead.

4. Limited Scalability: It is easy to scale up personal selling efforts through recruiting and training more staff, but this is not an easy task to do quickly compared to mass marketing tactics like online marketing. Scaling up into new markets also takes extensive logistical and operational assistance, making scalability difficult.

Example: A luxury watch firm based on private in-store appointments cannot expand in multiple cities as fast as an internet-based competitor with web promotions.

5. Potential Customer Resistance: Some customers believe that personal selling is pushy or intrusive and make them feel uneasy and avoid salespeople. This can damage brand reputation. Pushy sales efforts can turn off customers and create dissatisfaction and negative word-of-mouth.

Example: Consumers who block telemarketing calls from a credit card firm due to forceful sales practices can create a negative image of the brand.

Personal selling remains an essential strategy for firms that rely on face-to-face interactions to build trust and provide customized solutions. Although it provides individualized communication and greater relationships, high expense and difficulties in scaling prevent it from being appropriate for mass-market offerings. Notwithstanding the disadvantages, organizations utilizing expert sales professionals are capable of obtaining better conversions and enduring customer loyalty.

Did You Know?

"Personal selling has been one of the most important drivers of luxury brand success—Rolex, for instance, places great reliance on in-store personal consultations to generate exclusivity and improve customer experience, earning it a favored selection among high-net-worth clients."

8.3.3 Sales Promotion

Definition and Importance:

Sales promotion consists of short-term incentives and marketing efforts designed to stimulate immediate consumer demand and boost sales. It includes discounts, coupons, contests, free samples, and other promotional strategies that give rise to fast buying decisions. Companies employ sales promotion to draw new customers, keep current customers, and instill a sense of urgency in competitive markets. By providing value-based incentives, businesses increase brand interaction, boost trial rates of products, and eliminate surplus inventory. Sales promotion acts as a key function that supplements other components of the promotion mix by earning instant returns while building brand awareness and customer loyalty.

Merits of Sales Promotion:

Sales promotion has several benefits in sales driving, customer engagement, and brand awareness. It has negative long-term consequences, though, when overdependence on promotional efforts is made, which results in less brand loyalty and price sensitivity. Its merits and demerits help businesses to plan their strategies accordingly.

1. Encourages Immediate Purchases: Promotions and sales with time limitations make customers act fast, prompting them to buy sooner rather than later. This works very effectively in competitive business environments where organizations need to drive short-term spikes in sales and clear inventory promptly.

Example: Domino's Pizza's "Buy 1 Get 1 Free" promotion on weekends forces customers to buy now, creating revenue within a short period and maximizing overall customer engagement.

2. Acquires New Consumers: Promotion schemes like free trials, price reductions, or giveaways allow firms to induce new consumers to try their products, increasing brand awareness and expanding market coverage at low cost.

Example: Lakmé providing free lipstick samples with online purchases enables first-time purchasers to try out their makeup, leading to repeated purchases and associating the brand name with remembrance.

3. Facilitates Clearance of Inventory: Sales promotion assists in clearing out excess inventories, preventing product obsolescence, and maintaining cash flow by offering discounts on slow-moving products, reducing the cost of storage.

Example: Big Bazaar organizing a "Stock Clearance Sale" before the festive season assists in clearing out older stock, making room for new stock arrivals, and increasing store profitability.

4. Improves Brand Engagement: Contests, loyalty programs, and cash back rewards enhance consumer interaction and brand recognition, such that customers feel more engaged with the brand due to direct involvement.

Example: Myntra's "Insider" rewards program grants early access to promotions and special perks, promoting repeat shopping and bonding customers and brands.

5. Improves Seasonal and Festival Sales: Companies take advantage of offers in major shopping seasons to generate higher revenues and boost customer involvement in holiday campaigns to enhance customer acquisition.

Example: Titan's holiday season offers on luxury watches during Dussehra and Diwali encourage consumers to choose them as gifts, significantly boosting sales and enhancing brand recall

Sales promotion is a powerful means of creating instant consumer interest, stimulating short-term sales, and building brand interaction. But companies need to employ it judiciously to prevent over-reliance on discounts that can dilute brand perception and profit margins. A well-balanced strategy, which involves promotions in sales as well as strong branding and customer relationship efforts, ensures long-term success in the market.

Did You Know?

"Studies indicate that 75% of customers prefer brands that have loyalty programs, demonstrating that well-executed sales promotions can result in long-term customer retention as opposed to merely short-term sales increases."

8.4 Direct and Digital Marketing

Direct and digital marketing are forms of promotion that enable organizations to communicate directly with customers in the absence of intermediaries. It employs several channels of communication, such as emails, SMS, social networks, and personalized advertisements, to efficiently reach the intended audience. Direct and digital marketing is different from conventional mass promotion, which depends on mass advertisement. Direct and digital marketing offers one-to-one contact and trackable engagement.

Technological innovations have transformed direct marketing by uniting digital media, data analysis, and automation, enabling more precise and cost-effective customer interactions. Businesses can now tailor their messages based on consumer preference, purchasing patterns, and current interactions, thereby boosting their overall marketing effectiveness.

8.4.1 Significance of Direct and Digital Marketing

Direct and digital marketing plays a key role in customer acquisition, retention, and brand building in the modern business setup. As consumer patterns change and there is increasing adoption of digital, companies

have to utilize data-driven, customized marketing strategies to survive. The ability to engage customers in real-time, track responses, and fine-tune attempts on a real-time basis makes direct and digital marketing crucial for companies across sectors.
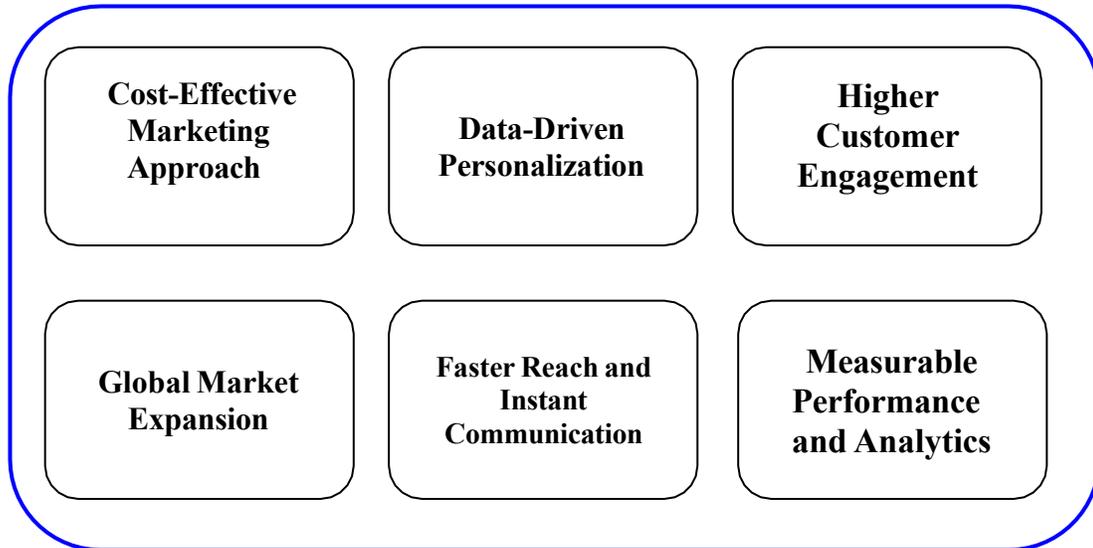

Fig 8.5 Significance of Direct and Digital Marketing

1. More Customer Engagement: Direct and digital marketing generates dialogue with customers, making it possible for brands to form strong relationships. Targeted promotions, social media engagement, and personalized emails expose consumers to content in which they have an interest, prompting engagement and recall of the brand.

2. Cost-Efficient Marketing Strategy: Unlike conventional advertising, online marketing boasts the benefit of being an affordable option for businesses, especially small businesses and start-ups. The campaigns can be tailored based on the budget for individual campaigns, and monitoring measures enable businesses to adjust spending profitably without excessive expenditure.

3. Data-Driven Personalization: The most significant advantage of direct and digital marketing is the ability to leverage consumer data to create tailored experiences. Companies are able to understand customer behaviour, preferences, and purchase history and make highly specific campaigns, which translate into improved conversion rates.

4. Instant Communication and Faster Reach: While conventional marketing techniques have a lag time in results, digital marketing provides an instant reach by various means of social media, email, and search engines. Companies can release promotions immediately and respond to customers in real-time.

5. Measurable Performance and Analytics: Online marketing tools offer companies detailed analysis of campaign performance, allowing them to optimize their strategies based on quantifiable results. Click-through rates, levels of engagement, and conversion rates allow for data-driven decision-making.

6. International Market Growth: Direct and digital marketing enables businesses to broaden their customer bases across geographical locations. Digital platforms can be utilized to engage global audiences, raising brand recognition and potential for sales without geographical expansion.

8.4.2 Benefits of Direct and Digital Marketing to Buyers and Sellers

Direct and digital marketing serves the buyers and sellers equally by offering an effortless, streamlined, and extremely personalized market. Buyers receive product recommendations specifically made for them, instant buy opportunities, and hassle-free channels of communication, thereby improving the entire shopping process. Sellers can save money on advertisements, get customer information in real time, and tap into the world market at negligible operational costs.

In a modern competitive business environment, companies depend on direct and digital marketing to maximize customer engagement, increase revenue, and enhance brand loyalty. At the same time, customers experience increased convenience, richer engagement, and improved value, making digital marketing a fundamental business tool for contemporary commerce.

Benefits to Buyers

1. Convenience and Accessibility: E-commerce allows the consumer to browse, compare and shop for merchandise at any time and from anywhere in the world, simply sitting in their lounge. Consumers can instantly access a wide range of products and services through mobile apps and e-commerce websites without leaving their location. Online payments, fast checkout processes, and delivery-to-door increase convenience as it eases the process. Seamlessly added to it is voice shopping functionality and digital assistants that maximize all forms of customer groups' convenience of accessibility.

2. Personalized Shopping Experience: Companies use consumer data and AI-driven algorithms to deliver personalized recommendations based on purchase history, preferences, and past purchases. These guarantees users receive context-specific offers and content that appeal to their interests. Advanced machine learning programs also anticipate buying behaviours, enabling companies to design targeted discounts and product suggestions. Such personalized engagement ensures a greater emotional connection between consumers and brands, increasing satisfaction and long-term loyalty.

3. Better Offers and Discounts: Direct and digital marketing often include special online deals, flash sales, and loyalty rewards that allow consumers to save. The majority of brands provide discount coupons, cashback, and bundling that cannot be availed offline. Referral schemes, first-time buyer discounts, and savings through subscriptions are also utilized to encourage individuals to shop more than once. Seasonal sales and influencer partnerships also play a role in providing unique value propositions to customers.

4. Simple Comparison and Product Information: Consumers can compare and contrast brands, prices, and feedback at the touch of a button before buying. Detailed product information, consumer comments, and specialist reviews enable informed buying decisions by consumers. Virtual product demonstrations and interactive comparison facilities provide greater transparency, minimizing post-purchase disaffection. Additionally, social media discussions and online customer forums enable consumers to gather real user experience, improving confidence in purchase.

5. Engaging and Immersive Experience: Interactive ads, chatbots, and social media advertisements increase shopper interaction. Shopper-to-business interaction is directly facilitated, along with the answering of product-related questions and provision of prompt feedback, resulting in improved satisfaction and confidence levels. Gamification features like reward-point surveys, spin-the-wheel prizes, and test-question suggestions engage and excite shoppers within a shopping experience. Live purchase webcasts and star-endorsing commercials also create an engaging sense of purchasing that drives more conversions.

Benefits to Sellers

1. **Low-Cost Marketing:** Web marketing reduces the utilization of expensive print and TV advertising. Firms are able to implement highly specific campaigns at a substantially lower cost, with greater return on investment. Real-time performance measurement of ads helps optimize marketing budgets more efficiently. Organic online marketing practices such as content marketing and SEO also help firms maintain themselves visibly robust without spending extravagantly.

2. **Immediate Customer Interaction and Feedback:** Companies can directly engage with consumers through emails, social media platforms, and chatbots, allowing for quick solutions to questions and improved customer support. Direct feedback helps brands develop better products and services according to actual-time feedback. Social listening tools allow companies to gauge the sentiment of buyers and take the necessary corrective measures in real time. In addition to this, companies can easily address bad reviews, converting angry customers into brand advocates.

3. **Segmentation and Targeted Advertising with Data:** Brands can now divide their audience in advanced analytical mechanisms and design extremely targeted marketing programs. Sellers may target specific demographics, thereby better-converting leads to sales. Retargeting schemes are computer-programmed so buyers interested in products get reminded in the form of targeted ads. AI-based sentiment analysis also optimizes ad positions so that ads go to the correct people at the correct moments.

5. **Scalability and Global Reach:** Online channels offer the possibility for businesses to expand their reach beyond geographies. Small businesses can gain foreign customers without establishing physical infrastructure. Trends in social commerce and e-commerce marketplaces have also simplified crossing borders to make purchases. In addition, multilingual marketing strategies and content localization enable brands to reach multicultural markets, and global reach becomes easier.

6. **Repeat Customer Business and Higher Sales:** Targeted promotions, remarketing, and automated email promotion enable sellers to retain customers and drive repeat business. Sellers can establish long-lasting relationships with customers, which promote brand loyalty and long-term top-line growth. Subscription-based models, membership plans, and knowledgeable digital communities add additional customer interaction. Customer-value-based loyalty programs imply customers are addressed individually, which leads to long-term brand preference and advocacy.

Did You Know?

"Amazon's "One-Click Purchase" changed the way digital marketing would work by eradicating checkout friction, vastly improving conversion rates, and becoming a benchmark for effortless online purchasing experiences."

8.4.3 Forms of Direct and Digital Marketing

Direct and digital marketing comprises various types of communication that enable companies to talk to their customers effectively. Direct and digital marketing focuses on providing personalized messages, encouraging direct interaction, and making conversions through digital and non-digital channels. Companies employ various types of marketing based on their audience, product nature, and market situation.

In today's competitive market, organizations employ numerous direct as well as digital marketing channels to target consumers and engage with them as extensively as possible. The integration of AI, automation, and data analysis further enhances the effectiveness of these channels so that brands are able to provide personalized experiences on different platforms.

1. **Email Marketing:** Email marketing is direct promotional messages, offers, and newsletters sent to the mailboxes of customers. It is used for customer retention, lead nurturing, and follow-up message automation. The firms demographically, purchase-wise, or browse-wise segment customers and send them specific content with high interaction and conversion. With automation tools, companies can send an email at specific times, monitor open rates, and push campaigns for maximum reach.

2. **Social Media Marketing (SMM):** Social media platforms such as Facebook, Instagram, LinkedIn, and Twitter enable businesses to interact with customers via content marketing, advertisements, and influencer collaborations. SMM enables instant customer interaction, brand awareness, and targeted advertising based on user interest and behaviour. Live streaming, polls, and direct messaging capabilities enable more user interaction, while analytics capabilities provide information on customer interests and campaign performance.

3. **Search Engine Marketing (SEM) and Search Engine Optimization (SEO):** SEM encompasses paid search ads on engines such as Google and Bing to raise website exposure and reach potential clients. It comprises Pay-Per-Click (PPC) advertisements displayed atop search lists. SEO, however, targets Website optimization of content and design to rank naturally on search engines. Through the application of keyword use, quality content, and links, organizations improve online visibility and draw organic traffic.

4. **Mobile Marketing:** Mobile marketing uses SMS, MMS, mobile apps, and push notifications to interact with customers on their smartphones. With the growing use of mobiles, companies utilize location-based

marketing, in-app marketing, and mobile-friendly ads to optimize customer experiences. Technologies such as QR codes and mobile wallets make purchases and brand interactions seamless.

5. **Content Marketing:** Content marketing is creating and distributing valuable, relevant content to attract and retain a clearly defined audience, engaging them in conversation with a brand. Blog posts, videos, podcasts, infographics, and whitepapers educate and interest audiences while casually endorsing products or services. Great content enhances credibility, generates organic traffic through SEO, and fosters customer relationships in the long term. Quizzes and webinars are interactive content types that increase audience engagement.

7. **Affiliate Marketing:** Affiliate marketing involves companies collaborating with third-party publishers, influencers, or websites that promote their services or products for a commission per sale. It is an incentive-based model where firms can gain access to their target audience without incurring advertising expenses. Affiliates employ blogs, social media platforms, and email marketing campaigns to bring traffic and leads to the company, hence being a low-cost promotion strategy.

8. **Influencer Marketing:** Influencer marketing is a strategy where social media influencers, industry specialists, or celebrities are engaged to endorse products among a targeted audience. Influencers possess a devoted base of followers, and endorsements from them hold great credibility, which subsequently increases the rate of engagement and conversion. Brands utilize micro-influencers (who have niche audiences) or macro-influencers (who have mass-level reach) to build brand recognition and trust among customers.

9. **Telemarketing:** Telemarketing consists of direct interaction with customers over the phone for selling products, surveys, or lead generation. Outbound calls are used for cold calling by businesses and inbound calls for support and customer inquiry. While perceived as intrusive by some, telemarketing is still efficient for B2B marketing and high-value sales. Contemporary telemarketing incorporates AI chatbots and predictive dialing technologies to make it more efficient.

10. **Direct Mail Marketing:** Direct mail marketing means mailing physical promotional pieces like brochures, catalogues, and postcards to customers' addresses. Despite the advent of digital channels, direct mail continues to work well in highly personal campaigns, particularly in luxury retail and real estate. Premium printing technology allows businesses to create personalized mailers with special deals, driving engagement and purchase intent.

11. **Video Marketing:** Video marketing involves creating engaging video content on YouTube, TikTok, and Instagram Reels to promote brands and products. Videos provide interactive storytelling, product videos,

and customer reviews and thus become a powerful marketing force for generating brand awareness and conversions. Business organizations integrate video advertisements into their online marketing strategies to gain audience attention and engagement.

12. **E-commerce and Marketplace Marketing:** Companies maximize their listings on e-commerce websites such as Amazon, Flipkart, and Myntra to drive sales through product listing and sponsored listings. Marketplace marketing includes sponsored product listing, reviews, and recommendation engines that highlight the products' visibility. E-commerce SEO and analytics are also used by companies to enhance strategies and drive customer acquisition.

13. **AI-Powered Marketing and Chatbot:** AI-based chatbots and virtual assistants aid companies in extending customer support, product suggestions, and personalized interaction to users. They bring customer experience to the next level through instant solutions and assistance in navigating the sales funnel. AI also makes predictive marketing possible, which helps brands forecast customer needs and suggest product relevance based on browsing and purchase history.

Knowledge Check 2

Choose the correct option:

1. Which of the following is one of the most important benefits of email marketing in direct and digital marketing?

    A) It guarantees physical store visits for all customers

    B) It enables companies to send personalized and targeted messages effectively

    C) It restricts customer contact to conventional advertisement channels

2. In what way does social media marketing increase brand interaction?

    A) By facilitating direct communication and live interaction with customers

    B) By limiting customer access to brand updates and offers

    C) By eliminating content creation and customer feedback needs

3. What is the key benefit of digital marketing through search engine optimization (SEO)?

    A) It enhances website visibility and organic traffic through better search rankings

    B) It guarantees immediate purchases without customer decision-making time

    C) It eliminates the need for businesses to produce high-quality content

8.5 Summary

❖ The promotion mix comprises advertising, personal selling, sales promotion, public relations, and direct marketing. Companies use these instruments together to raise brand visibility and sway consumer choices.

❖ Advertising is a form of paid communication via TV, print, and digital media. It raises awareness, convinces customers, and widens market reach.

❖ Public relations assist companies in maintaining good reputation via media exposure and events. It develops trust and improves customer and stakeholder relationships.

❖ Personal selling is a face-to-face interaction between customers and salespeople. It enables companies to offer customized solutions and shape buying decisions.

❖ Sales promotions employ temporary promotions such as discounts and contests to generate more sales. They induce urgency, enhance consumer participation, and remove surplus stocks.

❖ Direct and digital marketing allows companies to reach customers via emails, social media, and focused advertisements. These techniques enhance customer relationships and enhance conversion rates.

❖ A proper promotion mix generates market growth, brand loyalty, and higher sales. Firms need to change their strategies about the changing market conditions and consumer preferences.

8.6 Key Terms

1. **Promotion Mix:** Promotion mix includes advertising, salesperson selling, sales promotion, public relations, and direct marketing, all working together to achieve brand recognition and consumer engagement. Companies use combinations of these products to motivate shopping decisions and establish long-term customer relationships.

2. **Advertising:** A paid and non-personal mode of communication utilized by companies to reach a large audience through media like TV, print media, and digital media. It helps in brand awareness, product promotion, and persuading customers to choose a given brand.

3. **Public Relations:** A systematic communicative strategy for running a company's image and building goodwill among the stakeholders. Public relations practices involve media publicity, firm events, and issue management to develop a favourable image of the brand.

4. **Personal Selling:** A one-to-one, face-to-face communication in which salespeople interact with prospective customers to persuade them to buy. It is extremely customized, allowing companies to offer individualized solutions to individual customers in a personalized fashion.

5. **Sales Promotion:** Short-term promotions such as discounts, contests, and free samples that trigger purchases. It is helpful for increasing sales, enhancing brand engagement, and stock clearing during peak demand seasons.

6. **Direct and Digital Marketing:** A tactic that incorporates direct contact with customers using platforms such as email, social media, and customized offers. It helps businesses to target particular groups and maximize customer engagement through data-based approaches.

7. **Impact on Business Growth:** Proper application of promotional strategies enhances market coverage, brand loyalty, and sales conversion. Companies need to strike a balance among all the components of the promotion mix to stay competitive and up-to-date in dynamic market conditions.

8.7 Descriptive Questions

1. How does a well-planned promotion mix add value to a company's marketing strategy? How do businesses use various promotional tools and why?

2. How does advertising shape consumer behaviour? Elaborate on the psychological factors involved in advertising and its impact on brand perception.

3. What are the most important obstacles to personal selling, and how do salespeople overcome them? What strategies should be used to address objections from customers and make the selling process more effective?

4. How do companies create promotion campaigns for maximum consumer involvement? Analyze various types of promotion tools and how they affect the retention of customers.

5. What is the role of digital marketing in today's business models? How do personalization and real-time analysis enhance customer targeting and business growth?

6. How do businesses maximize their direct marketing while upholding ethical practices? Discuss the balance between targeted advertising and consumer privacy issues.

7. How can public relations tactics build corporate reputation? Examine its effect on crisis management, brand credibility, and long-term business viability.

8.8 References

1. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by Philip Kotler, Hermawan Kartajaya, and Iwan Setiawan

2. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by Michael Porter

3. Consumer Behaviour by Schiffman 12th Edition

4. Marketing Warfare by Jack Trout and Al Ries

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1

1: B) Building and sustaining a good public reputation

2: B) PR is a cost-effective way to build credibility and trust

3: B) PR messaging is difficult to control due to third-party media involvement

Knowledge Check 2

1: B) It allows businesses to send personalized and targeted messages efficiently

2. A) By enabling direct communication and real-time interaction with customers

3. A) It increases website visibility and organic traffic through improved search rankings

8.9 Case Study

Leveraging the Marketing Mix for Market Leadership

Introduction

An effectively implemented direct and digital marketing strategy enables companies to target large audiences cost-effectively, interact with customers on a personal level, and maximize the cost of marketing. Reliance Jio, India's top telecommunications company, effectively utilized digital marketing measures and direct customer interaction to shake up the telecom sector. This case study examines Jio's new wave digital approaches that shook the industry, consolidated customer relationships, and created dominance.

Background

Reliance Jio made its entry into the Indian telecommunication market in 2016 with a penetrative strategy of providing free calls and data services, bringing about a significant change in consumer expectations. By leveraging digital marketing, Jio revolutionized the sector by emphasizing high-speed internet penetration, low prices, and customer-oriented services. Rivals to the entrenched players such as Airtel and Vodafone-Idea, Jio needed to deploy world-class digital marketing techniques in order to reach and maintain leadership in the market.

Problem 1: Acquisition of Customers in a Saturated Market

Jio needed to enter a telecom market that was saturated with established brands enjoying deep brand loyalty. There were numerous telecom providers all providing similar offerings, and in such a situation, customer acquisition involves more than common advertising strategies. Jio had to establish a robust aggressive marketing campaign capable of not just bringing in new customers but maintaining high retention.

Solution:

- Executed a huge digital-first campaign on social media, search engines, and mobile devices to generate humongous brand awareness.
- Provided free SIM cards with unlimited calls and data for the initial six months, making customers switch.
- Streamlined online onboarding with instant activation via Aadhaar-based e-KYC, decreasing customer acquisition friction.

Problem 2: Fostering Customer Engagement on Digital Platforms

Having millions of users on board, Jio required an efficient engagement plan to continue customer interaction and ensure loyalty. Conventional telecom marketing was based on SMS and call-based promotions, which were less interactive in the digital age. Jio required an innovative communication approach based on contemporary digital platforms.

Solution:

- Created the MyJio app, an end-to-end platform that combines customer support, recharges, and special offers.
- Levied AI-based chatbots and WhatsApp integration to offer real-time customer support, shortening response times.
- Targeted digital marketing campaigns from customer usage patterns, delivering customized offers through push messages and emails.

Problem 3: Digital Advertising and Brand Positioning

Jio had to position itself as the market leader with a strong digital presence against Airtel and Vodafone-Idea, which enjoyed high brand recall. The task was to develop a disruptive advertising strategy that would appeal to various customer segments.

Solution:

- Developed viral video campaigns highlighting India's digital revolution and reaching millions via YouTube and Facebook.
- Collaborated with celebrities and influencers to endorse Jio's low-cost data plans across social media.
- Employed programmatic advertising and search engine marketing to optimize visibility and reach specific target audiences.

Reflective Questions

1. How did Jio's digital marketing approach assist in its disruption of the industry and winning customers?

2. What other digital marketing technologies can Jio leverage to continue engaging customers and increasing retention?

3. How can Jio apply data analytics and AI to drive more personalized marketing approaches?

Conclusion

Reliance Jio's success is a testament to the effectiveness of a good digital marketing strategy in revolutionizing an industry and generating customer value. Through the use of social media, customized interaction, and creative digital advertising, Jio revolutionized telecom marketing in India. To maintain its growth momentum, Jio needs to keep innovating in AI-based marketing, 5G service promotion, and omnichannel customer engagement to lead the changing digital world.

Unit 9: Marketing Mix Strategies

Learning Objectives

1. Learners Identify the impact of product, price, distribution, and promotion on business success and customer engagement.

2. Learners will be able to explain the most important phases in the marketing process, i.e., research, strategy formulation, implementation, and performance measurement.

3. Learners will examine the research of current marketing trends, such as personalization, green marketing strategies, influencer marketing, and omnichannel marketing.

4. Learners will also evaluate how predictive analytics, automation, and AI-driven insights are defining marketing's future.

Content

9.0 Introductory Caselet

AI-Powered Marketing at Suri Organics

Sanjana Suri, the owner of Suri Organics, established her company on organic skincare products of high quality. Although the company had robust customer loyalty in domestic markets, its sales expansion to digital was slow. Although the company had a website and social media presence, Sanjana was not able to target customers, engage them, and convert them.

One of the key issues was that there was no data-driven insight. Sanjana was based on conventional promotions and direct customer interactions, whereas competitors applied AI-based tools for one-to-one marketing. Further, her site lacked chatbot functionality, and email campaigns were not personalized for customer behavior patterns. Predictive analytics were absent, so it was hard to forecast trends and demand shifts.

To fill these loopholes, Sanjana added AI-based marketing solutions in her strategy. She employed:

- Artificial intelligence-powered customer insights to segment audiences by preference.
- Chatbots and automation to maximize customer interaction on her website and social media.
- Demand planning and inventory optimization predictive analytics.
- Artificial intelligence-based personal recommendations for targeted marketing.

As a result, customer interaction grew by 40%, traffic to the website doubled, and the conversion rate improved substantially. AI not only improved the marketing campaigns but also boosted Suri Organics' online visibility, making it a popular brand in the organic skincare market.

Critical Thinking Question

How do businesses like Suri Organics balance AI-enabled automation with human touch in order to achieve customer trust and personalization?

9.1 Marketing Mix Strategies

Marketing Mix Strategies are targeted strategies that companies employ to maximize their returns on Product, Price, Place, and Promotion decisions. Marketing Mix Strategies allow brands to build a competitive edge, appeal to consumer preferences, and achieve sustained growth. Through thoughtful creation of their marketing mix, companies can increase market reach, develop brand equity, and boost profitability. Let us examine the significant marketing mix strategies:

Fig 9.1 Marketing Mix Strategies

1. Product Differentiation Strategy: Companies develop distinctive product characteristics, enhanced quality, or new designs to distinguish them from their competitors. Differentiation can be based on technology, aesthetics, eco-friendliness, or customer satisfaction. The strategy enables companies to create a customer base and attract premium prices. Companies continuously innovate to differentiate themselves and stay relevant.

Example: Kimirica is a luxury personal care brand that has differentiated itself throughluxury, vegan, and cruelty-free bath and body productsthatblend international fragrances with ethical formulations catering to eco-conscious and premium-segment consumers.

2. Competitive Pricing Strategy: This strategy entails setting products strategically in terms of market trends, competitors' prices, and willingness to pay. Firms can employ penetration pricing to create a strong market entry or sustain price parity and provide extra value. Pricing must be competitive—affordable for consumers while ensuring profitability. Competitive pricing enables firms to get price-sensitive customers and establish a market presence.

Example: Pharmeasy (Online Pharmacy & Healthcare Platform) maintains low prices by providing discounts on drugs, lab tests, and healthcare services, thus making healthcare within reach while competing with conventional pharmacies.

3. Multi-Channel Distribution Strategy: Companies use various multi-channel sales structures like e-commerce platforms, brick-and-mortar stores, and social media pagesfor direct sales. This structure provides wider distribution, increased consumer convenience, and more opportunities to sell. There should be the integration of multiple channels so the brand experience stays unified. Businesses should be made accessible to every customer in one way or another.

Example: Wakefit (Home Furniture & Mattress Brand) has its sales happening through its website, other online marketplaces like Amazon and Flipkart, and its experience stores, where it ensures customer convenience through varied channels.

4. Promotional Bundling Strategy: This strategy involves combining multiple products or services into a single package at a discounted price to encourage higher purchases. Bundling helps in cross-selling, inventory clearance, and perceived value. It is easier to sell a package deal than to sell products individually. Physical and intangible products can be utilized in this strategy.

Example: Zerodha (Stock Trading & Investment Platform)has a bundled investment plan, which packages stock trading, mutual funds, and government bonds into a low-cost package, making it easy for retail users to invest.

5. Supply Chain Optimization Strategy: Companies optimize their procurement, warehouse, and logistics operations for quicker delivery and reduced costs. An optimized supply chain saves inventory losses, improves product availability, and ensures customer satisfaction. Companies implement innovative technology and automation to track supply chain effectiveness. Supply chain agility is essential for companies handling perishables and high-demand products.

Example: Blinkit (Instant Grocery Delivery Platform) provides ultra-fast delivery with the help of strategically placed dark stores and AI-driven inventory management, making the product available in minutes.

6. Direct-to-Consumer (D2C) Strategy: Brands cut intermediaries and sell directly to end consumers through their Websites, social media, and flagship stores. More control is left for the business in questions of pricing, customer relationship, and brand positioning. D2C brands depend more on digital marketing and personal engagement to attract and retain the target audience. This way, businesses can sell at better prices and higher profit margins by cutting off intermediaries.

Example: Nestasia is the online and Insta store name for the Home Décor Brand operating with direct control of branding, and enhancing the buyer's experience by selling upscale handmade home decorations to the customer directly.

7. Cause-Related Marketing Strategy: Organizations intentionally tie their brand to a social or environmental cause to build a positive brand image and create emotional connections with consumers. This strategy not only supports corporate social responsibility (CSR) initiatives but also promotes ethical consumerism. Consumers are likely to prefer brands that undertake activities that are good for society. Cause-related marketing allows brands to differentiate themselves by linking their success with meaningful positive impacts.

Example: The *Better Home* (Sustainable Homecare Brand) provides eco-friendly cleaning products while promoting plastic-free packaging and sustainable practices, thus appealing to consumers who are concerned about environmental issues.

8. Community-Driven Marketing Strategy: This strategy is based on community building for the brand through involvement in user groups, and forums, as well as through a direct engagement mechanism. Companies encourage user-generated content which leads to discussions and loyalty programs with the aim of belonging. The strength of a community strengthens customer retention and will create organic brand advocacy.

The businesses leverage this strategy and end up creating long-term relationships rather than just selling to that one customer once.

Example:Cult. Fit (Health & Fitness Platform) has developed a healthy fitness community through social workout challenges, special member events, and online engagement programs that continue to keep its users motivated and connected to the brand.

9. Experiential Marketing Strategy: The focus of this strategy is on engaging and interactive brand experiences that can leave a memorable impact on consumers. It includes pop-up events, immersive brand activations, and hands-on product trials. This type of marketing creates emotional bonds, increases recall, and induces word-of-mouth promotion. When companies engage directly with customers, they develop solid relationships and brand loyalty.

Example: Tanishq (Jewellery Retailing Major) uses experiential marketing methods through in-store personalization, gold exchange programs, and virtual jewellery trials, thus giving customers a fulfilling shopping experience aside from purchasing gold.

10. Omnichannel Marketing Strategy: Firms coordinate offline and online customer touchpoints such that the customers can shop continuously. With this strategy, the customers can interact with the brand on different channels like retail outlets mobile websites applications and social media without disconnection. Using this channel of omnichannel marketing, the firms can increase convenience, brand recall, and satisfaction of the customers.

Example: Tata Cliq Luxury offers an end-to-end omnichannel experience where consumers purchase luxury brands online and pop in at partner stores for expert advice, with a hassle-free shopping experience.

11. Subscription-Based Model: Companies provide products or services via recurring subscription plans rather than a single purchase. This model guarantees repeat business, increases customer loyalty, and enables companies to tailor offerings in the long run. Subscriptions are prevalent in digital services, meal delivery, and even consumer products.

Example: SugarBox (content streaming service over WiFi) provides a paid subscription model that provides uninterrupted access to digital services and entertainment even in low-connectivity locations.

12. Geo-Targeted Marketing Strategy: Geo-targeting is utilized by companies as an ad strategy that is geolocation-based to target promotions for particular geographic regions. Geo-targeting may prove useful for particularly local businesses, promotional activities on special occasion levels, and in-region promotions. Geo-targeting makes customers receive suitable offers based on proximity or regional affinity.

Example: Swiggy Instamart provides geo-targeted push messages and app vouchers to provide discounts and express delivery services specific to different city locations.

> **Did You Know?**
>
> Using media mix modelling allows companies to maximize their marketing strategies, resulting in enhanced resource allocation and enhanced return on investment.

The Marketing Mix elements play a major role in quantifying the overall performance of an organization by following a systematic decision-making process for Product, Price, Place, and Promotion. Every strategy is carefully designed to respond to specific market forces, consumer behaviour, and competitive conditions. Through product differentiation, price strategy, diverse channels of distribution, or experience-based marketing campaigns, organizations are compelled to regularly improve their strategies to compete in a dynamic market. The optimal use of strategies allows organizations to maximize customer interaction, improve profitability, and achieve sustainable long-term growth. By intentionally mapping their marketing mix according to the consumer's interest and industry trends, organizations can create a strong brand image and maintain a competitive edge.

> **Activity:Strategic Analysis of Marketing Mix Strategies**
>
> Choose a big corporation or multinational corporation and evaluate the different marketing mix strategies employed in Product, Price, Place, and Promotion by the company. Outline the product differentiation strategy of the company, pricing, distribution channels, and promotion strategies. Assess the effect of such strategies on market share, customers' image, and competitiveness. Identify major challenges the company is experiencing in implementing its marketing mix and recommend strategic adjustments, i.e., price change, channel growth, or promotion novelty. Present a critical evaluation of how optimizing these strategies will improve brand equity, customer loyalty, and profitability in the long run.

9.2   The Marketing Process

The marketing process is a structured approach that organizations use to identify customer needs, develop products, and deliver value in the best possible way. It is a step-by-step interconnected process that allows companies to create, communicate, and capture value in a marketplace. Through the implementation of a well-articulated marketing process, businesses can establish strong customer relationships, enhance brand loyalty, and drive long-term profitability.

1. Market Analysis and Research: Companies carry out thorough research to examine customer trends, industry patterns, and competitor activity. This aids in the determination of demand trends and the identification of possible growth opportunities. Correct market information enables companies to make informed decisions that maximize their competitive advantage.

Example: Mamaearth undertakes national surveys and internet sentiment analysis to formulate toxin-free skincare solutions for customers who are looking for chemical-free and natural options.

2. Identification of Target Market: Businesses segment the market along the dimensions of demographics, psychographics, and buying behaviours to target particular groups of customers. Good targeting increases interaction and enhances conversion rates. Businesses subsequently tailor their marketing communications to target each segment differently.

Example: Nykaa segments its customers into skincare enthusiasts, makeup enthusiasts, and luxury beauty shoppers, providing handpicked product suggestions and special offers based on their purchase history.

3. Product Development and Value Creation: Organizations develop and refine their products/services according to the tastes of the customers, providing quality, innovation, and relevance to the market. An effective value proposition sets a brand apart and creates a competitive edge. This process also entails prototype testing before mass roll-out.

Example: BOAT frequently upgrades its wireless earbuds with water resistance, longer battery life, and superior sound, making them an attractive choice for young consumers and fitness enthusiasts.

4. Pricing Strategy Selection: Firms create price models keeping in mind factors like cost of production, competitor pricing, and value perceived by the customer. A good pricing policy provides maximum profitability

and acceptability. Firms apply psychological pricing, penetration pricing, or premium pricing based on their market strategy.

Example: Jio initially entered the market with a penetration pricing strategy by making aggressive offerings by offering free data services, which helped it gain a large user base before gradually launching paid plans.

5. Channel Choice and Distribution Planning: Companies select the best distribution channels—physical stores, web sites, or direct-to-consumer—for maximum market coverage. Seamless planning for distribution places products in the hands of consumers at the right time and in the right place. Companies also enhance logistics for quicker deliveries.

Example: Blue Tokai Coffee Roasters balances online stores, café retail points, and business partnerships with shopping stores to have its handmade coffee available in every corner of India.

6. Development of Promotional Strategy: Companies design coordinated marketing campaigns with the help of advertising, social media, public relations, and sales promotions to increase brand exposure. A properly coordinated promotion strategy helps ensure that the message reaches the intended audience effectively, increasing customer interaction and brand awareness.

Example: Zomato's sarcastic social media messages, real-time interactions, and push alerts to engage users while they promote discounts, new restaurant partnerships, and festival offers.

7. Customer Relationship Management (CRM): Businesses establish long-term relationships with customers through loyalty schemes, one-to-one communication, and after-sales service. CRM software assists in monitoring customer interactions and preferences, allowing brands to provide improved service and tailored experiences.

Example: FabIndia's 'FabFamily' membership scheme provides special discounts, pre-launch access to collections, and one-on-one styling tips, creating strong customer loyalty among ethnic wear consumers.

8. Integration of Performance Measurement and Feedback: Firms review the key performance indicators (KPIs), monitor sales trends, and collect feedback from customers in a bid to optimize their marketing efforts. Constant measurement of performance enables companies to respond to evolving markets and refine later campaigns.

Example: Blinkit monitors customer feedback, order delivery time, and demand trends to optimize stock and enhance delivery efficiency, providing a seamless grocery shopping experience.

By following a systematic marketing process, organizations can match their strategy with market requirements, create lasting customer relations, and sustain a competitive edge. With every step, long-term progress is achieved so that brands remain relevant and successful in an ever-evolving context.

9.2.1 Techniques to Achieve the Marketing Process

Marketing is a very intricate process involving many steps from research to actual implementation, and the proper techniques need to be used to succeed. Businesses need to implement data-driven techniques, segmentation targeting, and new implementation processes to keep up with the competition. With the application of established techniques, businesses can maximize customer interaction and overall marketing effectiveness. The following techniques assist in each step of the marketing process effectively.

1. Market Research Methods: Proper research enables companies to know the preferences of customers and the trends of the market. Techniques such as surveys, focus groups, and big data analysis are useful tools for decision-making. Sophisticated AI software enables companies to forecast customer actions and tailor marketing campaigns. This helps businesses know demand accurately before product launch.

Example: Maruti Suzuki studies customers' feedback and buying habits before launching new models of cars so that they remain in line with consumer demands.

Market Research Methods

Segmentation, Targeting & Positioning (STP) Strategies

Techniques to Develop Marketing Strategies

Methods of Implementation

Evaluation and Optimization Strategies

Fig 9.2 Techniques to Achieve the Marketing Process

2. Segmentation, Targeting & Positioning (STP) Strategies: Strategically segmenting the market enables business organizations to target the appropriate customer base effectively. Business organizations utilize demographic, psychographic, and behavioural segmentation to narrow down their customer base. Competitive positioning strategies enable businesses to differentiate their brands and establish a distinct identity. The strategies enable businesses to acquire and retain appropriate customers through targeted messaging.

Example: Titan Eye+ segments customers by affordability and style, positioning itself as a premium yet affordable eyewear brand.

3. Techniques to Develop Marketing Strategies: Clearly defined strategies make a brand more competitive and foster long-term growth. SWOT analysis is used to evaluate strengths and weaknesses, while Porter's Five Forces tool analyzes market competitiveness. Ansoff Matrix advises companies on deciding between market penetration, growth, or diversification. Applying the correct strategy ensures long-term profitability and success for the brand.

Example: Tata's affordable fashion brand *Zudio* adopted a market penetration strategy by selling fashionable clothing at very low prices and aggressively increasing its physical store chain in Tier 2 and Tier 3 cities, reaching fashion to more consumers.

4. Methods of Implementation: Successful execution of strategies ensures marketing plans deliver real outcomes. Dynamic marketing practices allow organizations to test and optimize campaigns in real-time. Content marketing models allow for the organization of brand narratives, thereby enhancing exposure among audiences. Automation tools such as chatbots and customer relationship management software enhance marketing processes, thereby improving the effectiveness of operations.

Example: Ajio employs computerized electronic mail marketing and AI-driven product recommendations to enhance customer engagement and rates of sales conversion.

5. Evaluation and Optimization Strategies: Continuous monitoring helps companies improve marketing strategies, thus recording improved ROI. Engagement, conversion rates, and return on investment (ROI) are quantified with key performance indicators (KPIs). A/B testing is performed to measure various marketing strategies to determine the best methods. Feedback determines customer opinions that give crucial information improving products and services.

Example: Zepto processes customer ratings and reviews to optimize delivery time, thus ensuring a better user experience.

Successful marketing entails a scientific process with appropriate methods at every step. From the research process to execution, every stage is supported by specially formulated strategies improving decision-making and operational efficiency. Organizations embracing such processes can strengthen customer relationships, maximize campaigns, and attain long-term growth. With marketing evolving all the time, staying informed about the latest tools and methods guarantees long-term success.

Knowledge Check 2

1. Why is market analysis and research important in the marketing process?
   A) It helps companies identify customer needs, industry trends, and competitor strategies
   B) It focuses only on financial performance and budgeting
   C) It ensures businesses can set the highest possible prices for their products

2. Which step in the marketing process involves segmenting customers based on demographics, psychographics, and buying behaviors?
   A) Channel Choice and Distribution Planning
   B) Identification of Target Market
   C) Product Development and Value Creation

3. What is the purpose of Customer Relationship Management (CRM) in marketing?
   A) To establish long-term relationships with customers and enhance loyalty
   B) To increase product prices and maximize profit
   C) To create social media advertisements without customer feedback

9.3 Emerging Trends in Marketing

The marketing environment is in a state of continuous evolution with the advent of technology, shifting consumer trends, and innovative marketing strategies. Businesses need to keep themselves abreast of emerging trends to stay competitive. These trends help brands enhance customer engagement, improve targeting accuracy, and create personalized experiences. Businesses that adopt modern marketing strategies gain consumer trust, boost conversion rates, and achieve sustainable success. Let's look at these emerging trends in detail.

1. Neuromarketing and Consumer Behavior: Neuromarketing applies neuroscience to study consumer emotions and decision-making. Brands use biometric responses, eye-tracking, and brain studies to create effective advertisements and packaging. They ensure that marketing campaigns align with the subconscious desires of consumers. Brands can refine messaging for enhanced recall and emotional connection.
Example: Haldiram tested out different snack package designs using neuromarketing studies and opted for the most appealing one to induce impulse purchases.

2. Hyper-Personalization through AI: AI-based marketing examines large consumer databases to create extremely personalized recommendations and targeted campaigns. Machine learning enables brands to predict customer behaviour, customise product recommendations, and automate customer service. This increases customer satisfaction and lifts conversion rates through targeted audience segmentation. Businesses improve digital engagement with real-time personalization.
Example: Lenskart's AI-driven recommendation engine suggests frames of eyewear based on the shape of a customer's face, his purchase history, and his viewing history.

3. Immersive Experienceusing AR and VR: Virtual Reality (VR) and Augmented Reality (AR) create immersive brand experiences throughwhichthe customer is allowed to experienceaproductbeforeits purchase. AR/VR technologies facilitate virtual shopping visits, product testing, and interactive advertisements. AR/VR

increases engagement, minimizes product return rates, and fosters stronger e-commerce and retail customer trust.

Example: Titan's app with AR capability allows customers to virtually try on watches, improving the online shopping experience without going to a store.

4. Subscription-Based Commerce: Subscription models offer customers special perks while guaranteeing firms consistent revenue streams. Subscription models increase customer retention through personalized experiences, ease, and cost benefits. Firms apply subscriptions for edited product deliveries, premium membership, and online content access. It promotes long-term customer relationships and increased retention levels.

Example: Fabindia's subscription program for loyalty members provides early entry to new launches, styling advice tailored to one's style, and special offers to premium members.

5. Programmatic Advertising and Automated Marketing: Programmatic buying uses AI to automate the advertising purchase process for precise targeting through user behaviour. Automated marketing technologies assist brands with scheduling customized campaigns and monitoring results in real time. This costs less, delivers more efficient advertisements, and encourages greater customer interactions. Businesses make data-driven optimizations to dynamically modify ad placements.

Example::BigBasket employs programmatic advertising to show personalized grocery offers based on the customer's shopping history and inclinations.

6. Gamification and Interactive Marketing: Gamification inserts game-like components such as reward points, contests, and scoreboards into promotion campaigns. Participatory approaches maximize engagement through provision of entertainment together with promotion. Brands implement quizzes, competitions, and smartphone games to promote maximum customer interaction. This establishes customer loyalty and improves the experience during shopping.

Example: Parle launched a mobile app where consumers earned virtual biscuits which they could trade for real-world discounts, fuelling brand activity among young groups.

7. Social Commerce and Influencer-Led Sales: Social commerce combines shopping online with social media, enabling customers to buy goods directly from sites such as Instagram, Facebook, and WhatsApp. Sales

are promoted by influencers who engage with live shopping, reviews, and interactive posts. The trend makes buying easy by streamlining the shopper's journey, with transactions simple and interactive.

Example: Sugar Cosmetics utilizes Instagram Live shopping experiences with influencers, showing products and responding to customer questions in real time.

8. Blockchain for Transparency and Ethical Marketing: Blockchain technology increases transparency through secure, verifiable digital marketing transactions. Brands leverage decentralized ledgers to verify product origin, avoid ad fraud, and gain consumers' trust. Blockchain enables transparency, allowing consumers to verify product origins and assess ethical production claims. Blockchain-based loyalty programs also reduce customer churn.

Example: Nescafé India used blockchain to highlight fair-trade sourcing so customers could track coffee beans from the farm to their cup.

9. Mobile Optimization and Mobile-First Marketing: As mobile devices power the majority of online traffic, brands focus on mobile-optimized websites, app engagement, and responsive design. Google's mobile-first indexing means that faster-loading sites with an excellent experience rank better. Mobile advertising, push notifications, and location marketing enable brands to engage with users in real time. Disregarding mobile optimization leads to a suboptimal user experience and missed conversions.

Example: Croma made its mobile site more efficient with a quicker checkout and product suggestions powered by AI, resulting in better customer interaction and sales.

10. Live Streaming and Real-Time Engagement: Live streaming allows brands to connect with audiences in real-time, establishing authenticity and trust. Companies leverage Instagram Live, YouTube, and LinkedIn for product launches, Q&A, and influencer partnerships. It allows brands to engage with customers in real-time, leading to higher engagement rates than recorded videos. The customer perceives live streams as real, thus better conversions.

Example: Forest Essentials used live-streaming sessions on YouTube to demonstrate Ayurvedic skincare rituals, allowing real-time customer interaction and increasing product sales.

11. Advanced SEO and Search Intent Optimization: SEO is shifting from keywords to intent, semantic search, and AI-driven algorithms. Voice search optimization, structured snippets, and high-quality content are

the keys to rankings today. Brands optimize their websites for faster loading and mobile-friendly designs to increase search visibility. Businesses that align with search intent see organic traffic and conversion rates grow. *Example: Saffola* voice-optimized its recipe blog to allow nutrition-aware consumers to discover heart-friendly meal options through Google Assistant queries.

12. Online Marketplaces and E-Commerce Growth: Online marketplaces offer brands greater visibility and enhanced sales through AI-based recommendations and highly personalized shopping experiences. Businesses combine their online and offline channels to provide a unified customer experience. AI-supported product recommendations and customer reviews enhance trust and conversions. Businesses selling through e-commerce platforms have access to more consumer bases and greater sales potential.
Example: Sleepy Owl Coffee extended from D2C sales to online marketplaces such as Amazon and Flipkart, greatly boosting its distribution and customer base.

13. Influencer Marketing and Social Commerce: Brands partner with influencers to create trust and generate engagement, particularly on social media. Nano and micro-influencers are increasingly popular as they offer greater engagement rates among niche audiences. Social commerce allows for direct buying from influencer-driven promotions, improving conversion rates. Companies experience greater ROI when partnering with influencers who share their brand values.
Example: Khadi Essentials collaborated with wellness influencers to market its range of organic skincare products, using social media to grow product visibility and sales.

14. AI Chatbots & Conversational Marketing: Chatbots powered by AI improve customer interactions through immediate responses, order tracking, and recommendations. Companies automate customer support to minimize waiting time and increase engagement. WhatsApp and website-integrated chatbots simplify the purchase process and provide a better user experience. AI-powered conversation tools enhance lead generation and customer care.
Example: Vistara Airlines employs AI chatbots to help travellers with flight reservations, check-in procedures, and live travel information, enhancing customer experience.

15. The Metaverse and Virtual Brand Experiences: Brands are venturing into virtual shops, NFT-driven campaigns, and metaverse advertising to connect with digital-native consumers. Interactive shopping is done

with augmented reality (AR) and virtual reality (VR). Businesses use 3D virtual worlds to allow customers to test products before a purchase. Immersive brand experiences are being created by the metaverse instead of conventional marketing.

Example: Tanishq introduced a virtual jewellery try-on feature, allowing customers to see how ornaments would appear on them before buying online.

New marketing trends revolutionize the way companies engage with consumers by incorporating AI, AR, blockchain, and automation to encourage more interaction. Companies embracing s   n offer personalized consumer experiences, increase efficiency, and enhance competitive   volving technology, marketers need to be flexible and keep strategies that cater to changing cons   remain successful over time.

> **Activity: Analyzing Emerging Marketing Trends in Industry**
>
> Choose a company that has successfully incorporated one or more of the emerging marketing trends, including AI chatbots, influencer marketing, live streaming, or the metaverse. Examine how the company has utilized these trends to improve customer interaction and business expansion. Assess the success of these efforts through examination of aspects like customer reaction, market penetration, and influence on sales. Identify areas where there could be gaps or weaknesses in best taking advantage of these trends. Based on your analysis, recommend steps that further streamline the brand's marketing strategy, and thereby continue to provide competitive advantage for the fluid digital age.

9.4 AI in Marketing and the Future of Marketing

9.4.1 Understanding AI in Marketing

Artificial Intelligence (AI) marketing refers to the application of algorithms, machine learning, and data-driven automation to improve decision-making, customer experience, and marketing performance. AI allows companies to learn consumer behaviour, forecast trends, and personalize marketing at scale. AI-powered platforms enable companies to increase interaction through insights and instant response. With ongoing developments, AI is transforming marketing strategies and making them data-driven and more dynamic.
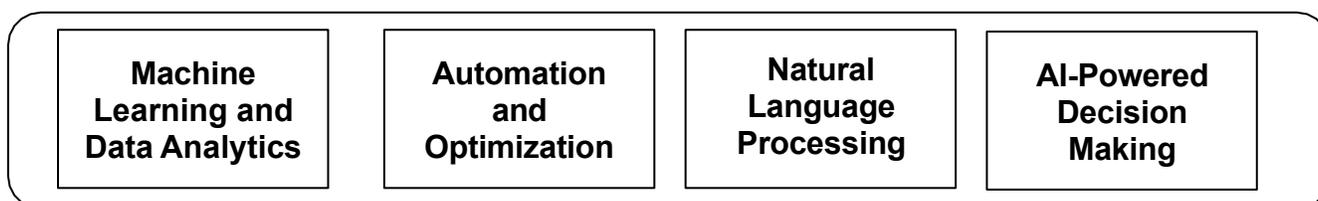
Machine Learning and Data Analytics	Automation and Optimization	Natural Language Processing	AI-Powered Decision Making

Fig 9.3Understanding AI in Marketing

1. **Natural Language Processing (NLP):** NLP allows AI to read, comprehend, and create human-like language for improved customer communication. It powers chatbots, virtual assistants, and sentiment analysis tools that enhance brand messaging. NLP allows businesses to analyze customers' feedback, reviews, and social media posts to enhance their messaging strategy. Advanced NLP models aid in content generation, improving engagement, and ensuring brand consistency across all fronts.

2. **AI-Powered Decision Making:** AI-driven analytics help marketers make sound decisions using real-time and historical insights. It helps companies in their capability to identify lucrative opportunities, refine price levels, and optimize customer segmentation automate A/B testing, ensuring the most engaging marketing messages reach customers. With AI-driven decision-making, businesses minimize risk and maximize ROI with data-informed decisions.

3. **Machine Learning and Data Analytics:** AI processes large volumes of customer data to identify patterns, trends, and consumer behaviour. It fine-tunes targeting strategies based on user behaviour, purchase patterns, and engagement models. Machine learning technologies enable predictive analysis, which enables brands to forecast what customers need and how to become better marketers. Brands use AI insights to create hyper-personalized campaigns, which lead to improved overall customer satisfaction and retention

4. **Optimization and Automation:** AI automates routine marketing activities such as social media planning, advertising campaigns, and email marketing to make them more effective. AI eliminates the need for human labour and reduces mistakes by optimizing the implementation of marketing campaigns. AI-driven optimization tools enhance customer segmentation accuracy and campaign performance in real time. Marketers leverage automation to enhance productivity to enable them to focus on creative and strategic work.

9.4.2 AI Applications in Marketing

AI marketing solutions have transformed how companies target consumers, maximize campaigns, and fuel business growth. From predictive modelling to chatbots, AI is being used to design personalized experiences, enhance customer support, and enhance marketing effectiveness. Businesses are using AI-powered tools to maximize targeting, automate content creation, and maximize decision-making. With the evolving new AI technology, its use in marketing will keep increasing, revolutionizing traditional practices and fueling innovation.
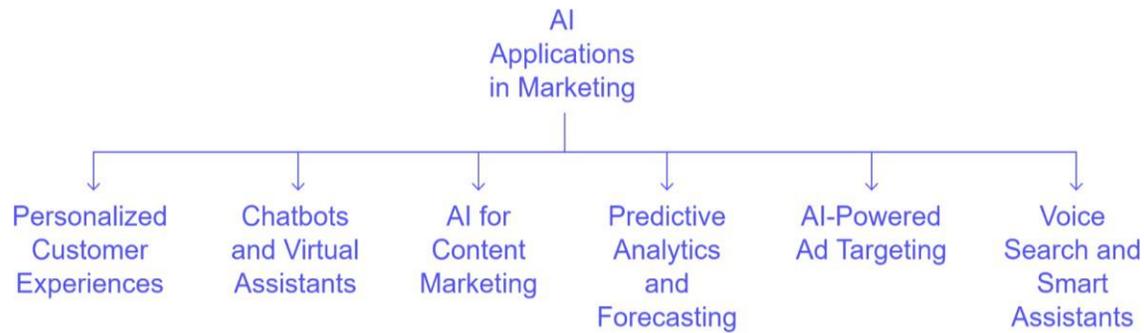
Fig 9.4 AI Applications in Marketing

1. **Hyper-Personalized Customer Experiences:** AI facilitates hyper-personalization by interpreting customers' behaviour, purchase history, and interaction. AI enables brands to present personalized content, recommendations, and offers based on user's preferences and past actions. Dynamic content adaptation enhances the way marketing messages resonate with targeted audience segments, leading to a higher response rate. AI-based personalization elevates customers' satisfaction, brand loyalty, and conversion.

2. **Virtual Assistants and Chatbots:** Chatbots, driven by artificial intelligence, provide instant assistance in answering questions, troubleshooting problems, and providing recommendations. Customer service is enhanced through quicker response and 24/7 operations without human involvement. Virtual assistants like voice AI enable customers by presenting personalized recommendations. Businesses take advantage of chatbots to enhance customer engagement, enable sales, and provide an optimal customer service experience.

3. **AI for Content Marketing:** AI makes it possible for automated content production, where content is made promptly and uniformly available on online media. AI helps marketers write blog posts, social media messages, and e-mail newsletters by tapping into customer knowledge. AI devices monitor key trends, consumer tastes, and rival activity to increase content effectiveness. This enhances customer participation, reinforces brand recognition, and maximizes content marketing.

5. **Predictive Analytics and Forecasting:** Predictive analytics powered by AI enables businesses to forecast customer behaviour, market trends, and sales performance based on past and real-time data. AI models filter through historical data and real-time streams to spend and budget marketing in the best possible way. Businesses use predictive insights to refine advertisement campaigns, reduce

risks, and get maximum impact out of a campaign. AI-powered forecasting enables business companies to stay competitive by predicting shifts in market conditions.

6. **AI-Driven Ad Targeting:** AI accelerates online advertising by analyzing user data, history, and preferences to personalize ad placement. AI helps marketers deliver highly targeted ads by demographics, behaviour, and moment-of-truth interaction. AI-driven ad platforms dynamically adjust bidding strategies, realizing lower costs with better-optimized conversions. It maximizes ad relevance, optimizes ROI, and prevents wasting money on ineffective marketing.

7. **Smart Assistants and Voice Search:** Artificial intelligence-enabled voice search using smart assistants like Alexa and Google Assistant is redefining customer search behaviour. Firms prepare their content and SEO strategy for accommodating voice-driven searches. Artificially intelligent voice recognition technology ensures accurate answers, enhancing brand availability. Voice search analytics are employed by marketers for streamlining product placement and making digital visibility ideal.

AI marketing is transforming business models for reaching out to customers, streamlining efforts, and propelling growth. Using AI-based insights, businesses can offer hyper-personalized experiences, process automation, and improved decision-making. Implementing AI in advertisement targeting, content creation, customer service, and predictive analysis assures effectiveness and competitiveness. With developments in the technology of AI ongoing, businesses need to match up with newer trends to remain competitive and leverage the maximum out of marketing campaigns.

9.4.3 Benefits and Challenges of AI in Marketing

AI has transformed marketing with the power of data-driven decision-making, automation, and hyper-personalization. Businesses use AI for customer behaviour understanding, trend forecasting, and campaign optimization, making them more efficient and engaging. AI-powered applications like chatbots, predictive analysis, and programmatic advertising have revolutionized marketing strategies. While AI has advantages, there are disadvantages such as ethical concerns, outrageous costs, and the possibility of algorithmic bias. It is essential to understand these benefits and drawbacks for businesses that will be using AI in their advertisement campaigns.

Benefits of AI in Marketing

Marketing is driven by AI to make it more efficient, tailored and consumer-oriented with a suite of emerging technologies. Firms have the ability to utilize AI to execute marketing campaigns better, optimize decisions, and liberate employees from mundane tasks.

a. **High-end Personalization** allows businesses to tailor marketing efforts using consumer profiling, purchase behaviour, and web patterns. AI systems create dynamic advertisements, customized recommendations, and direct mailing that appeal to individual customers. This focused action lifts customer satisfaction, strengthens brand commitment, and improves conversion rates.*For example,* e-commerce websites like *Flipkart* use AI algorithms to recommend products that are related to browsing history.

b. **Advanced Data Analysis and Decision-Making** allow companies to analyze enormous amounts of customer and market data in order to make informed decisions. AI-based analytics software can spot emerging trends, customer likes, and areas of campaign optimization. This allows marketers to improve marketing strategies, adjust prices, and optimize the use of resources.*For example,* AI is employed by *Zomato* to learn users' ordering behavior and personalize restaurant recommendations accordingly.

c. **Marketing Automation** also reduces the effort of time-consuming tasks such as email marketing, social media posts, and lead nurturing. Scheduling content, managing customer interactions, and even campaign deployment optimizations through the automated tools employed by AI save time and effort as well.*For example,* Banks such as *HDFC* Bank use AI-enabled chatbots to respond to customer inquiries more quickly with no human intervention.

d. **Enhanced Advertising Campaigns** maximize online advertising by ensuring accurate targeting of the right audience and real-time optimization of where ads are displayed. AI tracks user behaviour, demographics, and engagement patterns and displays ads relevant to them, optimizing campaigns to perform better and save ad spend.*For example,Google Ads* and other services use AI to maximize placement bids and drive returns for advertisers.

e. **Improved Customer Service** provides hassle-free experiences with AI-powered chatbots and virtual assistants. These technologies provide real-time responses, answer customer questions, and provide 24/7 support, which results in improved customer experience.*For example,Swiggy* uses AI chatbots to serve customers with tracing orders and complaint resolution, increasing the efficiency in services.

Challenges of AI in Marketing

While there are immense benefits of AI, it has a few disadvantages and threats as well that need to be addressed properly by businesses. Issues such as data protection, expensive deployment, and potential for bias are a few concerns that can hamper the working of AI for marketing.

a. **Data Security and Privacy Issues** are a result of the huge volumes of personal data handled and managed by AI systems. The information is liable to be misused or used without authorization, which could lead to data breaches. These undermine consumer trust and brand reputation. The data protection requirements like GDPR have to be followed by organizations so that AI is properly utilized. Companies using AI-based marketing must secure the data of users from cyber-attacks.

b. **High Implementation Costs** make AI adjustment hard, especially for small- and medium-sized businesses. AI integration requires an investment in advanced software, computer hardware, and human resources, an costly shift. It is challenging for the majority of start-ups to adopt AI-based advertising solutions because of scarce funds, thus making it hard to compete with large corporations.

c. **Dependence on the Quality of Data** influences the capacity of AI to draw correct insights and successful marketing plans. Incomplete, biased, or low-quality data can create wrong predictions, irrelevant suggestions, and poor targeting. If an AI-based e-commerce platform is trained using stale data, it may recommend non-relevant products to consumers, which leads to low consumer engagement and sales.

9.4.4 The Future of AI in Marketing

AI is transforming the marketing landscape at a rapid pace by streamlining processes, boosting customer interaction, and facilitating hyper-personalization. With the progression of AI, companies are adopting next-generation technologies such as voice search, predictive analysis, and AI-powered creative tools to survive in the market. The marketing industry will witness its future increasingly filled with AI-created content, real-time analysis of data, and effortless customer experiences. But the future of AI marketing will also require ethical concern, regulation, and proper balance between man against machine creativity to establish consumers' trust.

1. **AI-Driven Content Creation:** AI will enable companies to develop high-quality content marketing with the least amount of effort. AI tools will create blog posts, ad copy, and video scripts while maintaining a unified brand voice across all mediums. This will assist brands in expanding content creation economically while minimizing the creative burden. Jasper and Copy.ai are some of the existing tools that already help marketers draft AI-created social media posts and product descriptions.

2. **Automated Influencer Marketing:** AI will streamline the process of influencer selection using engagement rates, audience demographics, and performance metrics. It will help brands find the right influencers, predict campaign success, and calculate ROI effectively. Companies will be able to optimize influencer partnerships, guaranteeing targeted promotions. AI is used by platforms like Brandwatch to analyze influencer credibility and campaign success rates, allowing brands to optimize their marketing reach.

3. **AI-driven Hyper-Personalization:** AI will maximize marketing through the study of real-time consumer data and predict the customer's needs even before they arise. AI-driven recommendation engines will enable brands to offer personalized content, offers, and ads based on individual behaviour. This will generate a huge increase in customer engagement and brand loyalty. For example, online media services like Amazon Prime Video use AI to suggest series to users according to their viewing history.

8. **Voice and Visual Search Optimization:** Companies will be optimized for voice and image search via AI as smart assistants and image recognition tools grow in popularity. Customers will utilize voice commands and image searches more to locate products and services. Companies will have to adapt their SEO strategies to become more apparent in AI-powered search environments. For instance, companies optimizing for Google Lens will increase product discoverability and user experience.

9. **Ethical AI and Regulation Compliant:** As the adoption of AI increases, transparent AI models and regulation-compliant data protection legislation are the need of the hour. Firms should ensure unbiased algorithms and ethical AI-based usage to facilitate consumer confidence. Regulation compliance will become the key determining point for marketing efforts based on AI. Organizations, for example, that invest resources in making their AI compliance ethic-friendly will become competitive assets to ensure equality and transparency within marketing efforts.

10. **AI-Powered Customer Experience Management:** AI will transform customer experience by providing real-time assistance, predictive assistance, and frictionless experiences across devices. AI-powered chatbots and virtual assistants will handle questions, solve complaints, and make tailored recommendations with ease. Businesses will employ AI to anticipate customer requirements and enhance satisfaction levels. For instance, banking mobile applications employ AI-powered assistants to help customers with transactions and money management.

11. **Real-Time AI-Powered Analytics:** AI will enable marketers to analyze customer behaviour in real-time, enabling instant decision-making and campaign optimization. AI-powered analytics will track performance metrics, sentiment analysis, and buying behaviour, allowing companies to dynamically

optimize marketing campaigns. Companies will get actionable insights to adjust their strategies in real-time. For example, e-commerce sites use AI to adjust prices and provide incentives based on real-time user behaviour.

AI is changing marketing with sophisticated personalization, search optimization, automated content generation, and refinement of influencer marketing strategies. As organizations integrate AI solutions, they gain deeper customer insights, enhanced efficiency, and more accurate campaigns. However, with the growing application of AI, the need for ethics, regulation, and transparency arises in maintaining customer trust intact. The destiny of AI for marketing will be shaped through technological breakthroughs in automation, management of the customer experience, and real-time analysis so that enterprises can continue to be competitive amid an evolving digital landscape. Organizations that balance appropriate levels of AI-driven innovation with judicious use will take the lead in framing strong and long-term marketing campaigns.

Knowledge Check 2

1. How does AI content creation help businesses?
   A) By minimizing the requirement of any human creativity in marketing
   B) By facilitating automated production of high-quality marketing content on multiple platforms
   C) By restricting content dissemination to a single marketing channel

2. What is one benefit of AI in influencer marketing?
   A) It chooses influencers based on data-driven engagement analysis and audience match
   B) It promises viral success for all influencer campaigns
   C) It does away with human cooperation in marketing

3. Why is ethical AI crucial in marketing?
   A) It promotes open AI use, impartial algorithms, and data privacy legislation adherence
   B) It enables companies to gather customer information without any limitations
   C) It erases the requirement for human decision-making in marketing entirely

Did You Know?

"AI chatbots are able to manage more than 80% of mundane customer service cases, which boosts response time and customer satisfaction and minimizes operational expenses."

9.5 Summary

❖ Marketing mix strategies utilize product, price, distribution, and promotion for higher market competitiveness. Firms use strategies like multi-channel distribution and online promotion to reach out more widely.

❖ The marketing process includes market research, segmentation, and implementation to align business strategies with customer needs. Firms streamline promotion, product innovation, and pricing for enhanced performance.

❖ Increasing trends like AI personalization, AR/VR, and blockchain overhaul the marketing methods. Businesses employing these technologies have enhanced precision while targeting and reaching customers.

❖ Marketing AI automates processes personalizes content, and analyzes consumer behavior. Chatbots, predictive analytics, and automated content are some of the technologies that increase efficiency and campaign outcomes.

❖ AI has benefits like hyper-personalization, decision automation, and best-fit advertising. The challenges that need to be addressed include data privacy concerns, high implementation expenses, and bias in algorithms.

❖ Marketing in the future using AI will all be about hyper-personalization, real-time insights, and influencer marketing automation. Adhering to ethics in AI and following rules will be instrumental for sustained development.

❖ AI-powered content generation and automation tools will continue to influence marketing campaigns. Businesses will employ AI to develop personalized messages and improve audience engagement.

❖ Visual and voice search optimization will be at the forefront of marketing. Companies will have to adapt their SEO strategies to enhance brand visibility through AI-powered search.

❖ Real-time AI analytics will power more intelligent decision-making in marketing. Companies will use AI-driven insights to personalize campaigns, price, and customize customer experiences in real time.

9.6 Key Terms

1. **Marketing Mix:** Organizational system that combines product, price, place, and promotion to provide customers with the greatest value possible. It helps companies structure their marketing strategy for competitive success.

2. **Hyper-Personalization:** A machine learning strategy that personalizes content, recommendations, and ads to unique consumer behaviour and real-time information. It enhances customer engagement and brand loyalty.

3. **Predictive Analytics:** An analytical technology that anticipates customers' behaviour, market trends, and business performance. It enables marketers to optimize and future-focused decisions.

4. **Omnichannel Marketing:** An omnichannel marketing strategy in which the customer experience is kept consistent across all online and offline channels. It increases brand alignment and interaction.

5. **Programmatic Advertising:** A technology driven by AI that makes digital ad placements automatically through real-time bidding. It optimizes ad efficiency and improves targeting precision.

6. **Neuromarketing:** A research methodology that examines consumer brain activity to enhance branding, packaging, and advertising strategies. It assists marketers in developing more convincing campaigns.

7. **Blockchain Marketing:** A security framework that promotes increased transparency and authenticity in digital marketing deals. It protects data and keeps ad fraud at bay.

9.7 Descriptive Questions

1. How is AI personalization affecting customer interaction, and how can brands leverage it to increase retention?

2. What are the primary elements of a marketing mix, and how individually and together they affect business profitability?

3. How are new trends such as AI and AR/VR transforming contemporary marketing strategies, and which industries profit the most?

4. Why is predictive analytics relevant to marketing decision-making, and how does it enhance campaign effectiveness?

5. What are the challenges of businesses in adopting AI in marketing, and how can they overcome these challenges?

6. How does omnichannel marketing enhance customer experience, and why is channel consistency important?

7. What are the ethical guidelines businesses need to adhere to when applying AI for marketing purposes, and how do they ensure compliance?

9.8 References

1. "Marketing Management" by Philip Kotler and Kevin Lane Keller

2. "Marketing 4.0: Moving from Traditional to Digital" by Philip Kotler, HermawanKartajaya, and Iwan Setiawan

3. Competitive Advantage: Creating and Sustaining Superior Performance by Michael Porter

4. Consumer Behaviour by Schiffman 12th Edition

5. Marketing Warfare by Jack Trout and Al Ries

6. "Consumer Behavior: Buying, Having, and Being" by Michael R. Solomon

Answers to Knowledge Check

Knowledge Check 1
1. B) By enabling automated creation of high-quality marketing content across platforms
2. A) It selects influencers based on data-driven engagement analysis and audience fit
3. A) It ensures transparent AI usage, unbiased algorithms, and compliance with data privacy laws

Knowledge Check 2
1. A) It helps companies identify customer needs, industry trends, and competitor strategies
2. B) Identification of Target Market
3. A) To establish long-term relationships with customers and enhance loyalty

9.9 Case Study

Leveraging the Marketing Mix for Market Leadership

Introduction

A effective branding and product positioning strategy enables businesses to create a solid market footprint and customer loyalty. With precise alignment of product offerings, price, distribution, and promotion, companies can differentiate themselves in competitive markets. Raymond, the largest textile and apparel brand from India, has managed to position itself as a high-end menswear brand while growing into new segments. This case study discusses how Raymond tactically handles branding, product diversification, and marketing to continue its dominance in the fashion business.

Background

Established in 1925, Raymond is a leading fabric and apparel brand in India. The company started with high-quality woolen fabrics and later diversified into ready-made garments, accessories, and ethnic wear. Raymond competes with Louis Philippe, Van Heusen, and Allen Solly in the premium apparel segment. With changing consumer tastes, rising demand for casual wear, and greater competition from global brands, Raymond had to innovate continuously in product lines and marketing strategies.

Problem 1: Brand Positioning in a Changing Market

Raymond was long associated with formal wear and high-end suiting fabrics, and thus enjoyed the reputation of being the go-to-choice for professionals. Nevertheless, with emerging fashion trends and growing demand for informal and semi-formal wear, the company struggled to remain contemporary. New-age consumers opted for global brands and trendy clothing, and thus Raymond had to shift its positioning beyond that of a suiting brand.

Solution:

Raymond diversified its offerings in casual and smart-casual wear under its sub-brands such as Raymond Ready-To-Wear and Park Avenue. Raymond launched trendy designs, slim-fits, and fashion-forward collections for youth consumers. Raymond revamped its brand positioning to cater to a larger population while sustaining its premium quotient. The company also emphasized premium ethnic wear under the "Raymond Ethnix" brand to tap the burgeoning festive and wedding wear segment.

Problem 2: Premium Pricing vs. Mass Market Appeal

Raymond was established as a premium brand, but with the entry of fast-fashion brands at affordable prices, price-conscious consumers sought alternatives. Rival brands provided fashionable clothing at reduced prices, posing a pricing dilemma for Raymond. Finding a balance between premium pricing and greater accessibility became important to sustain market leadership.

Solution:

Raymond implemented a tiered pricing strategy by launching sub-brands serving various segments of the market. Park Avenue and ColorPlus served premium and upper-middle-class customers, while Raymond Ready-To-Wear brought its offerings to more affordable reach for a wider customer base. The brand also provided value-based seasonal offers and loyalty schemes to bring in and retain customers without diluting its premium positioning.

Problem 3: Distribution Challenges in Expanding Retail Presence

When international brands and online players gained strength, Raymond had to consolidate its presence beyond the conventional retail channels. The brand's exclusive store chain was strong, but others were fast establishing their presence through multi-brand stores and online portals. Without a strong omni channel presence, Raymond would lose market share to digital-native players.

Solution

Raymond extended its retail reach with franchise stores in Tier-2 and Tier-3 cities to target more customers. The brand deepened its digital reach by joining hands with large e-commerce sites and opening its own virtual store. With the convergence of offline and online platforms, Raymond developed an effortless shopping experience where customers could browse collections on the web and buy from the store or vice versa.

Reflective Questions

1. How has Raymond reshaped its positioning and branding strategies to remain current in a competitive marketplace?

2. What other actions can Raymond undertake to enhance its presence among younger consumers?

3. How can Raymond better fine-tune its pricing strategy to rival fast-fashion companies while staying within its premium brand reputation?

Conclusion

Raymond's success is a result of its strategic branding, product diversification, and price-balancing strategy. By diversifying its portfolio away from formals, through the use of omnichannel distribution, and through increased marketing campaigns, the brand has been able to keep up with shifting consumer tastes. With increased competition, however, Raymond needs to develop further the use of digital innovations, increase the casuals and ethnic wear segments, and develop better customer engagement strategies in order to maintain its dominance in the apparel market.